

This device is not intended for sale in the USA.

Part 15.21 statement

" Change or Modifications that are not expressly approved by the manufacturer could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. "

Part 15.105 statement

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules.

These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

Part 15 Class B Compliance

This device and its accessories comply with part15 of FCC rules.

Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

- (1) This device & its accessories may not cause harmful interference.
- (2) This device & its accessories must accept any interference received,
including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Body-worn Operation

This device has been tested for typical body-worn operations with the distance of 0.79inches (2.0cm) from the user's body.

To comply with FCC RF exposure requirements, a minimum separation distance of 0.79inches(2.0cm) must be maintained from the user's body.

Additionally, Belt clips, holsters & other body-worn accessories may not contain metallic components.

Before Using the Handset

Part Names and Functions.....	28
Viewing Display.....	33
Illumination.....	36
Using Touch Panel.....	36
Selecting Menu.....	37
Using UIM (FOMA Card).....	43
Attaching/Removing Battery Pack.....	46
Charging.....	47
Checking Battery Level..... Battery level	50
Turning Power ON/OFF..... Power ON/OFF	51
Changing Screen Display to English or Korean	52
..... Select language	52
Making Initial Settings.....	53
Setting Date and Time..... Set Date&Time	53
Notifying the Other Party of Your Phone Number	54
..... Caller ID notification	54
Checking Your Own Phone Number... Own Number	54

Part Names and Functions

■ Front

■ Front with the FOMA terminal closed

■ Rear

*

■ Left side

■ Right side

* The FOMA antenna is inside the FOMA terminal. To communicate in better condition, avoid covering the antenna part with your hands.

Using earphones

Connect earphones compatible with the external connector terminal (optional).
If you use the incompatible earphones, connect the conversion plug adapter (optional) to the earphones.

Earphone terminal (Flat type) — Flat plug for the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch

Example: Connecting the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch (optional)

Plug

1 Infrared Port

- When performing infrared communications, point this towards the other device. P328

2 Inner camera

- Capture your own image or moving picture. P222, P227
- Show your own image during a videophone call.

3 Illumination sensor

- Detect surrounding brightness with the sensor and adjust the display brightness automatically. P110
- Do not cover this sensor with a hand or do not attach a sticker, etc. The brightness may not be detected.

4 Earpiece/Speaker

- The other party's voice comes out from here.
- Ring tones, alarm tones, and melodies sound from here.
- The other party's voice comes out from here during a Hands-free call.

5 Display P33

6 Google™ service key

- Display the Google™ service menu (P334). (If there is a function in use, it may not be displayed.)
- Press this for 1+ seconds to exit each function and return to the Stand-by display.

7 Mouthpiece

- During a call, transmit your voice through this.
- During a moving picture capture, this works as a microphone.

8 Navigation key

Used to move the cursor, scroll through the screen, or execute the selected operation.

- Execute the selected operation.
- Press this for 1+ seconds in Stand-by to set/cancel the IC card lock. P292
- Move the cursor up.
- Press this in Stand-by to display Schedule
- Press this while MUSIC player, etc. is running to increase the volume.















- Move the cursor down.
- Press this in Stand-by to display the Phonebook list screen (P91), and press for 1+ seconds to display the Add to phonebook screen (P84).

- Press this while MUSIC player, etc. is running to reduce the volume.



- Move the cursor left. Also, return to the previous screen.
- Press this in Stand-by to display the Received calls list screen (P62), and press for 1+ seconds to display the Received mail list screen (P167).
- Move the cursor right. Also, go to the next screen.
- Press this in Stand-by to display the Redial list screen (P60), and press for 1+ seconds to display the Sent mail list screen (P167).

- 9**  **Menu key/Upper left soft key**
- Press this in Stand-by to display the Main menu (P37).
 - Execute the operation indicated for the upper left soft key. P32
- 10**  **Mail key/Lower left soft key**
- Press this in Stand-by to display the Mail menu screen (P137), and press for 1 + seconds to check new messages. P150, P173
 - Execute the operation indicated for the lower left soft key. P32
- 11**  **Start key**
- Make/answer a voice or videophone call. P56, P72
 - Press this in Stand-by to display the Phone number entry screen (P56).
- 12** **Dial keys**
- Press to enter a phone number or characters. P443
 - Press  for 1 + seconds in Stand-by to enter "+". P68
- 13**  **Public mode (Drive mode) key**
- Enter "*/"/*".
 - Press this for 1 + seconds in Stand-by to set/cancel Public mode (Drive mode). P76
- 14**  **i-mode/i-ppi key/Upper right soft key**
- Press this in Stand-by to display the i-mode menu screen (P182), and press for 1 + seconds to display the i-ppi Software list screen (P275).
 - Execute the operation indicated for the upper right soft key. P32
 - During character entry, use this to switch the input mode (Hiragana/Katakana/alphanumeric and numeric characters). P376
- 15**  **Camera/TV key**
- Press this in Stand-by to display the Still image capture screen (P222), and press for 1 + seconds to display the 1Seg watch screen (P245).
 - During character entry, use this to switch the input mode (pictographs/symbols/emoticons). P381
- 16**  **Clear/i-Channel key**
- Return to the previous state or return to the Stand-by display.
 - Press this in Stand-by to display the Channel list screen (P203).
- 17**  **Power/Exit key**
- Press this for 2 + seconds to turn the power on/o . P51
 - Used to end a call or terminate a function.
- 18**  **Manner mode key**
- Enter "#".
 - Press this for 1 + seconds in Stand-by to set/cancel Manner mode. P105
- 19** **Strap hole**
- 20** **Illumination**
- View the time with the FOMA terminal closed. Also, notify of incoming calls or mails, the status of the FOMA terminal, etc. by illumination patterns. P36
- 21** **External connector terminal**
- The integrated terminal used for charging and connecting earphones.
 - Connect the AC adapter (optional), DC adapter (optional), FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 (optional), or Earphone Plug Adapter for External connector terminal (Optional).
- 22** **Charger terminal**
- Terminal for charging with the desktop holder.
- 23**  **Multitask key**
- Press this for 1 + seconds to display the New task screen. P349
 - Display the Task list screen. P350
- 24**  **Lock key**
- Set/cancel the lock for the touch panel and keys. P125
- 25** **Outer camera**
- Capture a still image or moving picture such as landscape, etc. P222, P227
 - Capture surrounding image during a videophone call.
- 26** **Photo light/Light**
- Light up when capturing a still image/moving picture.
 - You can light this up when using the camera.

27 Back cover

- Remove this when inserting/removing the UIM or battery pack. P.43, P.46
- Do not remove the sticker attached at the back side of the Back cover. If removing it, the IC card contents may not be read or written.


28 mark

- The IC card is included (cannot be removed). Hold this on the scanning device to use as Osafu-Keitai. P.291

29 microSD card slot

- Insert a microSD card. P.318

30 Volume key

- Use to adjust the volume, etc.
- Press these during a call to adjust the receiver volume.
 - Press  for 1 + seconds to display the Record message list screen (P.79).
 - Press these on the Playback screen of MUSIC player, etc. to adjust the playback volume.
 - Press these on the List screen to move the cursor or scroll the screen to the next page.

31 Camera/TV key

- Press this in Stand-by to display the Still image capture screen (P.222), and press for 1 + seconds to display the 1Seg watch screen (P.245).
- Press this on the Still image/Moving picture capture screen to work as shutter and capture images/moving pictures. P.223, P.228

32 1Seg antenna

- Receive 1Seg broadcasting. P.240
 - * This is not the FOMA antenna.

Opening the FOMA Terminal

You can use this FOMA terminal with the FOMA terminal closed, opened, and in Turn View Style mode.

- It is recommended to keep the FOMA terminal closed when you carry the terminal.

Turn View Style

- 1 Open the FOMA terminal up to the angle shown below and rotate the display 180 degrees to the right

- 2 Fold the display forward







Note

- When changing the FOMA terminal in Turn View Style mode, do not rotate the display to the left or further than 180 degrees. Also, do not hit the edge of the display on the terminal body or keys. Scratch or damage may result.
- When changing in Turn View Style mode, take care not to pinch your fingers.

When rotating the display

Soft Keys

- Available operations on the currently opened screen are displayed as Soft keys at the bottom of the screen. To execute the soft key operation, press the following corresponding keys or directly touch the soft key display.
- The Soft key description differs depending on the function or display status.

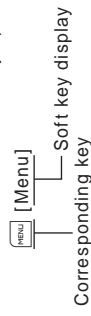
- 1 Operation performed using  appears.
- 2 Operation performed using  appears.
 - The mark () also appears to indicate the available direction for scrolling or item selection.
- 3 Operation performed using  appears.
- 4 Operation performed using  appears.
- 5 Operation performed using  appears.

Note

- In Turn View Style mode, some Soft keys may not appear, or descriptions may change compared to the state when the FOMA terminal is opened.

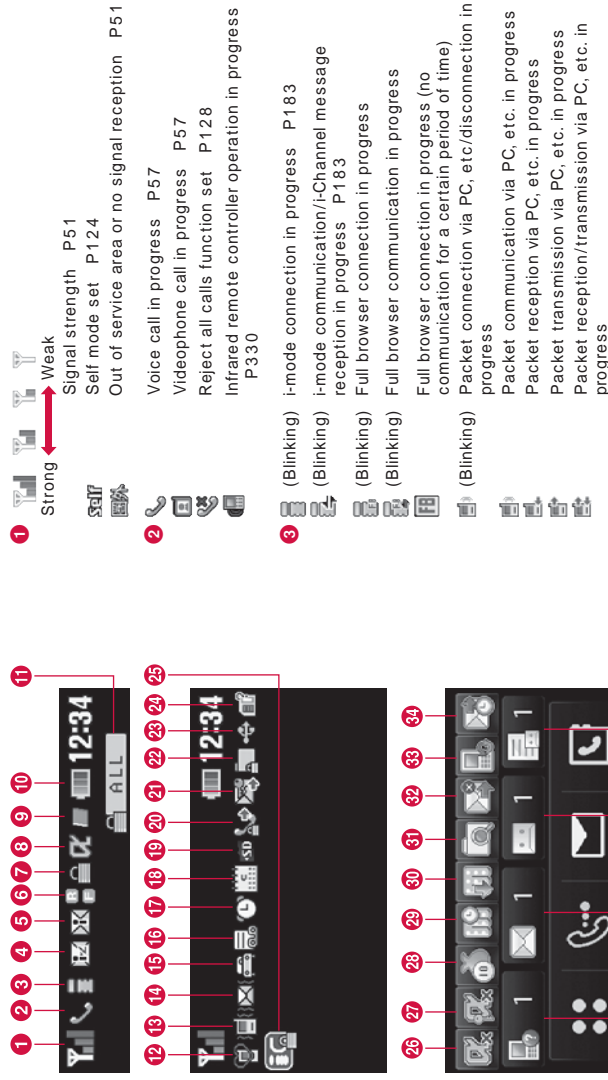
Notation for Soft Key Operations









































This manual describes the Soft key operations as follows.



Viewing Display

The descriptions of the icons appearing at the top of the screen are as follows.



- 4  i-mode mails stored at the i-mode center P 149
-  i-mode center mailbox full
-  MessageR stored at the i-mode center P 173
-  MessageR at the i-mode center full
-  MessageF stored at the i-mode center P 173
-  MessageF at the i-mode center full
-  i-mode mails and MessageR/F stored at the i-mode center
-  i-mode mails and MessageR/F at the i-mode center full
- 5  Unread i-mode mails P 147
-  Unread SMS P 177
-  Unread i-mode mails and SMS
-  Inbox in the FOMA terminal full of unread mails and protected mails.
-  SMS in the UIM full
-  Inbox in the FOMA terminal full of unread mails and protected mails. SMS in the UIM full
- 6  Unread MessageR P 174
-  MessageR in the FOMA terminal full
-  Unread MessageF P 174
-  MessageF in the FOMA terminal full
- 7  SSL-compatible page displayed or loading P 185
- 8  i- ppli running P 275
-  i- ppliDX running P 275
-  i- ppli Stand-by display displayed P 285
-  i- ppliDX Stand-by display displayed P 285
- 9  A function (task) activated P 349
-  Multiple functions (tasks) activated
-  A function (task) and background playback activated
-  Multiple functions (tasks) and background playback activated
-  Alarm started when no tone sounds due to another function (task) activated
- 10  Battery level P 50
- 11  Lock all set P 121
- 12  Manner mode set P 105
-  Original manner mode set P 105
- 13  The ring tone for voice/video/phone call muted, and vibration active P 101, P 102
-  The ring tone for voice/video/phone call and vibration active P 101, P 102
-  The ring tone for voice/video/phone call muted, and vibration inactive P 101, P 102
- 14  The ring tone for Mail or MessageR/F muted, and vibration active P 101, P 102
-  The ring tone for Mail or MessageR/F and vibration active P 101, P 102
-  The ring tone for Mail or MessageR/F muted, and vibration inactive P 101, P 102
- 15  Public mode (Drive mode) set P 76
- 16  Record message active P 78
- 17  Alarm set P 351



18 Today's schedule/To do set P 353, P 357
Today's schedule/To do with alarm set P 353, P 357



19 microSD card inserted P 318



20 Outgoing voice/video calls restricted P 123
Incoming voice/video calls restricted P 123
Incoming and outgoing voice/video calls restricted P 123



21 Outgoing mails restricted P 123
Incoming mails restricted P 123
Incoming and outgoing mails restricted P 123



22 • "Data access lock" set to "ON" P 124
• "Secret mode" set to "Secret mode" P 127
• "Secret mode" set to "Secret data only" P 127



23 Communication mode set and USB cable connected



24 UIM not inserted/error occurred in the UIM P 43
Terminal link applied



25 IC card lock set



26 i-ppli auto start failed P 286



27 i-ppli Stand-by display released due to security error P 286



28 Call costs exceeded the limit P 363



29 Reserving Music&Video Channel program download P 254



30 Music&Video Channel program download completed P 254
Music&Video Channel program download failed P 254
Downloading Music&Video Channel program P 254



31 Pattern definition update completed P 462
Pattern definition update recommended
Pattern definition update failed



32 i-mode mail Auto send failed
The rewrite notice icon P 461
The update notice icon P 462
Reserving software update P 463
i-mode mail Auto send reserved P 139



33 Missed call (with the number of calls)
Unread mail (with the number of mails)
Voice mail message (with the number of messages) P 392
Record message (with the number of messages)



34 Missed call (with the number of calls)



35 Unread mail (with the number of mails)



36 Voice mail message (with the number of messages) P 392



37 Record message (with the number of messages)

Note

- Some characters or symbols appearing on the display may be partially deformed or abbreviated.
- Icons appearing on the display are based on the default settings. The display of the FOMA terminal may differ from the one in the manual depending on setting changes after purchase.
- The display of the FOMA terminal employs high-precision production technology, however, there may be instances where some dots may not light up while others may constantly light up. Note that this is not a failure.

Note

- While another illumination notifying of missed call or unread mail, etc. is lighting up, the clock cannot be displayed.
- Illumination patterns can be changed depending on the item. P.113
- Illumination lights up or blinks only with the FOMA terminal closed.
- Illumination notifying of missed call or unread mail/message lights up or blinks for up to approximately 1 hour at approximately 10 seconds interval.

Illumination

Pressing  or  when or while the FOMA terminal is closed displays the clock for approximately 5 seconds. Incoming calls or mails, the status of the FOMA terminal, etc. are also notified by illumination patterns. (The following images are examples of illumination.)



Clock display



Incoming voice call/
video phone call



Unread mail/
MessageR/F



Music play back



Alarm sounding



Missed call



Charging

Using Touch Panel

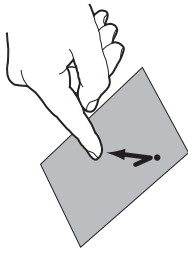
The display of this FOMA terminal works as the touch panel. Touch the screen directly to perform various operations.

- When the FOMA terminal opens, both touch and key operations are available. However, depending on the functions, only either operation may be possible.
- This manual describes procedures mainly with key operations.
- While the touch panel light is turned on, touch panel operations are disabled. Turn the light on with the following operations.
 - Press any key
 - Open/close the FOMA terminal

Cautions on using the touch panel

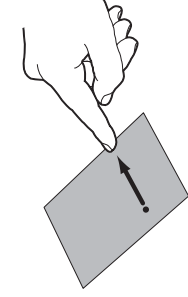
- The touch panel may not function in the following cases. Also, operations may not be performed correctly.
 - Operations with a foreign object put on the panel
 - Operations with the protective sheet or stickers attached
- Do not press the touch panel with a sharp-pointed object such as nail, pen, etc. or finger strongly.

Touch the panel softly and release your finger
Ex.: Select an item or execute the selected operation



- This operation is described as "touch" in this manual.

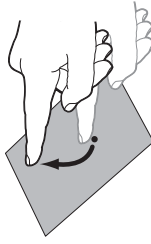
Keep touching the touch panel and move your finger
Ex.: Adjust volume



- This operation is described as "slide" in this manual.

Touch the panel softly and sweep upward or downward

Ex: Scroll at high speed when there are too many items, etc. to be displayed on a screen (This operation may be disabled depending on the screen.)



Note

- Touch panel operations can be notified with sound or vibration. P.104
- Touch operation is not available on sites which use Flash movies, and i-Channel or i-ppli screens.

Selecting Menu

The FOMA terminal allows you to access or set a function, and save items, etc. from the Main menu or sub menu.

- This FOMA terminal supports Kisekae Tool (P.111). If the Menu screen design is changed by using Kisekae Tool, menu structure may change, depending on menu types, according to the frequency of use.

Selecting Functions from Main Menu

You can select a function using the following 3 methods.

- Navigation key
- Dial keys
- Touch panel

Using steps for accessing the Main menu in Stand-by and displaying the setting screen for "Color theme" as an example, this section explains each operation method.

- This manual explains how to select functions using the navigation keys.



Main menu

- Functions and corresponding keys displayed on the Main menu

Function	Operation	Function	Operation	Function	Operation
Mail	[1]	i-mode	[E]	i-ppli	[E]
Phonebook	[1]	Data Box	[E]	MUSIC	[E]
LifeKit	[7]	Media	[E]	1Seg	[E]
Settings	[x]	Own Number	[D]	Osafu-Keitai	[E]

- Depending on the Main menu design you use, the description of menu name may differ.

Using Navigation Key

- 1 Press **[Menu]** in Stand-by
Main menu appears.
- 2 In the Main menu, use **[Left]** to move the cursor to "Settings" and press **[Select]**



- 3 On the Settings screen, use **[Left]** to move the cursor to "Display" and press **[Select]**



- 4 On the Display screen, use **[Left]** to move the cursor to "Color theme" and press **[Select]**



Using Dial Keys

- 1 Press **[Menu]** in Stand-by
- 2 On the Main menu screen, press **[>]** corresponding to "Settings"
- 3 On the Settings screen, press **[=]** corresponding to "Display"
- 4 On the Display screen, press **[1]** corresponding to "Color theme"

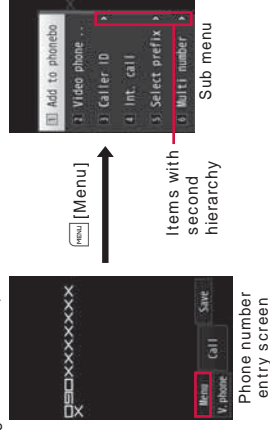
Using Touch Panel

- 1 Touch **[Menu]** in Stand-by
 - Alternatively, press **[Menu]** to display the Main menu.
- 2 On the Main menu screen, touch the icon for "Settings"
 - The cursor is moved to "Settings".
- 3 Touch the icon for "Settings" again
- 4 On the Settings screen, touch "Display"
 - The cursor is moved to "Display".
- 5 Touch "Display" again
- 6 On the Display screen, touch "Color theme"
 - The cursor is moved to "Color theme".
- 7 Touch "Color theme" again

Selecting a Function from Sub Menu

When "Menu" appears on a soft key, you can access a sub menu to perform various functions.

- The sub menu items vary depending on the function or the FOMA terminal settings/saved items, etc.



List screen sub menu

The list screen sub menu contains options such as "Delete" that apply only to the highlighted item and ones such as "Delete all" that apply to all items. When performing the operation that applies to only an item, move the cursor to the relevant item, and then press **[Menu]**[Menu].

Note

- You can move the cursor using **[Left]** while the sub menu appears. Also, you can select an item by pressing the dial key corresponding to the menu number.
- For an item with the second hierarchy, move the cursor and press **[Select]/[Enter]** to display the second hierarchy item.
- Press **[Menu]**[Close] to close the sub menu.

Using Hot Keys to Access a Function

You can use each function by touching 4 hot keys displayed in Stand-by.



- 1 Display the Main menu.
- 2 Display the Phone number entry screen. Touch for 1+ seconds to display the Recent call list screen.
- 3 Display the Mail menu screen (P137). Touch for 1+ seconds to check new messages (P150, P173).
- 4 Display the Phonebook list screen (P91). Touch for 1+ seconds to display the Add to phonebook screen (P84).

Note

- Hot key operations are available only by touching the touch panel directly.

Using Shortcuts to Access a Function

You can set shortcuts in Stand-by to access each function quickly by selecting the shortcut icons.

- Setting shortcuts P106

- 1 Stand-by display icon Select a shortcut icon



Note

- You can perform operations by touching a shortcut icon twice directly.
- To change the setting, touch a shortcut icon for 1+ seconds. Select the icon with "x" to delete the function from the shortcuts. Select "Edit shortcut" to display the Stand-by display setting screen. P106

Basic Operations for Each Screen

Returning to the Previous Screen/Stand-by Display

If you selected undesired menu item and want to return to the previous screen, or cancel/end the operation and return to the Stand-by display, perform the following operations.







- **[Left Arrow]**: Return to the previous screen. (Touch **[Left Arrow]** for touch panel operations.)
- **[Left Arrow]** (for 1+ seconds)/**[Right Arrow]**: Return to the Stand-by display. If a confirmation to exit appears, select 'Yes' to cancel the operation.

Note

- Depending on the current operation on the FOMA terminal, pressing **[Left Arrow]**/**[Right Arrow]** may not return to the Stand-by display/previous screen.

Operations for Setting Items

Each setting field on a setting screen shows currently set item. To change settings, perform any of the following operations.

<p>Select the setting field to change and select an item on the list</p> 	<p>Move the cursor to the setting field to change and use [Left Arrow] to change the setting</p> 	<p>Move the cursor to the setting field to change and use [Left Arrow] to switch the setting</p> 
		

Authentication

Depending on the function or service to use, a password entry screen (P118) may appear for the authentication purpose. If the entry screen appears, use dial keys to enter the password and press **[OK]**. If correctly entered, you can complete the steps or continue to the next step.

- The entered password appears as "*" (asterisk) marks.



Password entry screen (Ex.: Terminal security code entry screen)

Note

- To cancel the password entry and close the entry screen, touch **[Left Arrow]**.

Notation for Menu Operations

This manual explains operations to be performed mainly from the Stand-by display. Basically, descriptions of operations are simplified as follows.

Example of Operation Description



- 1 Key illustration to press for operation.
- 2 Function name for the main menu. Use to move the cursor to the function name and press [Select] to select.
- 3 Menu item names. This manual also uses the phrase "Perform the following operation" or "select XXX". Use to move the cursor to an item and press [Select] to select.

Example of Sub Menu Description

Items displayed on the sub menu may vary depending on the settings or saved items of the FOMA terminal.

[Sort] _____
Set conditions and sort files. _____

[Memory info.] _____
Handset memory : Display the status of storage space, etc. _____
in "Data Box". _____
External memory : Display the status of storage space, etc. _____
of the microSD card. _____

- 1 Item name. Press / / to move the cursor to the item and press [Select] to select.
- 2 Functional description of the item.
- 3 Item names, functional description, and operation description of items displayed when the items are selected.

Note

- If multiple sub menus such as the Redial list screen or Redial detail screen are collectively described, some sub menus that do not actually appear may be included depending on the settings or screens.

Notations

- Description of operations starting from other than the Stand-by display
At the beginning of the operation, the status of the FOMA terminal or the screen to be displayed such as "Ringing" or "List screen" is described.
- Omitting [Select] in the "Select" operation
As shown in 2 and 3 of "Example of Operation Description" (P4.2), when selecting a target function from icons or lists, operations such as [Select] are omitted from description.
Similarly, in the cases such as password entry or fixing entered characters, the operations such as [OK] are omitted.
- Omitting [] in the operation to make [] into []
The operation to select items with [] and press [] to change to [] is described as "Mark", omitting the operation of [].

Using UIM (FOMA Card)

The UIM is an IC card that contains subscription information such as your phone number. You can use communication functions such as calling, mail, and i-mode, etc. by inserting the UIM into the FOMA terminal. You can insert the UIM into other FOMA terminals to use for various purposes. For details on how to handle the UIM, see the UIM instruction manual.

Inserting/Removing

- After operations described in "Turning Power OFF" (P5.1), turn over the FOMA terminal and remove the battery pack, then insert or remove the UIM. P4.7

Inserting

When inserting the UIM, close the FOMA terminal and hold it with both hands.

With the IC side (gold) of the UIM down, while pushing the UIM surface, insert the UIM slowly until it is fixed

Notch

Note

- Do not use excessive force when inserting the UIM to avoid damaging it.

Removing

When removing the UIM, close the FOMA terminal and hold it with both hands.

1 While sliding the UIM, pull it out slowly

Note

- Do not misplace the removed UIM.

Security Codes

You can set 2 security codes to the UIM: "PIN1 code" and "PIN2 code". P119

UIM Security Function

The FOMA terminal incorporates the UIM security function (UIM operational restriction function) to protect your data and files.

- When you download data or files from sites or acquire data attached to mail with the UIM inserted into the FOMA terminal, the UIM operational restriction function is automatically set to these data or files.
 - Data or files with the UIM operational restriction function set are accessible only when the same UIM used when downloading data or files is inserted.
 - The following data/files are restricted:
 - File attached to i-mode mail
 - MessageR/F with file (melodies/images) attached
 - Screen memo
 - Images inserted in Deco-mail or signature
 - i-motion
 - i- ppli (including i- ppli Stand-by display)
 - Image (including animation and Flash movie)
 - Chaku-Uta[®]/Chaku-Uta Full[®] song
 - Melody
 - Kisekae Tool
 - Mail template with motion-restricted data
 - Music&Video Channel program
- * "Chaku-Uta" is a registered trademark of Sony Music Entertainment Inc.

- Hereafter, the UIM that was inserted when you downloaded or obtained data or files is referred to as "your UIM" and any other UIM as "another UIM".

Your UIM

Another UIM

If the UIM used for obtaining data or mails is inserted, you can browse or play back UIM restricted data.

If the UIM used for obtaining data or mails is not inserted, you cannot browse or play back UIM restricted data.

Replacing the UIM

Note

- When you set data/file restricted with this function to the Stand-by display, etc., the setting will return to the default if another UIM is inserted or if no UIM is inserted. When you re-insert your UIM, the setting will revert to the original state you set.
- Pre-installed i-ppli programs are not restricted. However, if you delete i-ppli and download it, the newly-downloaded i-ppli will be restricted.
- The following data/files are not restricted with this function:
 - Data/files obtained via infrared communication, a microSD card, or data communication
 - Images captured/edited using this FOMA terminal
- Even if a UIM different from the one used when data/files were obtained is inserted, the data/files restricted with this function can be deleted.
- Settings that are saved on the UIM are as follows:
 - Phone number display
 - PIN1 and PIN2 codes
 - SMS Validity Period
 - SMS Center settings
 - Select language
- If the UIM is inserted into another i-Channel-compatible terminal, the ticker will not appear. If you press **[END]** in Stand-by and display the channel list, the latest information is downloaded and the ticker appears.

UIM Types

Note that the specifications of the "UIM (blue)" differ from those of the "UIM (green/white)" as follows:

Function	UIM (blue)	UIM (green/white)	Reference
Number of phone number digits to be saved to the UIM Phonebook	Up to 20 digits	Up to 26 digits	P87
WORLD WING	Not available	Available	P408
Service Numbers	Not available	Available	P399

WORLD WING

WORLD WING is DOCOMO's FOMA international roaming service that allows you to use the same mobile phone number registered in Japan to make and receive calls even overseas using the UIM (green/white) and supported terminals.

- If you subscribed to the FOMA service after September 1, 2005, a separate subscription is not required. However, if you declared that you did not require this service at the FOMA service subscription or canceled this service, a separate subscription is required.
- If you initially subscribed to the FOMA service before August 31, 2005 and have not subscribed to "WORLD WING", a separate subscription is required.
- This service is not available for some billing plans.
- If your UIM (green/white) is lost or stolen overseas, contact DOCOMO immediately and temporarily suspend your subscription. For contact information, see General Inquiries at the back of this manual. Call and communication charges after the FOMA terminal was lost or stolen are still charged to you.

Attaching/Removing Battery Pack

- Turn o the FOMA terminal and hold it in your hand with the terminal closed.

Attaching

- 1** While pushing the Back cover in the direction of **1**, slide it in the direction of **2** and hold it up in the direction of **3**

Tabs

- 2** With "A" side up, align the metal contacts of the battery pack and the FOMA terminal in the direction of **1**, then insert the battery pack in the direction of **2**

- When attaching the battery pack, push it underneath the tab and push it down.

- 3** With approx. 3mm space kept to the Back cover, align it to the ditch of the FOMA terminal, and while pushing it in the direction of **1**, slide it in the direction of **2** and insert it until it clicks
- Approx. 3mm

- 2** Hold the battery pack with a finger by the recess of the FOMA terminal, and while pushing the battery pack in the direction of **1**, hold it up in the direction of **2** and remove in the direction of **3**
- Recess

Note

- Attaching the battery pack forcibly with the UIM not properly inserted may damage the UIM.
- Attaching the battery pack forcibly may damage the FOMA terminal.

Removing

- 1** While pushing the Back cover in the direction of **1**, slide it in the direction of **2** and hold it up in the direction of **3** and remove

Charging

Use the specified AC adapter (optional) or DC adapter (optional) to charge the FOMA terminal. Use the exclusive battery pack L05 for the FOMA terminal.

Battery pack life

- The battery pack is a consumable. The available usage time decreases every time the battery pack is recharged.
- When the usable time after each recharging shortens by approximately half compared to a new battery pack, it is recommended that the battery pack be replaced with a new one as soon as possible. The battery pack may swell as the battery life is near its end depending on the battery pack condition, but it is not a malfunction.
- If you use i-ppli or videophone, etc., or watch 1 Seg for long periods of time while the battery pack is being charged, the battery life may be shortened.

For environmental protection, be sure to bring the exhausted battery pack to NTT DOCOMO, the sales agent, or recycle shop. **Li-ion00**



Charging

- For details, see the instruction manuals for the FOMA AC Adapter 01/02 (optional), FOMA AC Adapter 01 for Global use (optional), and FOMA DC Adapter 01/02 (optional).
 - The FOMA AC Adapter 01 can be used only for 100V AC. The FOMA AC Adapter 02 and the FOMA AC Adapter 01 for Global use support the voltage from 100V to 240V AC.
 - The adapter plug shape is for 100V AC (for domestic use). To use an AC adapter that supports from 100V to 240V AC overseas, the compatible conversion plug adapter is required. Do not charge the battery pack with a transformer designed for overseas trips.
 - To charge the battery pack with the AC or DC adapter, make sure that the battery pack is inserted into the FOMA terminal.
 - Plug or unplug the connector slowly and securely avoiding excessive force.
 - If you start charging the fully drained battery pack, the FOMA terminal may not be turned on for a while.
 - If you make a call or packet communication while charging, the inside of the FOMA terminal may become hot and charging may stop. In this case, end the functions in use and wait until the FOMA terminal becomes cool down, and then try charging again.
- Do not charge the battery pack for a long time (several days) with the FOMA terminal power on.
- If the FOMA terminal is left with the power on for long periods of time during charging, you may not be able to use the FOMA terminal for long duration as expected and the low battery alarm may sound, because the FOMA terminal receives the power from the battery pack after charging is completed. In this case, recharge the battery pack properly. Before recharging the battery pack, disconnect the AC adapter or DC adapter from the FOMA terminal and reconnect it.

Approximate battery pack usage time

The usage time may vary depending on the operating environment and the battery pack deterioration.

Continuous stand-by time	FOMA/3G	3G/GSM setting: 3G	Moving: Approx. 280 hours
	Continuous call time	GSM	3G/GSM setting: AUTO	Stationary: Approx. 320 hours Moving: Approx. 210 hours
FOMA/3G		3G/GSM setting: AUTO	Stationary: Approx. 220 hours
1Seg watching time	GSM		Voice call: Approx. 220 minutes Video phone call: Approx. 80 minutes
			Voice call: Approx. 180 minutes Approx. 140 minutes

- Continuous call time is approximate duration for calling with normal radio wave reception level.
- Continuous stand-by time is approximate usage time when moving with normal radio wave reception level. Depending on the battery level, set functions, operating environment such as ambient temperature, or radio wave reception level (poor or weak radio wave reception level), stand-by time may be reduced by half. During i-mode communication, the call (communication)/stand-by time becomes shorter. Even if you do not make calls or i-mode communications, the call (communication)/stand-by time shortens when you compose i-mode mail, start i-ppli or i-ppli Stand-by display, perform data communications or Multiaccess, use the camera, play back moving picture or music, or watch 1Seg, etc.
- Depending on network conditions at your location, usage time may become shorter than the described values.
- Continuous stand-by time in a stationary is the average usage time in stationary state with normal radio wave reception level with the FOMA terminal closed.
- Continuous stand-by time in a moving state is the average usage time in a state combining "stand still", "in motion", and "out of service area" in an area with normal radio wave reception level with the FOMA terminal closed.
- 1Seg watching time is approximate time when watching with normal radio wave reception level and using the Flat-plug Stereo Earphone Set P01 (optional).

- The call/communication or stand-by time may be reduced to about half, or 1/3, of the battery life depending on the battery level, set functions, operating environment such as ambient temperature, or radio wave reception level (poor or weak radio wave reception level).

Estimated battery pack charging time

FOMA AC Adapter 01/02	Approx. 180 minutes
FOMA DC Adapter 01/02	Approx. 180 minutes

- The estimated charging time is the duration of time to charge a fully drained battery pack with the FOMA terminal turned on. The charging time becomes longer with the FOMA terminal turned on.

Charging with AC Adapter and Desktop Holder

Insert the AC adapter connector, with the inscribed arrow side up, straight into the desktop holder.

Insert the power plug of the AC adapter into an outlet.

Align charger terminals of the desktop holder and FOMA terminal (1), then insert in the direction of the arrow (2). The illumination lights up and charging starts. When charging completes, the illumination turns on. (If unread mails or missed calls exist, the illumination lights up according to "Lighting LED" settings.)

After charging completes, grasp the head of the FOMA terminal and lift it out while holding the desktop holder with fingers.

100V AC outlet	Desktop holder	Charger terminal	Inscription
	Illumination	Release buttons	Connector
	Power plug		

Charging only with AC Adapter

Open the external connector terminal cover (1) and flip it over (2). Then, insert the AC adapter connector, with the inscribed arrow side up, straight into the FOMA terminal external connector.






- Insert the power plug of the AC adapter into an outlet. The illumination lights up and charging starts. When charging completes, the illumination turns on. (If unread mails or missed calls exist, the illumination lights up according to "Lighting LED" settings.)

After charging completes, pull the AC adapter connector straight out while pressing the release buttons.

Illumination

- | | | |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------|-----------|
| External connector terminal cover | Inscription | Connector |
| | Release buttons | |
- Make sure to insert/pull out the AC adapter connector straight with the correct side up. Forcibly trying to remove the adapter may cause damage.
 - DC adapter (optional)
The DC adapter supplies power to the FOMA terminal from a cigarette lighter socket (12V/2.4V) of a car with the battery pack inserted in the FOMA terminal. For details, see the FOMA DC Adapter 01/02 instruction manual.





Note

- When the power is turned on, you can set the FOMA terminal to sound the charge start tone or charge complete tone. The setting of "Pop-up tone" is applied. P101
 - You can set the FOMA terminal to charge with the Display backlight on. P110
 - While charging, the battery level icon changes in the order of     in an animation display. After charging completes,  lights up.
- <DC adapter>
- A fuse (2A) is a consumable item. Purchase a replacement fuse from a car parts shop.

Battery level





Checking Battery Level

An icon indicating the battery level (appears at the top of the screen).

-  : The battery is full.
-  : The battery is getting low.
-  : The battery is almost running out. Charge the battery.
-  : The battery is almost running out. The FOMA terminal will automatically turn o in a moment. Charge the battery.



Note

- When an icon indicating battery level is  or , camera functions (including the bar code reader) and infrared communication functions are unavailable.
- When the color of the icon indicating battery level is other than  and you activate 1Seg/MUSIC player, the notification indicating the low battery level appears (may not appear when the battery level is ).

Checking Battery Level with Sound and Display

The battery level can be checked with display and sound.

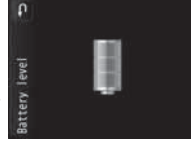
1 "Settings" "Others" "Battery level"

A confirmation appears and a tone sounds according to the battery level. The battery level screen disappears in approximately 3 seconds.

Three beeps : The battery is full.

Two beeps : The battery is getting low.


One beep : The battery is almost running out. Charge the battery.



Note

- When "Dial sound" is set to  (Silent) or "Manner mode" is activated, you will not hear the beep.

When the battery is running out

A message, "Low battery. Charge or change battery" appears and the battery alert tone sounds. (Depending on the settings, the tone may not sound.)  at the top of the screen blinks. After a little while, the FOMA terminal turns o automatically.




Power ON/OFF

Turning Power ON/OFF

Turning Power ON

1 When the FOMA terminal is turned o

 (for 2 + seconds)

After the wake-up screen appears, the Stand-by display appears.



Stand-by display

Note

- If the UIM is not inserted, the message, "Insert UIM" appears.
- When replacing the UIM, enter 4- to 8-digit Terminal security code after turning the power on. When entered the correct Terminal security code, the Stand-by display appears. If failed to enter the code 5 times in a row, the power is turned o . (You can turn the power on again.)

When "PIN1 code request" is set to "ON"

The PIN1 code entry screen appears. When the PIN1 (P119) code is entered, the Wake-up screen and then the Stand-by display appear. You can make emergency calls (to 110, 119, or 118) even while the PIN1 entry screen appears. P120



When "Lock all" is activated


The Terminal security code entry is required.

When "圏外" appears at the top of the screen

The FOMA terminal is out of service area or in a poor signal area. Move to a location where the icon indicating the signal strength appears. The signal strength is indicated in 4 levels as follows:


Strong     Weak

Viewing the Welcome mail

By default, "Welcome Mail" (ドコモ動画) is saved. Press  repeatedly to display the mail. Alternatively, perform operations in "Displaying Received Mail" (P154) to display the mail.

Turning Power OFF

1 When the FOMA terminal is turned on,

 (for 2 + seconds) in Stand-by

The exit screen appears and the power is turned o .

Select language

Changing Screen Display to English or Korean

You can switch the display language on the FOMA terminal to Japanese, English, or Korean.


- 1  "設定(Settings)" "Select language"
"日本語(Japanese)"/"English"/"한국어(Korean)"

Note


- When the language is switched to English or Korean, "Select language" is displayed as "マシリンガル".
- The setting of this function is stored on the FOMA terminal and UIM in use. If another UIM is inserted, the setting on the inserted UIM takes priority. If the UIM with Korean language set is inserted into the Korean-incompatible FOMA terminal, the display language is set to Japanese or English.

Making Initial Settings

After the FOMA terminal is turned on, make initial settings of "Set Date&Time", "Change security code", "Keypad Sound (Keypad tone)", and "Calibration".

- 1 Turn the power on "Yes"
- 2 Set the date&time (P53)
- 3 Set the Terminal Security code (P120)
- 4 Set the keypad tone (Select "ON" or "OFF")
 - If "OFF" is selected, the keypad tone volume is set to  (Silent). P101
- 5 Adjust the touch panel (P115)
 - When initial settings complete, the software update confirmation may appear. Perform operations according to on-screen instructions.


Note

- While All lock, etc. is activated, the initial settings function is not activated.
- To cancel the initial settings, press . When the power is turned on next time, the rest of the settings resumes.

Set Date&Time

Setting Date and Time

You can set the FOMA terminal to update the time automatically. Also, you can set the local time zone, daylight saving, and date&time.

1  "Settings" "Date&Time" "Set Date&Time"



Date&Time settings screen

[Set date&time]

Set date and time manually.

- You can set the date between 1980/01/01 and 2099/12/31.

* Available when "Auto time adjust" is set to "OFF".

3 [Done]

Note

<Auto time adjust>

- Time or time differences can be adjusted when the power is turned on.
- If time is not adjusted for a while after the power is turned on, turn the power on again.
- Time may not be adjusted depending on the signal strength, etc.
- When using the FOMA terminal overseas, the time or time zone may not be adjusted depending on the network service to use. Also, the time may not be properly displayed. Set the time of the location where you stay with the World time. P364
- An error of a few seconds may occur.

2 Perform the following operations

[Auto time adjust]



Set whether to adjust the time on the FOMA terminal based on the time information from the network.

ON : Adjust the date and time automatically.

OFF : Does not adjust the date and time automatically.

[Local time zone]

Set the time zone for the date and time.

Press  [<Prev.] or  [Next>] to switch the list by page.

[Daylight saving]


Set the daylight saving time.

Caller ID notification

Notifying the Other Party of Your Phone Number

You can set the FOMA terminal to show/hide your caller ID on the network in advance.

- Your caller ID (phone number) is important information. Please take care when sending your caller ID.
- Caller ID notification cannot be set when "圏外" appears.

1  "Settings" "NW Services" "Caller ID notification" Perform the following operations

[Activate/Deactivate]

Set to show/hide the caller ID.

[Check setting]

Check the current setting status.

Note


- Your caller ID is displayed only when the other party's phone allows the display of caller ID.
- You can set the Caller ID notification for each call. P66


Own Number

Checking Your Own Phone Number

You can check your phone number (own number) saved on the UIM.

1  "Own Number"

■ To display the saved detail information Pressing  [Detail] and entering the Terminal security code on the Own number screen displays the Own number detail screen. You can also save information other than the own number. P361

- If a phone number other than your own number, mail address, or URL is saved, you can make a call, create i-mode mail, or access a site by moving the cursor and pressing .



Own number screen

Voice/Videophone Calls

Making Calls/Videophone Calls		
Videophone Calls	56	74
Making a Call/Videophone Call	56	When You Can/Could not Answer a Voice/Videophone Call
Making a Call Using Redial/Received Calls	60	Putting a Call on Hold when You Cannot Answer Immediately
Making a Call Using Recent Calls	64	Setting Answer Holding Tone
Using Chaku-moji	64	Setting Holding Tone
Setting Caller ID to Send/Not to Send for Each Call	66	Using Public Mode
..... 184/186	67	Checking Missed Calls
Sending Touch-tone Signals	67	Recording Voice Messages when You Cannot Answer the Call
Making International Calls	67	Recording a Message when You Cannot Answer Incoming Call
Setting Prefix to Be Added to a Phone Number	70	Playing/Deleting Record Message
..... Prefix dial	71	..... Play/Delete record message
Making a Call Specifying a Sub Address	71	Videophone Settings
..... Sub address setting	71	Setting Image to Send
Setting an Alarm until Connection is Reestablished	71	Changing Videophone Settings
..... Reconnect alarm	71	Setting Answer Method of Videophone Call during i-mode
Reducing Surrounding Noise to Make Voice Clear	72	..... V-phone while packet
..... Noise reduction	72	
Receiving Calls/Videophone Calls		
Receiving a Call/Videophone Call	72	
Setting How to Answer Incoming Voice Calls	74	
..... Answer mode	74	
Ending/Holding Call by Closing the FOMA Terminal	74	
..... Close setting	74	

Videophone Calls

The videophone call can be used with a mobile phone that supports DCOMO's videophone call.

- DCOMO's videophone call complies with "ISO 3GPP"¹ standardized 3G-324M². DCOMO's videophone calls cannot connect with mobile phones that support a different videophone call system.

*1 3GPP (3rd Generation Partnership Project)

The regional standards organization for developing common technical specifications for the third generation mobile communication systems (IMT-2000).

*2 3G-324M

The international standard of 3rd Generation Mobile Videophone.

- There are 2 different videophone call communication rates, 64K (64kbps) and 32K (32kbps), this FOMA terminal cannot use videophone call at 32K.

- This FOMA terminal does not support remote monitoring.
- The battery pack life may shorten if you make a videophone call for a long time while charging. The power may turn off during a videophone call, if you make the call with the charging adapter connected when the battery level is low.

Videophone Call Screen Components



1 Main window

The other party's image appears by default.

2 Sub window

Your image appears by default.

3 Call duration

Displayed in the format of minutes: seconds.

4 Settings icons

Zoom adjustment P.59

Display Hands-free ON/OFF state P.57

Picture mode (Camera image/Substitute image) P.59

Making a Call/Videophone Call

1 Enter a phone number

- Up to 80 digits can be entered and displayed.
- Enter a number from "0" to "99" to view the Phonebook entry of the corresponding memory number. P.97
- Start from the area code even for a local call.
- [Save]: Add a new or extra phone number to the Phonebook. P.89



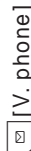
Phone number entry screen

2

To make a voice call



To make a videophone call



- A ringing tone sounds from the earpiece, and the "Calling..." dialing screen is displayed until the other party answers the call.
- [Spk ON/Spk OFF]: Switch Hands-free ON and OFF.
 - Pressing a dial key, , or during a call allows you to send touch-tone signals.



Voice call screen



Videophone call screen

■ During a video call

The following icons show the state of the settings on the Voice call screen.

- Display Hands-free ON/OFF State P 59
- Mute/Unmute P 74
- Receiver volume P 74

■ During a videophone call

- [Image/Camera]: Switch the image to send between the substitute image and the camera image.

3

To terminate the call,

Note

- If you hear the voice guidance for the Caller ID request, make the call again sending your caller ID.
 - You cannot switch between a voice/videophone call during a call using this FOMA terminal.
 - Closing the FOMA terminal during a call terminates the call when "Close setting" is set to "End the call", and holds the call when set to "On Hold". However, if the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch (optional) is connected, closing the FOMA terminal does not terminate the call or place the call on hold.
 - The low battery alert sounds from the earpiece if the battery becomes low during a call. You can continue the call; however, the call will be terminated momentarily and the power is automatically turned o .
 - This FOMA terminal does not support Hands-Free devices via a USB connection (such as In-Car Hands-Free Kit 01).
- <Videophone>
- A call cannot be connected if you make a videophone call to a mobile phone that does not support videophone calls, or if the other party's mobile phone is out of service area or turned o .
 - If you make a videophone call to a phone that does not support videophone calls when you have set "Auto redial as voice" to "ON", the call will be disconnected before the connection is established, and the FOMA terminal automatically redials the number as a voice call. However, if the other party uses an ISDN 6.4 K connection, or ISDN videophone that does not support the 3G-3.24M standard (as of June, 2009), or you dialed a wrong number, the above action may not be taken. Note that communication charges may apply.
 - If you make a videophone call to an emergency number such as "110", "119", or "118", a voice call will be made automatically.
 - Incoming i-mode mail or MessageR/F during a videophone call is stored at the i-mode center. SMS can be received even during a videophone call.
 - Digital call charge applies for sending the substitute image.

Message	Description
Check number, then redial	The phone number is not valid.
Busy	The other party is on a call (this message may appear when the other party's mobile phone is performing packet communication depending on the mobile phone). The other party is in packet communication.
Out of service area/power off	The other party's mobile phone is either out of service area or turned off.
Set Caller ID to ON	The caller ID was not sent (when the call is made to the number for visualnet, etc.).
Your call is being forwarded	The call is being forwarded.
Redial using voice call	The Call forwarding service is activated, and the forwarding destination does not support videophone calls.
Upper limit has been exceeded. Connection failed	Your usage fees have exceeded the limit of your plan (Type limit or Family Wide limit).

Message	Description
Please make your call from I-mode	The videophone call was not dialed from the official I-mode site information provider (when the call is made to V-live).
Failed to connect	Set "Caller ID notification" to "Notify" and redial. • This message may appear for other reasons, as well.

Phone Number Entry Screen Sub Menu

1 Phone number entry screen (P56) [Menu]

Perform the following operations

[Add to phonebook]

Add an entry to the Phonebook. P88

[Video phone call]

Make a videophone call.

[Caller ID]

Set whether to notify your caller ID when you make a call. P66

[Int. call]

After selecting the country code to make a call, "009130010" (WORLD CALL) and the country code are inserted at the beginning of the phone number. P67

[Select prefix]

Add prefix number at the beginning of the entered phone number. This can be added only once. P68

[Multi number]

If you subscribe to Multi Number, select the number to use when making a call. P401

Correcting an entered phone number

To delete an entered digit, use  to move the cursor to a digit to delete, and press .

Screen display during dialing

The other party's name is displayed if the other party's phone number is saved in the Phonebook.

If a videophone call could not be made

The following messages appear if a videophone call could not be made (depending on the other party's mobile phone model or subscribed network services, the displayed messages may not describe the actual situation).

[Chaku-moji]
Send Chaku-moji. P 65

Voice Call Screen Sub Menu

Voice call screen (P57) [Menu] [Menu]
Perform the following operations

[New call]¹

Place the active call on hold, and dial another party.

[End active call]
Terminate the call.

[Hold]

Place the active call on hold. To cancel, press [] or [] (Active).

[Mute/Unmute]

Enable/Disable to mute your voice on the other party's mobile phone.

[Send my info]

Create i-mode mail with your number (Own number) entered in the message text. P 138

[Search phonebook]²

Search for a Phonebook entry. P 92

*1 Not available if you do not subscribe to Call waiting service.

*2 Not available when the Phonebook is accessed. To use this function, terminate applicable functions from the Task list screen. P 350

Videophone Call Screen Sub Menu

Videophone call screen (P57) [Menu] [Menu]
Perform the following operations

[End call]
Terminate the call.

[Hold]

Place the active call on hold. To cancel, press [] or [] (Active). If you press [] (Image) to cancel the hold, the substitute image is sent to the other party.

[Substitute image/Camera image]

Switch the image to send between the substitute image and the camera image.

[Camera settings]

Configure the camera for videophone calls. Use [] to select an icon, and use [] to select an item. After setting, press [] (Close).

Zoom : Zoom the camera image (x 1 / x 2).

Brightness : Adjust the brightness (High/Medium/Low) of the camera image.

Night mode : Set this when using the camera in a dark place, etc.

[Videophone set]

Set the display and lighting for videophone calls. After setting, press [] to return to the Videophone call screen.

Display setting

Other - Me : Display the other party's image on the main window and your image on the sub window.

Me - Other : Display your image on the main window and the other party's image on the sub window.

Other only : Display only the other party's image.

Me only : Display only your image.

Light

Always ON : Always light up during a call.

Terminal setting : Use "Backlight" settings. P 110

[Screen size]
Set the display size of the main window.

[Visual preference]
Set quality of the image sent to the other party.
Prefer image quality : The image with maximized image quality is sent. This option is effective when there is little motion.
Normal : Set standard quality and motion for the sent image.

Prefer motion speed : Set priority to motion for the sent image.
This option is effective when there is a lot of motions.

[Switch camera]
Switch the camera to send the image to the other party between the inner camera and the Outer camera.

[Search phonebook]
Search for a Phonebook entry. P.92

[Own number]
Display your phone number (Own number).

* Not available when the Phonebook is accessed. To use this function, terminate applicable functions from the Task list screen. P.350

Making a Call Using Redial/Received Calls

Redial and the Received call logs can be used to make calls. Also, the Recent calls (both sent and received) can be used to make calls.

Redial calls

Calling the Same Party Again

Redial maintains a list of the last 30 voice or video phone calls. The phone number and the calling date and time are recorded in the call logs.

- If more than 30 calls are made, the log is deleted from the oldest.
- If you call the same phone number repeatedly, only the latest one is recorded.

1 Stand-by display



- 1 Name saved in the Phonebook
If the caller's name is not saved in the Phonebook, the phone number is displayed.
- 2 Outgoing phone call type
Make a voice call
Make a video phone call
- 3 Call date and time
- 4 Dialing an international call
Make a call overseas from Japan



Redial list screen

- Make a call from overseas during international roaming
- Make an international call from overseas during international roaming

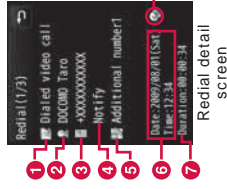
2 Move the cursor to the number to redial

[Detail]

- 1 Outgoing phone call type
- 2 The name saved in the Phonebook
If the number is not saved in the Phonebook, "Unregistered" is displayed.
- 3 The other party's phone number
- 4 "Caller ID" setting when dialing
Appear when you make a call with the caller ID (P58) set to "Notify".
- 5 Multi Number used for dialing
Display the Multi Number used to dial by the registered name in "Number setting" (P401).

* Appear when you subscribe to the Multi Number service.

- 6 Call date and time
- 7 Call duration
- 8 Outgoing international call
 - Make a call overseas from Japan
- 9 Make a call from overseas during international roaming
- 10 Make an international call from overseas during international roaming



- A call dialed with "184" or "186" is recorded as a separate Redial entry.
- Press [Detail] on the Redial list screen/Redial detail screen to create i-mode mail to the phone number on the selected Redial entry.

Redial List Screen/Redial Detail Screen Sub Menu

1 Redial list screen (P60)/Redial detail screen (P61) [Menu] Perform the following operations

[Call function]

- Voice call : Make a voice call.
- Videophone call : Make a videophone call.
- Customize call : Change the redial phone number and make a call.

[Mail]

- Compose mail : Create i-mode mail addressed to the redial phone number. P138
 - If the mail address is saved in the Phonebook, the saved mail address is used as a recipient.

Compose SMS : Create SMS addressed to the redial phone number.

[Add to phonebook]

Add the redial phone number to the Phonebook. P88

[Change list]

Switch logs to display.

- Recent mails : Display the Recent mail list screen. P166
- Recent calls : Display the Recent call list screen. P64
- Received mail : Display the Received mail list screen. P166
- Received calls : Display the Received call list screen. P62
- Sent mail : Display the Sent mail list screen. P166

3

To make a voice call

[Call]

To make a videophone call

[V. phone]

Note

- You can make a voice call by selecting an entry on the Redial list screen and pressing [Call], and make a videophone call by pressing [V. phone].
- If the same phone number is saved repeatedly in the Phonebook, the name found first in the Reading search is displayed.

[Delete]

Delete the selected redial log.

- Multiple redial logs can be deleted on the list screen.

Delete one* : Delete the selected redial log.

Selected* : Select and delete multiple logs.

Mark logs to delete [Delete]

- Press [SelAll/CtrlAll] to select/clear all.

Delete all* : Delete all redial logs.

- Not displayed on the detail screen.

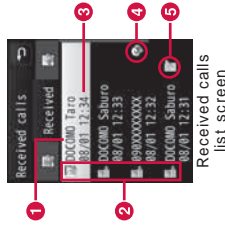
Received calls

Making a Call Using Received Calls

The Received call logs maintains a list of the last 30 incoming calls and videophone calls. Phone numbers and received dates/times are stored in a call log.

- If more than 30 calls are received, the most recent 30 calls are retained.

1 Stand-by display



- 1 The party's name saved in the Phonebook
If the caller's name is not saved, the phone number is displayed. If the caller did not send the caller ID, the reason for no caller ID is displayed.
- 2 Incoming phone call type
[Answered/Missed voice call (including rejected calls)]
[Answered/Missed videophone call (including rejected calls)]
- 3 Received date and time
- 4 Incoming international call
[Incoming international call from overseas]
[Incoming call during international roaming overseas]
[Incoming international call during international roaming overseas]
- 5 Received Chaku-moji

2 Move the cursor to a log entry



- 1 Incoming phone call type
- 2 The name saved in the Phonebook
If the phone number is not in the Phonebook, "Unregistered" is displayed, and if the caller ID was not received, "User unset" is displayed.
- 3 The other party's phone number
Multi Number received
Display the received Multi Number as the registered name in "Number setting" (P401).
- 4 Multi Number received
Display the received Multi Number as the registered name in "Number setting" (P401).
- 5 Received date and time
- 6 Call duration/Ring time (Missed call)
- 7 Received message with Chaku-moji
- 8 Incoming international call
[Incoming international call from overseas]
[Incoming call during international roaming overseas]
[Incoming international call during international roaming overseas]



- * Appear when you subscribe to the Multi Number service.

- 5 Received date and time
- 6 Call duration/Ring time (Missed call)
- 7 Received message with Chaku-moji
- 8 Incoming international call
[Incoming international call from overseas]
[Incoming call during international roaming overseas]
[Incoming international call during international roaming overseas]

3

To make a voice call



[Call]

To make a videophone call



[V. phone]

Note

- You can make a voice call by selecting an entry on the Received calls list screen and pressing [Call], and make a videophone call by pressing [V. phone].
- The reason for no caller ID is displayed in the log entry of the call without caller ID. P.129
- If the same phone number is saved repeatedly in the Phonebook, the name found first in the Reading search is displayed.
- A call log for the number that used dial-in service may be displayed differently from the actual number.
- Press [Mail] on the Received calls list/detail screen to create i-mode mail to the phone number in the selected received call log entry.

Received Calls List Screen/Received Calls Detail Screen Sub Menu

- 1 Received calls list screen (P62)/Received call detail screen (P62) [Menu] [Menu] Perform the following operations

[Call function]

- Voice call : Make a voice call.
- Videophone call : Make a videophone call.
- Customize call : Change the phone number in Received calls and make a call.

[Mail]

- Compose mail : Create i-mode mail addressed to the phone number in Received calls. P.138
 - If the mail address is saved in Phonebook, the saved mail address is used as a recipient.
- Compose SMS : Create SMS addressed to the phone number in Received calls.

[Add to phonebook]

- Add the phone number in Received calls to the Phonebook. P.88

[Change list]

- Switch logs to display.
- Recent mails : Display the Recent mail list screen. P.166
- Recent calls : Display the Recent call list screen. P.64
- Received mail : Display the Received mail list screen. P.166
- Redial : Display the Redial list screen. P.60
- Sent mail : Display the Sent mail list screen. P.166


[Delete]

Delete the selected received call log.

- Multiple redial logs can be deleted on the list screen.

Delete one* : Delete the selected received call log.

Selected* : Select and delete multiple logs.

Mark logs to delete  [Delete]

- Press  [Delete]

Delete all* : Delete all received call logs.

* Not displayed on the detail screen.

Recent calls

Making a Call Using Recent Calls

Up to 60 incoming and outgoing calls can be recorded in

"Recent".

- If more than 60 calls are recorded, the most recent 60 calls are retained.

1 Stand-by display Use to display "Recent"

For further operations and the descriptions of screen components, refer to Redial calls (P.60) and Received calls (P.62) sections.

Note

- The Recent call list screen/detail screen sub menu operations are the same as the Redial and Received call list screen/detail screen. P.61, P.63

Chaku-moji

Using Chaku-moji

Send a message at the same time when making a voice or videophone call to tell the other party the point to talk.

- Up to 10 full-pitch/half-pitch characters, pictographs and symbols can be sent.
- Charges apply on the sender side, and not apply on the receiver side.
- For details about Chaku-moji or its compatible model, visit the DOCOMO's web site or see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Network Services]".



Chaku-moji

- While All lock is activated or Phonebook function is locked with Data access lock, Chaku-moji is not displayed even if it is received. After canceling the lock, the message is displayed on the Received call detail screen.

Editing and Setting Message

Saving Message

- Up to 10 messages can be saved.

1 [MENU] "Settings" "NW Services"
"Chaku-moji" "Create message"

2 Move the cursor to the number to save or edit
[←] [Edit] Enter or edit a message

- To delete the saved Chaku-moji, move the cursor to Chaku-moji to delete [MENU] [Menu] "Delete"/"Delete all" "Yes".

Setting whether to Display Received Chaku-moji

1 [MENU] "Settings" "NW Services"
"Chaku-moji" "Message display set"

Select an item

- Display all messages : Display Chaku-moji from all senders.
Only number in PB : Display Chaku-moji only from senders saved in the Phonebook.
Calls with caller ID : Display Chaku-moji only from senders with caller ID.
Hide all messages : Do not display Chaku-moji.

Dialing with Message

1 Enter a phone number [MENU] [Menu]
"Chaku-moji" Perform the following operations

- You can send Chaku-moji to the party saved on the Phonebook by entering a memory number with Quick dial (P97)
[MENU] [Menu] "Chaku-moji".

[Create message]
Enter a message.

[Select message]
Select from saved messages.

[Sent message]
Select from sent messages. Up to latest 10 messages are saved.

2 [✓] or [Call]

- To make a videoconference call
Press [V] [V. phone].

Note

- When the recipient received Chaku-moji, "Transmission completed" appears and transmission charge applies.
- Under the following conditions on the receiver side, "Transmission failed" appears and transmission charge does not apply.
 - Chaku-moji incompatible terminal
 - Chaku-moji restricting to be sent in Message display setting
 - Staying overseas
 - While Public mode (Drive mode) is set
 - When the answer time of Record message is set to 0 sec
 - Out of service area or the power is turned off
- The sent result does not appear.
- Depending on the signal conditions, the sent result may not appear even when Chaku-moji arrived at the other party's terminal. In this case, transmission charges apply.
- Chaku-moji cannot be sent/received for overseas usage.

184/186

Setting Caller ID to Send/Not to Send for Each Call

There are 2 ways to show/hide the caller ID for each call: adding "184"/"186", and using the sub menu on the Phone number entry screen.

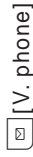
Adding 184/186 to Send/Not to Send Caller ID

- 1 Enter "184" (Do not notify) / "186" (Notify)
Enter the phone number

- 2 To make a voice call



To make a videophone call



Using Sub Menu to Send/Not to Send Caller ID

Example: To use the Phone number entry screen sub menu

- 1 Enter the phone number [Menu] [Menu]
"Caller ID" "Not notify" / "Notify" / "Cancel"

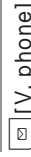
- 2 To make a voice call



or

[Call]

To make a videophone call



[V. phone]

Note




- You can set to show/hide the caller ID to the network in advance. P54

Pause

Sending Touch-tone Signals

Enter "P" and a number after the phone number and make a voice call to send the number after "P" as touch tone signal (DTMF). You can use this for services such as online ticket reservation or bank balance inquiry.

- The signal may not be received depending on the device on the receiving side.

- 1 Enter the phone number Press  3 times and enter "P" Enter the number to send 
After the call is connected, the number after "P" is displayed and press  to send the displayed number.


WORLD CALL

Making International Calls

WORLD CALL is an international call service available on DOCOMO mobile phones.

- If you subscribe to FOMA service, also subscribe "WORLD CALL" together. (However a customer who subscribe to the service without "WORLD CALL" is the exception.)
- This service is available in approximately 240 countries and regions around the world.
- Charges for "WORLD CALL" are added to the monthly FOMA service call charges.
- No initial fee nor fixed monthly charges apply.
- This service is not available with some billing plans.
- Even if the caller ID notification is set, the caller ID may not be notified or phone number is not displayed correctly, depending on the telecommunication carrier. In this case, you cannot make a call from the Received calls screen.
- For details on WORLD CALL, contact "General Inquiries" at the back of this manual.

- When using international carriers other than DOCOMO, please contact the carrier directly.

You can make an "International videophone call" to parties who use a videophone call-compatible terminal of an international carrier that supports FOMA's videophone call by pressing  [Menu] "Video phone call" after the following dialing procedures.

- For information on the countries where connection can be made and telecommunication carriers, visit the DOCOMO International Services website.
- The other party's image displayed on the FOMA terminal may blur, or the call may not be connected depending on the other party's terminal.

Making an International Call by Entering the Phone Number

Enter a phone number in the following order.

- 1 Enter "010 - Country code - Area code (City code) - Other party's phone number"
 - If the Area code (City code) starts with "0", remove "0". (In a few countries/regions such as Italy, "0" must not be removed).
 - Alternatively, enter 009130 - 010 - Country code - Area code (City code) - Other party's phone number.

2

- To make an international videophone call Press  [V. phone].

Making an International Call Using "+"

Entering "+" at the beginning of a phone number replaces "+" with an international access code automatically.

- The WORLD CALL (009130010) is set to be added automatically by default. P.69

- 1 Press (for 1+ seconds) to enter "+"
Enter "Country code - Area code (City code) - Phone Number"

- You can also press twice to input "+".
- If the Area code (City code) starts with "0", remove "0". (In a few countries/regions such as Italy, "0" must not be removed).

2



- Dial : Make an international call after converting "+" into an international access code.
- Original number : Make an international call to the number entered on the terminal.
- Cancel : Cancel dialing.



Dialed call confirmation screen

- 3 To make an international videophone call
Press [V. phone].

3 Select a dialing method

Note

- This option is available only inside the FOMA network service area.
- If the phone number starts with "+81", "+", "0" will not be converted into an international access code.

Making an International Call Adding International Access Code

You can select an international access code from the sub menu and add it to the entered phone number.

- 1 Enter "Country code - Area code (City code) - Other party's phone number"

- If the Area code (City code) starts with "0", remove "0". (In a few countries/regions such as Italy, "0" must not be removed).

2



"Select prefix" Select an international access code

The selected international access code is inserted at the beginning of the entered phone number.



- 3 To make an international videophone call
Press [V. phone].

Note

- By default, WORLD CALL (009130010) is registered to "Prefix 1". P.70


Making an International Call Easily

The International dial settings can be changed.

- Even if the caller ID notification is set, the caller ID may not be notified or phone number is not displayed correctly, depending on the telecommunication carrier. In this case, you cannot make a call using the Received calls.

Setting to Add the International Access Code Automatically <Auto assist>

You can set whether to add an international access code automatically instead of "+", when you make a call by entering "+," at the beginning of the phone number.


 "Settings" "International dial"
"Auto assist" "Auto"/"OFF"

Auto : Convert "+" automatically to the number specified in
IDD prefix.

OFF : "+" is not converted.

Setting International Access Codes <IDD prefix>

When "Auto assist" is set to "Auto", specify the international access code to be added automatically. Save 1 country code required when you make an international call.

 "Settings" "International dial" "IDD
prefix" Perform the following operations

[IDD prefix name]


Enter IDD prefix name of International call used for Auto assist.

[IDD prefix code]

Enter IDD prefix code of International call used for Auto assist.

Setting to Add Assist of Country Code Automatically <Auto international dial>

Set whether to automatically replace leading "0", if entered, of a phone number with "+ Country code" during international roaming. Also, you can specify the Country code to be added automatically.

 "Settings" "International dial"
"Auto Int'l dial" Perform the following
operations



[Auto Int'l dial]

Set whether to add a Country code automatically.

[Country code]


Set a Country code to add.

Note

- Country code is not added automatically in the following cases.
 - When entered "+" at the beginning of the phone number
 - When selecting a phone number from a message body or site, etc. and dialing
 - When dialing from i-ppii

Registering a Country Code <Country code list>

Up to 50 Country codes required to make an international call can be saved.

-  "Settings" "International dial" "Country code list"



- Select unregistered item Perform the following operations

[Country name]

Save a name of the Country code. Up to 7 full-pitch or 14 half-pitch characters can be entered.

[Country code]

Save up to 5 digits.


-  [Done]

- The newly saved Country code is displayed first, and the already saved codes are displayed after the second entry.

Editing Country code

Select the Country code to edit on the Country code list screen  [Done].

Deleting Country code

Select the Country code to delete on the Country code list screen  "Yes".


Note

- You can also edit the pre-installed Country codes.
- When "Auto Int'l dial" is set in "Auto Int'l dial" (P69), you cannot delete the Country code specified in "Country code".

Prefix dial

Setting Prefix to Be Added to a Phone Number

Up to 3 numbers (prefixes) to be added to the beginning of the phone number such as an international access code, "184", or "186" can be saved.

-  "Settings" "Call/VT/Dialing" "Prefix dial"

- Select a Prefix entry field Enter the number  [Set]

- Up to 10 digits can be entered as a prefix.


Note

- Do not include pauses, etc. to the prefix. If they are present, the call cannot be connected with prefix.

Sub address setting

Making a Call Specifying a Sub Address

You can set whether digits after "*" is identified as a sub address when entering a phone number with "*". A sub address is used to access a specific device connected to an ISDN line or to select contents on "V-live".

 "Settings" "Call/VT/Dialing"
Move the cursor to "Sub address setting"

 [ON/OFF]

- ON : Identify the address after "*" as a sub address.
- OFF : The address after "*" is not identified as a sub address.


Note

- "*" is not identified as a delimiter of a sub address if:
 - "*" is entered at the beginning of the phone number.
 - A specific number such as "184" or "186" is entered at the beginning of the phone number and "*" is entered right after it.

Reconnect alarm

Setting an Alarm until Connection is Reestablished

You can set an alarm that keeps sounding until a voice or videophone call is reconnected when the call was disconnected due to weak signals.

 "Settings" "Call/VT/Dialing" "Call feature" "Reconnect alarm" Select an Alarm

Alarm OFF : Mute an alarm.

Low alarm : Set to low alarm.

High alarm : Set to high alarm.

Note

- Available duration for reconnection varies depending on the status of usage and signal.
- If the signal suddenly worsens, the call may be disconnected without the alarm sounding.
- The call charge applies during the reconnection attempt.
- While the call is disconnected, the other party hears nothing.

Noise reduction

Reducing Surrounding Noise to Make Voice Clear

Noise reduction suppresses background noises. The other party can hear your voice clearer even in a noisy place.

1.  "Settings" "Call/VT/Dialing" "Call feature"
Move the cursor to "Noise reduction" 


ON : Activate Noise reduction.

OFF : Deactivate Noise reduction.


Receiving a Call/Videophone Call

1 An incoming call arrives

The ring tone sounds.

- : Place the call on hold. P 75

- During a videophone call

- : Answer the call using the substitute image.




Voice call incoming call screen

Videophone call incoming call screen


2

Answer the call.

-  [Spk ON/Spk OFF]: Switch Hands-free ON and OFF.
- Press a dial key, , or  during a call to send touch-tone signals.

- During a videophone call
-  [Image/Camera]: Switch the image to send between the alternate image and the camera image.

3

To terminate the call, 

When the caller sent the caller ID

If the caller is registered in the Phonebook, the phone number and registered name are displayed.

When the caller did not send the caller ID

The reason for no caller ID is displayed instead of a phone number. P 129

Note

- The incoming call actions such as a ring tone or vibration vary depending on the settings or the saved information in the Phonebook. P 84, P 100, P 102
- When "Manner mode" is activated, the ring tone does not sound. However, if "Original manner" is activated, incoming call is notified according to the settings. P 105
- Closing the FOMA terminal during a call terminates the call when "Close setting" is set to "End the call", and holds the call when it is set to "On hold". However, if the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch (optional) is connected, closing the FOMA terminal does not terminate the call or place the call on hold.

- If you subscribe to the Voice mail, Call waiting or Call forwarding service, and set "Arrival call act" to "Answer" and "Set in-call arrival act" to "Activate", in-call arrival tone sounds when a call arrives during another call. If the tone sounds during a call, the network services are available. P400
However, the tone does not sound while a call is placed on response hold, or a message is being recorded (P78) because calls cannot arrive under these situations.
- When the Public mode (Drive mode) is activated, an incoming call is not indicated (the ring tone does not sound, either). Also, even if a call arrives when the display is turned on, the display backlight will not be turned on.
- If you subscribe to Multi Number, the name registered in "Number setting" (P401) appears according to the number received.
- You can enable "Set mute ring(sec.)*" to delay the incoming call actions for a call made from the other party not saved in the Phonebook or without the caller ID. P130
- Use the following functions to reject incoming calls from a caller not saved in the Phonebook or from a specific caller.
 - Reject unknown P130
 - Reject on List P127
- You cannot switch between a voice/video phone call during a call using this FOMA terminal.
- The low battery alert sounds from the earpiece if the battery becomes low during a call. You can continue the call; however, the call will be terminated momentarily and the power is automatically turned on.
- This FOMA terminal does not support Hands-free devices via a USB connection (such as In-Car Hands-Free Kit 01).
- When "Answer mode" is set to "Open flip", you can answer a call by opening the FOMA terminal. If set to "Any key answer", you can answer a call by pressing a dial key, , or . P74

< Videophone call >

- When the Voice mail service is activated with a videophone call, an SMS notifies you of a new record message.
- Even if the Call forwarding service is activated, an incoming videophone call is not forwarded if the forwarding destination is not a videophone device supporting 3G-324M. Check the capabilities of the forwarding destination device before setting Call forwarding.
- Incoming i-mode mail or MessageR/F during a videophone call is stored at the i-mode center. SMS can be received even during a videophone call.
- You cannot receive videophone calls of the communication speed of 32K (32kbps).

Incoming Call Screen Sub Menu

[Menu] on the Incoming call screen (P72)
Perform the following operations

[Voice mail]^{*1}

Connect the incoming call to the Voice mail service center.

[Call rejection]

Reject an incoming call and hang up.

[Call forwarding]^{*2}

Forward an incoming call to the specified number.

[Silent]

Stop the ring tone or vibration.



Press to answer the call.


*1 Not available if you do not subscribe to the Voice mail service.

*2 Not available if you do not subscribe to the Call forwarding service or you have not specified a forwarding number.

Answer mode

Setting How to Answer Incoming Voice Calls

You can set to answer an incoming call by opening the FOMA terminal (Open flip) or pressing a dial key (Any key answer) other than  or  [Answer].

-  "Settings" "Call/VT/Dialing" "Incoming call" "Answer mode" Perform the following operations



[Open flip]

Answer a call by opening the FOMA terminal.

[Any key answer]


Answer a call by pressing a dial key, , or  in addition to  or  [Answer].

[Send key only]

Answer a call by pressing  or  [Answer].

Close setting

Ending/Holding Call by Closing the FOMA Terminal

-  "Settings" "Call/VT/Dialing" "Call feature" "Close setting" Select a condition when the terminal is closed

End the call : Terminate the call.



On hold : Place the active call on hold.



Mute : Continue the call. The other party cannot hear your voice.

Receiver volume

Adjusting Earpiece Volume

The receiver volume can be adjusted in 7 levels from 1 to 7.

- Voice/Videophone call screen (P57)  / 

- : Increase the volume.
- : Decrease the volume.

Note

- The adjusted receiver volume will be retained even after the call.
- "Receiver volume" in "Volume" (P102) is also changed.

Holding

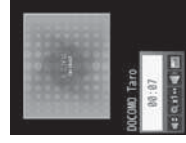
Putting a Call on Hold when You Cannot Answer Immediately

1 Incoming call screen (P72)

The tone set in "On hold tone" (P75) is played. The image set in "Response hold image" (P80) appears for videophone calls.



Voice call response hold screen



Videophone call response hold screen

2

When you can resume the call,



- You can also cancel the hold on a videophone call by pressing [Answer]. If you press [Answer] to cancel the hold, the alternate image will be sent to the other party.
- To terminate a voice call/videophone call Press [End Call].

Note

- The other party is charged during a hold.
- If you subscribe to the Voice mail service/Call forwarding service, you can connect the incoming call to the Voice mail service center/forward the incoming call to the specified phone number. P392, P396

On hold tone

Setting Answer Holding Tone

You can select one of the 3 answer holding tones (guidance) to play to the caller when you place the incoming call on hold.

[MENU] "Settings" "Call/VT/Dialing"

"Incoming call" "On hold tone"

"Hold tone 1"/"Hold tone 2"/"Hold tone 3"

- [Play]: Play back the hold tone.

Holding tone

Setting Holding Tone

You can select one of the 3 holding tones to play to the caller when you place the call on hold.

[MENU] "Settings" "Call/VT/Dialing"

"Call feature" "Holding tone"

"Hold tone 1"/"Hold tone 2"/"Hold tone 3"

- [Play]: Play the hold tone.

Using Public Mode

Public mode is an automatic response service to assist in observing manners in public locations.

- Public mode includes the following 2 types.
 - Drive mode
 - Power O
- Voice mail service (*1), Call forwarding service (*1), and Caller ID request service (*2) take priority over Public mode.
 - *1 For voice calls with the ring time set to other than "0 Sec.", the service is activated after the guidance for Public mode.
 - *2 If the other party sends the caller ID, Public mode is activated.
- Public mode is not activated for calls you reject using Nuisance call blocking service.

Public mode (Drive mode)

Using Public Mode (Drive Mode)

The voice guidance is played to the caller indicating that you cannot answer the call as you are driving or at a place where you cannot talk (such as on a train, bus, or in a movie theater), and the call is disconnected.

- You can set or cancel Public mode (Drive mode) only in Stand-by (even when "圏外" is displayed).
- This option is not available during data communication.

1 ☒ (for 1 + seconds)

When a call arrives, the voice guidance is played in Japanese saying that "The person you are calling is currently driving or in the area where mobile phones should not be used. Please call again later".

When activating Public mode (Drive mode)

When a call arrives to your FOMA terminal, the ring tone does not sound. ☒ appears on the Stand-by display, and the call is recorded in the Received call log.

The voice guidance indicating that you are driving or you are at a location where you cannot use mobile phones is played to the caller, and the call is disconnected.

Deactivating Public mode (Drive mode)

Press ☒ (for 1 + seconds) in Stand-by.


Note

- ☒ appears at the top of the screen when Public mode (Drive mode) is activated.
- Even when Public mode (Drive mode) is activated, you can make calls as usual.
- If Manner mode is activated concurrently, Public mode (Drive mode) settings take precedence.
- Tones other than from operations (ring tones or alarms, etc.) do not sound when Public mode (Drive mode) is activated.
- If mail arrives when Public mode (Drive mode) is activated, incoming mail actions such as sounding the ring tone, or vibrating the FOMA terminal will not take place.

Public mode (Power OFF)

Using Public Mode (Power OFF)

When a call arrives while the power is turned off, the voice guidance is played to the caller indicating that you are at a place where mobile phones must be turned off (such as in hospitals, in aircraft, or near priority seats on a train) and cannot answer the call, and the call is disconnected.

1 Enter ***25251*** 

Public mode (Power OFF) is activated (there is no change for the Stand-by display).


After Public mode (Power OFF) is activated, when a call arrives while the power is turned off, the voice guidance is played in Japanese saying that "The person you are calling is currently in the area where mobile phone use is prohibited and cannot answer the call. Please call again later".

When activating Public mode (Power OFF)


Public mode (Power OFF) is activated until it is deactivated by dialing ***25250***. Turning the power on does not deactivate the mode.

Public mode (Power OFF) voice guidance is played even when you are out of service area or in a place with weak signals. The voice guidance indicating that you are at a location where you must turn the terminal off is played to the caller, and the call is disconnected.

Deactivating Public mode (Power OFF)

Enter ***25250*** and press .

Checking the status of Public mode (Power OFF)

Enter ***25259*** and press .

Missed call

Checking Missed Calls

If you could not answer a call, the Missed call notification screen appears on the Stand-by display. The Received calls list screen can be accessed from the icon to check the caller.




1 An incoming call terminates

The Missed call icon appears on the Stand-by display. The number of the icon indicates the number of missed calls.






Missed call icon
(The number indicates the number of calls)

2

 Use  to select 

The Received calls list screen (P62) appears.

Note

- After displaying the Received calls list screen,  disappears. You can also select  and press  for 1+ seconds to clear the icon.

Record message

Recording Voice Messages when You Cannot Answer the Call

When Record message is activated and if you cannot answer a voice call, the voice guidance is played and the caller's message is recorded.

- Up to 5 messages and approximately 15 seconds per message can be recorded.
- Record message does not start when a videophone call arrives. The FOMA terminal answers the call in the normal way.

Setting Record Message

- 1 "Media" "Record message" "Record msg. setting" Perform the following operations

[Activate record msg.]

When activate Record message, set to "ON".

[To answer]

Enter the time after a call arrives and before Record message starts between 0 and 120 seconds.

[Answer message]

Select an answer message.

- [OK][Play]: Check the answer message.

- Available when "Activate record msg." is set to "ON".

2 [OK][Done]

Note

- [OK] appears at the top of the screen when the Record message is activated.
<To answer>
- If the set response time is longer than the ring time set for the Voice mail/Call forwarding services, a network service takes precedence.
- If the response time is set shorter than the time set in "Set mute ring(sec.)" (P130), Record message starts without ringing.

When Record Message is Activated

When a voice call arrives, the caller's voice is recorded.



To talk with the caller while the response message is played or a message is being recorded

Press [OK] or [Active].

To play a recorded message

In Stand-by, press [OK] use [OK] to select [OK] or press [OK] for 1+ seconds to display the Record message list screen (P79).

- Press [OK][Play] to play a recorded message.
- [OK] will disappear after the recorded message is deleted.

Note

- "Record message" is disabled when "圏外" is displayed, the power is turned o or Public mode (Drive mode) is activated.
- If a call arrives when the response message is being played or when a message is being recorded in Record message, the call is rejected.

Quick Record Message

Recording a Message when You Cannot Answer Incoming Call

Even when Record message is disabled, you can record the caller's message with easy operation.

1 Incoming call screen (P72) [] (for 1+seconds)

Caller's voice will be recorded after streaming a guidance.

Note

- If 5 messages are already recorded, Record message will not start and the caller's message cannot be recorded.

Play/Delete record message

Playing/Deleting Record Message



"Media" "Record message"

"Record msg. list"

- [] [Delete]: Delete the selected recorded message.

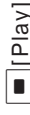
- To delete all recorded messages
On the Record message list screen,
press [Menu] "Delete all".



Record msg. list screen

2

Move the cursor to the recorded message



[] [Play]

The recorded message is played.

- [] [Stop]: Stop playing the message.
- [] [Back]: Return to the Record message list screen.
- Use []/[]/[] to adjust the volume.

Setting Image to Send

Substitute image

Setting Substitute Image

- **Settings** "Call/VT/Dialing" "Default" /
Videophone "Substitute image" "Default" /
Select image

• When "Select image" is selected, select from the images saved in "My picture" of "Data Box". P.296

Response hold image

Setting Response Hold Image

- **Settings** "Call/VT/Dialing" "Response hold image" "Default" /
Videophone "Select image"

• When "Select image" is selected, select from the images saved in "My picture" of "Data Box". P.296

Holding image

Setting Holding Image

- **Settings** "Call/VT/Dialing" "Default" /
Videophone "Holding image" "Default" /
Select image

• When "Select image" is selected, select from the images saved in "My picture" of "Data Box". P.296

Videophone set

Changing Videophone Settings

- **Settings** "Call/VT/Dialing" "Perform the following operations" "Videophone set"

[Display setting]

Set images to be displayed on the main window and sub window for videophone calls.

Other - Me : The other party's image is displayed on the main window, and your image on the sub window.

Me - Other : Your image is displayed on the main window, and the other party's image on the sub window.

Me only : Display only the other party's image.

Me only : Display only your image.

[Send camera image]

Set whether to send your image to the other party. When "OFF" is set, the other party receives the substitute image.

[Screen size]

Set the display size of the main window.

[Visual preference]

Set quality of the image sent to the other party.

Prefer img qual : Send image with maximized image quality. This option is effective when there is little motion.

Normal : Set standard quality and motion for the sent image.

Prefer motion spd : Set priority to motion for the sent image. This option is effective when there is a lot of motions.

[Light]

Set light setting for the screen during a call.

Always ON : Always light up on during a call.

Terminal setting : Use "Backlight" settings. P 110

[Auto redial as voice]

Set whether to automatically redial with voice call if the mobile phone of the other party does not support videophone call.

[Hand-free switch]

Set whether to use Hands-free during a videophone call.

[V-phone while packet]

Set the answer method when a videophone call arrives during i-mode connection. P 81

V-phone while packet

Setting Answer Method of Videophone Call during i-mode

When a videophone call arrives while connecting to i-mode or sending/receiving mails, the setting of this function is applied.



"Settings" "Call/VT/Dialing"

"Videophone" "Videophone set"

"V-phone while packet" Select an item

V-phone priority

: The videophone incoming call screen appears. When answering the call, i-mode communication is disconnected.

Packet download priority : Reject an incoming videophone call.

V-phone answerphone : Connect to the Voice mail service automatically.

Call forwarding : Connect to the Call forwarding service automatically.

Note

- If you do not subscribe to the Voice mail or Call forwarding service, "Packet download priority" setting is applied even if "V-phone answerphone" or "Call forwarding" is set.



Phonebook

Phonebook Available for the FOMA Terminal	84
Adding Entries to the FOMA Terminal Phonebook...	84
Adding Entries to UIM (FOMA Card) Phonebook.....	87
Adding Phonebook Entries from Redial/Received Calls etc.....	88
Changing a Group Name	89
Making a Call from Phonebook... Search phonebook	91
Editing Phonebook Entries	96
Deleting Phonebook Entries	96
Checking Phonebook Storage Status	97
Setting Phonebook.....	97
Making a Call with a Few Key Operation	97
Displaying Call/Mail History.....	98

Phonebook Available for the FOMA Terminal

The FOMA terminal contains 2 types of Phonebooks: The Phonebook saved on the FOMA terminal and the UIM Phonebook saved on the UIM. The following items can be saved/set for each Phonebook.

Item	FOMA terminal Phonebook	UIM Phonebook
Number of entries	Up to 1,000 entries*	Up to 50 entries
Entry details		
Name (Reading)	1 entry	1 entry
Phone number	5 entries	1 entry
Mail Address	3 entries	1 entry
Group	31 groups	11 groups
Image	1 entry	None
Other settings	Secret code, Ring tone, Mail tone, etc.	None

* Depending on the saved details, 1,000 entries may not be saved.

Note

- If you insert your UIM into another FOMA terminal, you can use your Phonebook data on the UIM.

Adding Entries to the FOMA Terminal Phonebook

- Note that the service counter such as the docomo Shop may not be able to copy Phonebook data from your existing FOMA terminal to the new one, depending on the specifications.

1 Stand-by display (for 1 + seconds)



2 Perform the following operations

(Save to)

Select the save location. This section explains the case where "Phone" is selected as the save location. When "UIM" is selected as the save location, the Add to UIM Phonebook screen appears. P87

(Memory No.)

The smallest un-assigned number is allocated automatically. You can also change it to your favorite number from 000 to 999 manually.

(Name)

Enter up to 16 full-pitch or 32 half-pitch characters. Enter with Kanji, Hiragana, pictographs, symbols, alphanumeric characters, or Katakana, etc.



 **Reading**

Enter or edit as required. Enter up to 32 half-pitch characters. Enter with Katakana, alphanumeric characters, or symbols.

 **Phone number**

Enter up to 26 digits.

Enter a phone number Select an icon

- On the Phone number entry screen, you can press  [Menu] to select "Int. call", "Select prefix", or "Cancel". Press  [Cancel] to cancel the entry.

 **Mail address**

Enter up to 50 half-pitch characters. Enter with alphanumeric characters or symbols.

Enter a mail address Select an icon

 **Secret code**¹⁾

Set the secret code.

Enter the Terminal security code Select an icon for the phone number/mail address Enter the secret code

- On the Secret code screen, press  [Release] to cancel the setting.

 **(Select a group)**

Select one from "No group" or "グループ1 (Group 1)" to "グループ30 (Group 30)". Groups can be used for the Group search (P92), etc.

 **Image**³⁾

Set an image or i-motion to be displayed when making/receiving calls or when checking a Phonebook entry.

My picture : Select an image saved in "My picture" of "Data Box". P296

i-motion : Select a moving picture/i-motion saved in "i-motion" of "Data Box". P307

Take picture : Activate the camera, and set the captured still image. P222

Terminal setting²⁾ : Use "Call & Mail image" settings. P109

 **Ringtone**³⁾

Select a ring tone for incoming voice/videophone call from the caller saved in the Phonebook.

Music : Select a Chaku-Uta Full[®] song saved in "Music" of "Data Box". P270
Go to Step 3 in "Setting a Chaku-Uta Full[®] Song as a Ring Tone" (P266).


Melody : Select a melody saved in "Melody" of "Data Box". P314

i-motion : Select a moving picture/i-motion saved in "i-motion" of "Data Box". P307

Terminal setting²⁾ : Use "Select ring tone" settings. P100


 **Mail image**³⁾

Select an image or i-motion to be displayed when a mail arrives.

- Available items are the same as for  "Image".

 **Mail ringtone**³⁾

Select a ring tone for incoming mail from the sender saved in the Phonebook.

- Available items are the same as for  "Ringtone".

 **URL**

Enter up to 256 half-pitch characters.

 **Zip code**

Enter up to 7 half-pitch characters.

 **Home address**

Enter up to 100 full-pitch or 200 half-pitch characters. Enter with Kanji, Hiragana, pictographs, symbols, alphanumeric characters, or Katakana, etc.

 **Company name**

Enter up to 50 full-pitch or 100 half-pitch characters. Enter with Kanji, Hiragana, pictographs, symbols, alphanumeric characters, or Katakana, etc.

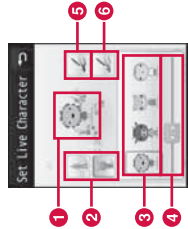
- [📄 **Job title**]
Enter up to 50 full-pitch or 100 half-pitch characters. Enter with Kanji, Hiragana, pictographs, symbols, alphanumeric characters, or Katakana, etc.
 - [📄 **Co. zip code**]
Enter up to 7 half-pitch characters.
 - [📄 **Co. address**]
Enter up to 100 full-pitch or 200 half-pitch characters. Enter with Kanji, Hiragana, pictographs, symbols, alphanumeric characters, or Katakana, etc.
 - [📄 **Memo**]
Enter up to 100 full-pitch or 200 half-pitch characters. Enter with Kanji, Hiragana, pictographs, symbols, alphanumeric characters, or Katakana, etc.
 - [📄 **Birth day**]
Enter birthday.
 - [📄 **Substitute image**]
Set the substitute image for a videophone call.
Data box : Select an image saved in "My picture" of "Data Box". P296
Terminal setting : Use "Substitute image" settings. P80
 - [🔒 **Secret**]
This option appears when "Secret mode" (P127) is set to "Secret mode".
Select "ON" if you save the Phonebook entry to be created as secret data.
 - [👤 **(Select Live Character)**]
Select a Live Character used in Live Character Park. P86
- *1 For details about the Secret code, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [I-mode] FOMA version".

- *2 If you change any one of "Image", "Ringtone", "Mail image", or "Mail ringtone" of the Phonebook while a moving picture/I-motion with video/sound is set for "Select ring tone" (P100) and "Call & Mail image" (P109), the default sound or image is set to "Image" or "Ringtone" that is not changed.
- *3 If you set a moving picture/I-motion with video/sound either for the image or ring tone, the same moving picture/I-motion is set for the other item automatically.

3 [Done]

Changing Live Character of the entry saved on the Phonebook

- To select a character type displayed in Live Character Park, set in "Setting Live Character Park Theme" P338
- Only touch operation is available.
- The screenshot is an example when the character type is set to "Animal".



- 1 Selected Live Character
- 2 Character type
Change a character type to set.
- 3 Live Character list
- 4 Scroll bar
Slide to scroll the Live Character list display.
- 5 Change color to the one displayed on the Live Character list
- 6 Change color
Restore the changed color of Live Character.
Change the color of the clothes (or hair) of the selected Live Character in random order each time this item is touched.

Note

- <Secret code>
 - If the mail address is saved to the Phonebook in the format of "Phone number + secret code@docomo.ne.jp", you may not send mail or reply to that contact. Change the mail address format to "Phone number@docomo.ne.jp" first, then register the Secret code.
- <Secret>
 - When "Secret mode" (P127) is set to "Secret data only", the Phonebook entry is saved as secret data.
 - The secret entry is displayed only when "Secret mode" is set to "Secret mode" or "Secret data only".
 - Secret entries cannot be saved to the UIM Phonebook.
 - The names saved in the secret entries are displayed in the Redial log, history, or mail list/detail screen only when "Secret mode" is set to "Secret mode" or "Secret data only". The phone numbers and mail addresses are displayed when "Secret mode" is set to "OFF".
 - When "Secret mode" is set to "OFF" and you receive a call or mail from the secret contact, the name or image saved to the Phonebook is not displayed and the set ring tone does not sound.

Adding Entries to UIM (FOMA Card) Phonebook

- 1 Add to phonebook screen (P84)
[Save to] field "UIM"



- 2 Perform the following operations

[Save to]

Select the save location. When "Phone" is selected as the save location, the FOMA terminal Phonebook entry screen appears. P87

[Name]



Enter up to 10 full-pitch or 21 half-pitch characters. Enter with Kanji, Hiragana, pictographs, symbols, alphanumeric characters, or Katakana, etc.

[Reading]

Enter or edit as required. Enter up to 12 full-pitch or 25 half-pitch characters. Enter with full-pitch Katakana, half-pitch alphanumeric characters, or half-pitch symbols.

 **Phone number**

For a green/white UIM, up to 26 digits can be entered. For a blue UIM, up to 20 digits can be entered.

- On the Phone number entry screen, you can press [Menu] to select "Int. call", "Select prefix", or "Cancel". To cancel the entry, press [Cancel].

 **Mail address**

Enter up to 50 half-pitch characters. Enter with alphanumeric characters or symbols.

 **(Select a group)**





Select one from "No group" or "グループ1" (Group 1) to "グループ10" (Group 10). Groups can be used for the Group search (P92).

3 [Done]

Adding Phonebook Entries from Redial/Received Calls etc.


You can save entries to the Phonebook from the list or detail screen of the call history, mail, or message that contains a phone number or mail address records. You can also save a currently entered/displayed phone number, etc. on the Phone number entry screen or site, etc.

1 Display the screen containing items to save

- To save phone numbers from the Redial list screen (P60)/Redial detail screen (P61)/Received calls list screen (P62)/Received calls detail screen (P62)
Press [Menu] "Add to phonebook".
 - To save phone numbers from the Redial list screen/Received calls list screen, select the target number first.
 - If the phone number is already saved in the Phonebook, "Add to phonebook" is not available.
- To save phone numbers from the Phone number entry screen
Press [Menu] [Save].
- To save a sender or recipient mail address
On the Mail detail screen, press [Menu] "Save" "Address".
 - If there are several mail addresses, select the one to save first.
- To save addresses/phone numbers included in the body text in a mail
Move the cursor to the address/phone number to save to the Phonebook [Menu] "Save" "No./addr. in body".

- To save addresses/phone numbers displayed on a site/Screen memo
Move the cursor to the address/phone number to save to the Phonebook  [Menu] "Add to Phonebook" "Yes".

2 Perform the following operations

- [New registration]**
Add a new entry to the Phonebook. Go to Step 3.
- The Add to phonebook screen appears with the new entry entered.
- [Add registration]**
Save additional items to the saved entry. Press  [Srch by] on the Phonebook entry screen to change the Phonebook search mode. P92
Select a Phonebook entry to which the item is to be added.
- The Add to phonebook screen appears with the item added.
 - If you add an item to the UIM Phonebook, the Add to phonebook screen appears with the items overwritten when the above step is performed.



- ## 3 Modify/save the Phonebook entry [Done]
- For saving procedure, refer to Step 2 in "Adding Entries to the FOMA Terminal Phonebook" (P84).
 - When saving additional data to an entry, the confirmation whether to overwrite appears. Select "Yes" to overwrite.

Note

- The data can also be saved to the Phonebook from the Scanned data screen with the bar code reader or Live Character Park screen. P235, P337
- If you attempt to save characters longer than the maximum number of characters allowed, a warning screen notifying of the problem appears, then, the truncated string will be displayed on the Add to phonebook screen.

Changing a Group Name

You can group the entries on the FOMA terminal Phonebook and the UIM Phonebook. Up to 31 groups can be saved on the FOMA terminal Phonebook, and up to 11 groups can be saved on the UIM Phonebook (including "No group").

- "No group" cannot be edited.
 - Only a name can be edited on the UIM Phonebook.
- ### 1 "Phonebook" "Group settings"
-  [Phone/UIM]: Switch between the FOMA terminal and the UIM group setting list screens.
 -  [Group settings]: View the settings of the selected group.



2 Move the cursor to the target group [Set]



Group settings screen

3 Perform the following operations

(Group name)

Enter up to 10 full-pitch or 21 half-pitch characters. Enter with Kanji, Hiragana, pictographs, symbols, or Katakana, etc.

[Ringtone]²

Set the ring tone for a call.

Music : Select a Chaku-Uta Full® song saved in "Music" of "Data Box". P270
Go to Step 3 in "Setting a Chaku-Uta Full® Song as a Ring Tone" (P266).

Melody

: Select a melody saved in "Melody" of "Data Box". P314


i-motion

: Select a moving picture/i-motion saved in "i-motion" of "Data Box". P307

Terminal setting¹ : Use "Select ring tone" settings. P100

[Mail ringtone]

Set the ring tone for incoming mail.

• Available items are the same as for  Ringtone".

[Image]²

Add an image to a group. The image is displayed when making/receiving calls or checking Phonebook data.

My picture : Select an image saved in "My picture" of "Data Box". P296


i-motion : Select a moving picture/i-motion saved in "i-motion" of "Data Box". P307

Take picture : Activate the camera and set the captured image. P222

Terminal setting¹ : Use "Call & Mail image" settings. P109

[Mail image]

Select an image or i-motion to be displayed when a mail arrives.

• Available items are the same as for  Image".

[Accept/Reject]

Set whether to accept/reject calls for groups.

Enter the Terminal security code "Not set"/"Reject call"/"Accept call"

*1 If you change any one of  image",  Ringtone",  Mail image", or  Mail ringtone" of the Phonebook while a moving picture/i-motion with video/sound is set for "Select ring tone" (P100) and "Call & Mail image" (P109), the default sound or image is set to "Image" or "Ringtone" that is not changed.

*2 If you set a moving picture/i-motion with video/sound either for the image or ring tone, the same moving picture/i-motion is set for the other item automatically.


4 [Done]

Note


<Accept/Reject>

• The setting in "Accept/Reject call" (P95) in the Phonebook takes priority.

Group Setting List Screen Sub Menu

- 1 Group setting list screen (P89)  [Menu]
Perform the following operations

[Set]
Change the selected group settings. P90

[Move]
Change the display position of the selected group.
Select the new display position  [OK]

[Reset]
Reset the selected group settings. The group name is restored to default.

[Reset all]
Reset all group settings and group order.

Search phonebook

Making a Call from Phonebook

- To search Phonebook entries set as secret, set "Secret mode" to "Secret mode" beforehand. P127

Making a Call from Phonebook

You can make a call by invoking the Phonebook.


1 Stand-by display

The entries searched by the default search mode appear on the Phonebook entry list screen. P97



Phonebook list screen (Ex.: When searching all entries)

2 Move the cursor to a party to call

- To make a videophone call
Press  [V. Phone].

Operations on Phonebook Detail Screen

When selecting a party on the Phonebook list screen, the Phonebook detail screen is displayed.

- Select a phone number and press **[Call]** to make a call. You can make a call after selecting a phone number and use **[Disp]** to display the phone number.

■ When multiple phone numbers are saved

- Use **[Call]** to select a phone number and press **[Call]**.
- Press **[Disp]** to display the saved phone numbers on the Phone number selection screen in a list. Alternatively, use **[Call]** to select a phone number and press **[Call]** to make a call.

Note

- If "Secret mode" is set to "Secret data only" (P127), only secret Phonebook entries (P86) can be searched/displayed.

Searching Phonebook

You can use various ways to search Phonebook entries.

1 "Phonebook" "Search phonebook"

- **[Menu]** [Default]: Set the highlighted option as the search mode for the Phonebook list screen displayed when you press **[Menu]**, etc. in Stand-by.



The default search mode is indicated.

Search phonebook screen

2 Perform the following operations

[Show all data]

Display all Phonebook entries divided into reading lines (あわ lines, A-Z) and "他 (others)" (for readings other than the Japanese Kana syllables).

- Use **[Menu]** to switch the reading line.
- Press the keys **[1]** to **[6]** (あわ lines) to switch the display to "Reading search" mode. Operations are same as "Reading search".

[Group?]

Search and display Phonebook entries by group (Group list screen). Use **[Menu]** or **[UIM/Phone]** to switch between the FOMA terminal Phonebook and the UIM Phonebook. Use **[Menu]** **[Select]** to select a group and display Phonebook entries saved in the group.

[Reading?]

Enter part of "Reading" and search all Phonebook entries. Enter up to 32 half-pitch characters for reading.

- All Phonebook entries are displayed when a reading is not entered.
- You can also search readings using other than the leading character.
- Press **[Menu]** **[Chara]** to switch the input mode.

[Memory No?]

Display Phonebook entries on the FOMA terminal by every 50 entries from memory no. "0" in order.

- Use **[Menu]** to switch the memory number.
- The UIM Phonebook cannot be displayed.
- Phonebook entries can also be displayed by entering memory numbers with dial keys.

[Phone number?]

Enter part of the saved phone number and search all Phonebook entries. Enter up to 26 digits.

- All Phonebook entries are displayed when a phone number is not entered.
- You can search phone numbers using other than the leading digit.


[Domain?]

Display Phonebook entries that contain mail addresses by domain.

- Use  to switch the domain.
- Register a domain to search beforehand. P97

Viewing Phonebook Entries

1 Stand-by display

- 1 Save locations on the Phonebook
 - If saved on the FOMA terminal Phonebook, the icon assigned to "Phone number 1" appears.
 - If saved on the UIM Phonebook,  appears.



2 Select a Phonebook entry



- When an image is set to the phonebook entry, the set image is displayed.
- Icons displayed for each item are same as those for the Add to phonebook screen. P84



Note






- During background playback, moving pictures/i-motion saved on the Phonebook are not played.

Operations on the Phonebook list screen

Select the Phonebook entry in which a phone number and a mail address are saved and press  to make a call, and press  to create mail. If multiple phone numbers or mail addresses are saved, the Phone number or mail address selection screen appears.

Operations on the Phonebook detail screen

When selecting a saved phone number, mail address, etc., you can perform the following operations.

-  [Call] : Make a voice call to the selected phone number.
-  [Mail] : Create an i-mode mail addressed to the selected mail address. P138
-  [Connect] : Connect to the site of the selected URL.
-  [Play] : Play the selected ring tone.
-  [Disp.] : Display the selected videophone substitute image.

Phonebook List Screen Sub Menu

1 Phonebook list screen (P93) [Menu] Perform the following operations

[Mail/URL]

- Create mail or access URL.
Compose mail : Create an i-mode mail addressed to the mail address or phone number of the selected Phonebook entry. P138
Attach to mail : Create an i-mode mail with the selected Phonebook entry attached. P138
Compose SMS : Create an SMS message addressed to the phone number saved in the selected Phonebook entry. P176
Connect to URL : Connect to the site of the URL saved in the selected Phonebook entry.

[Call function]

- Select the calling method. If multiple phone numbers are saved, after selecting the calling method, select the number to call on the Phone number selection screen.
Video phone call : Make a videophone call.
Customize call : Change the saved phone number and make a call.
Int. call(Japan) : Add the country code for Japan "+81" automatically at the beginning of the phone number when you make a call from overseas to a phone number in Japan saved in the Phonebook.
• If the beginning of the phone number is "0", it is automatically deleted.




[Add new]

- Create a new Phonebook entry. P84

[Edit]

- Edit the selected Phonebook entry. P96

[Copy]


- Copy or back up the selected entry.
to the UIM¹⁾ : Copy the selected Phonebook entry to the UIM.
to the phone²⁾ : Copy the selected Phonebook entry to the FOMA terminal.
to microSD : Copy the selected Phonebook entry to a microSD card.
Multiple choice : Select multiple entries from the FOMA terminal or UIM and copy to other locations (FOMA terminal/UIM/microSD).
 Select a copy source  Mark entries to copy
 [Copy] Select a copy destination
Backup : Back up all Phonebook data saved on the FOMA terminal to a microSD card.
• Images saved in the Phonebook cannot be copied.
Connect to center : Save Phonebook entries on the FOMA terminal to the Data Storage Center. P131

[Search by]

- Search the Phonebook in another search mode. P92

[Send Ir data]

- Send a Phonebook entry to an external device via infrared communication. P328
Focused data : Send the selected Phonebook entry. all in phone : Send all data saved on the FOMA terminal Phonebook.
all in UIM : Send all data saved on the UIM Phonebook.

[Delete] Delete saved data from the Phonebook. P96
[Create domain list]³ Create the domain to be searched by domain search. P97 *1 Appear for the FOMA terminal Phonebook. *2 Appear for the UIM Phonebook. *3 Appear only for the domain search.
Phonebook Detail Screen Sub Menu
T Phonebook detail screen (P93)  [Menu] Perform the following operations
[Mail/URL] Create mail or access URL. Compose mail : Create an i-mode mail addressed to the mail address or phone number saved in the displayed Phonebook entry. P138 Attach to mail : Create an i-mode mail with the displayed Phonebook entry attached. P138 Compose SMS : Create an SMS message addressed to the phone number in the displayed Phonebook entry. P176 Connect to URL : Access the site of the URL saved in the displayed Phonebook entry.
[Call function] Select the calling method. Video phone call : Make a videophone call. Customize call : Change the saved phone number and make a call. Int. call(Japan) : Add the country code for Japan "+81" automatically at the beginning of the phone number when you make a call from overseas to a phone number in Japan saved in the Phonebook. • If the beginning of the phone number is "0", it is automatically deleted.

[Edit] Edit the displayed Phonebook entry. P96
[Copy] Copy the displayed Phonebook entry. Copy item : Select and copy items from the saved Phonebook entry displayed. to the UIM ¹ : Copy the displayed Phonebook entry to the UIM. to the phone ² : Copy the displayed Phonebook entry to the FOMA terminal. to microSD : Copy the displayed Phonebook entry to a microSD card.
[Send Ir data] Send the displayed Phonebook entry via infrared communication. P328
[Accept/Reject call] Set to accept or reject calls per phone number saved on the FOMA terminal Phonebook. You can select this only when you move the cursor to a phone number beforehand. • A phone number saved in "Reject on list" (P128) cannot be set to "Accept call". Enter the Terminal security code "Not set"/"Reject call"/"Accept call"
[Delete] Delete the displayed Phonebook entry. *1 Appear for the FOMA terminal Phonebook. *2 Appear for the UIM phonebook.

Editing Phonebook Entries

- 1 Phonebook detail screen (P93) [Menu]
"Edit" Edit each item

Use the same steps in "Adding Entries to the FOMA Terminal Phonebook" (P84) or "Adding Entries to UIM (FOMA Card) Phonebook" (P87) to edit items.

- To change the memory number and save the entry
If you change the memory number and save the entry, the original entry remains with the original memory number and the edited entry is saved with a new memory number.
 (Memory No.) enter any un-assigned memory number (000-999).

- 2 After editing, [Done] "Yes"

Deleting Phonebook Entries

Example: To delete an entry from the Phonebook entry list screen

- 1 Move the cursor to an entry to delete on the Phonebook list screen (P93) [Menu]
Perform the following operations

[Delete]

- One Selected : Delete the selected Phonebook entry.
- Selected : Select multiple entries from the FOMA terminal or UIM.
 [Delete] "Yes" "Phone"/"UIM" Mark entries to delete
- all in phone terminal : Delete all Phonebook entries saved on the FOMA terminal.
- all in UIM : Delete all Phonebook entries saved on the UIM.
The Terminal security code is required to delete.
- all in UIM : Delete all Phonebook entries saved on the UIM.
The Terminal security code is required to delete.

- 2 "Yes"

The selected/displayed Phonebook entry is deleted.

- To delete a Phonebook entry from the Phonebook detail screen

You can delete only one Phonebook entry at a time from the Phonebook detail screen. On the Phonebook detail screen, press [Menu] "Delete" "Yes".

No. of phonebook

Checking Phonebook Storage Status

You can check the memory status on the FOMA terminal/UIM Phonebook.

- **[MENU]** "Phonebook" "No. of phonebook"
• "Secret entry" is displayed when "Secret mode" is set to "Secret mode" or "Secret data only".

Setting Phonebook

You can set Phonebook entries or images to be invoked from the Stand-by display.

- **[MENU]** "Phonebook" "Phonebook settings"
Perform the following operations

[Default mode]
Set the search mode for the Phonebook list screen displayed when you press **[V]** in Stand-by.

[Create domain list]
Create a domain to be searched by the domain search.
Move the cursor to unregistered item **[V]** **[Add]** Enter a domain name

[Accept/Reject list]
Phone numbers saved on the Accept/reject call list in "Accept/reject call" are displayed.

- Enter the Terminal security code "Accept list"/"Reject list"
• Press **[MENU]** to perform "Add", "Delete", or "Delete all" operation.

Editing the entered domain name

Move the cursor to the domain to edit on the domain list
[V] **[Edit]** edit the domain name.
"@docomo.ne.jp" on the domain list cannot be edited.

Deleting the entered domain name

Move the cursor to the domain to delete on the domain list
[V] **[Delete]** "Yes".

Quick dial

Making a Call with a Few Key Operation

In Stand-by, enter a 1- to 2-digit number with the dial keys to quickly make a call to the phone number corresponding to the memory number of "0" to "99" on the FOMA terminal Phonebook.

1 Enter a 1- to 2-digit number

- Use **[V]** to display Quick dial numbers in turn.

The content of the entry of the memory no. corresponding to the entered number appears.



2



- To make a videophone call
Press **[V]** **[V]** phone.

Note

- If "Quick dial" is set to "OFF", this function does not work. P109
- If you use a 3-digit memory number with the first or second digit started with '0' such as '001' or '011', '0' is not necessary to be entered.
- This function does not work for the UIM Phonebook.

Displaying Call/Mail History



"Phonebook" "Call/Mail history"

Select a log to display

- Received calls : Display received logs for voice/videophone calls. P62
- Redial : Display redial logs for voice/videophone calls. P60
- Received mails : Display received mail logs. P166
- Sent mails : Display sent mail logs. P166

Note

- Received calls can also be displayed by pressing in Stand-by.
- Redial can also be displayed by pressing in Stand-by.

Sound/Screen/Light Settings

Sound Settings

Changing Ring Tone	Select ring tone	100
Setting Volume of Ring Tone, Alarm, etc.	Volume	101
Informing You of Incoming Calls and Alarms by Vibration	Vibrator	102
Changing Ringing Tone	Melody Call setting	102
Setting E ect Tone	Select e ect tone	103
Informing You of Touch Panel Operation by Sound or Vibration	Touch settings	104
Sounding Alarm when a Line is Likely to be Disconnected	Quality alarm	104
Setting Ring Time for Incoming Mail	Mail ring duration	104
Sounding Ring Tone only from Earphones	Headset usage setting	105
Muting Ring Tone from the FOMA Terminal	Manner mode	105
Changing Manner Mode Settings	Manner mode set	105

Screen/Light Settings

Changing Stand-by Display	Stand-by display	106
Setting Image for Incoming Calls	Call & Mail image	109
Setting Dialing Screen Display	Quick dial	109
Setting Wake-up Display	Wake-up display	110

Displaying Image Set to Phonebook on Incoming Call Screen	Show ph. book img	110
Setting Display Backlight	Backlight	110
Displaying in Power Save Mode	Power saver mode	111
Setting a Color Theme for Display	Color theme	111
Using Kisekae Tool	Kisekae Tool	111
Changing Display of Main Menu	Menu settings	112
Setting Incoming Illumination Patterns	Lighting LED	113
Setting Clock Display	Date&Time format	115
Adjusting Touch Panel	Calibration	115

Select ring tone

Changing Ring Tone

You can change the ring tone for voice/videophone calls, mail, etc.

- In addition to the pre-installed ring tones and melodies, i-motion, melodies and Chaku-Uta® songs, Chaku-Uta Full® songs downloaded from i-mode sites or the Internet web sites can be set as ring tones.



"Settings " "Sounds&Vibration"

"Select ring tone" Perform the following operations

[Voice call]

Select the ring tone for a voice call.

Music : Select from Chaku-Uta Full® songs saved in "Music" of "Data Box". P270
Go to Step 3 in "Setting a Chaku-Uta Full® Song as a Ring Tone" (P266).

i-motion : Select from moving pictures/i-motion saved in "i-motion" of "Data Box". P307

Melody : Select from melodies saved in "Melody" of "Data Box". P314

[Video call]

Select the ring tone for a videophone call.

- Available items are the same as for "Voice call".

[Mail]

Select the ring tone for i-mode mail.

- Available items are the same as for "Voice call".

[MessageR]

Select the ring tone for MessageR.

- Available items are the same as for "Voice call".

[MessageF]

Select the ring tone for MessageF.

- Available items are the same as for "Voice call".

[SMS]

Select the ring tone for a SMS.

- Available items are the same as for "Voice call".
- When Stand-by i- ppli is set, the Receive results screen for SMS does not appear, and the ring tone and vibrator for SMS do not work.



Note


- The following file formats can be set for a ring tone (however, some files such as restricted files or files that contain only video or sound may not be set).
SMF, MFI, and MP4 (Mobile MP4)
- When moving pictures/i-motion is set for ring tones (Chaku-motion), "Call & Mail image" (P109) is also changed to the same.
- If you set a moving picture/i-motion with video for "Mail", "MessageR", "MessageF", or "SMS", the same moving picture/i-motion is set for all these items. You cannot set each item individually.
- If music, melody or moving pictures/i-motion with video are set as a ring tone, the incoming screen will be reset to default screen when you change the ring tone to moving pictures/i-motion without video.
- Image only moving pictures/i-motion cannot be set as ring tones.

Pre-installed Ring Tone List



i-motion	
Alarm 01-04	映画「ATOM」予告 編第一弾 Message 01-08
Ring 20-25	
Melody	
Alarm 05	Message 09-10 Power o 01-02
Power on 01-02	Ring 01-19

Volume

Setting Volume of Ring Tone, Alarm, etc.

- 1  "Settings" "Sounds&Vibration" "Volume"

2 Perform the following operations

- : Adjust the volume of the selected item. When the volume level is set to the lowest,  (Silent) is displayed and the tone does not sound. Every time the volume is adjusted, the tone for the item sounds at the new volume (except "Receiver volume").
- For "Incoming call", the ring tone/e ect tone set in "Voice call" sounds; for "Mail/Message/SMS", the tone set in "Mail" sounds; for "Power ON/OFF", the tone set in "Power ON" sounds.
 - * The default ring tone sounds for "Alarm/Schedule".

[Incoming call]

Adjust the ring tone volume for incoming voice/videophone calls.

[Mail/Message/SMS]*

Adjust the ring tone volume for Mail or MessageR/F.

[Alarm/Schedule]

Adjust the alarm tone volume for Alarm/Schedule.

[Keypad tone]

Adjust the volume of keypad tone except dial tone.

[Flip tone]

Adjust the volume when the FOMA terminal is opened/closed.

[Dial sound]

Adjust the dial sound volume.

[Power ON/OFF]
Adjust the sound volume when the FOMA terminal is turned on/o .

[Popup tone]
Adjust the sound volume when the popup window is displayed.

[Receiver volume]
Adjust the receiver volume. The sound cannot be muted.

* When the volume level is set to the highest, (Step up) is displayed to increase the sound progressively.

3  [Done]


Note

- Adjusting the receiver volume during a call P74

Vibrator

Informing You of Incoming Calls and Alarms by Vibration

You can set the FOMA terminal to vibrate when a call or mail arrives or at a schedule alarm time.

1  "Settings" "Sounds&Vibration" "Vibrator" Perform the following operations

[Incoming call]

Set the vibration pattern for an incoming voice/video/phone call.

[Mail/Message/SMS]


Set the vibration pattern when mail/Message/R/F is received.

[Alarm/Schedule]

Set the vibration pattern for the Alarm/Schedule alert.

[Pop-up]
Set whether to vibrate the FOMA terminal when the Popup screen appears.

[Power ON/OFF]
Set the vibration pattern when the FOMA terminal is turned on/o .

2  [Done]

Melody Call setting

Changing Ringing Tone

This service enables you to play a melody to the other party when a voice call arrives.

- Melody Call is not played for videophone calls.
- Melody Call is a fee-based service that requires subscription.
- For details about Melody Call, see "Mobile Phone Users Guide [Network Services]".

1  "Settings" "Call/VT/Dialing" "Incoming call" "Melody Call setting" "Yes"

The FOMA terminal connects to the Melody Call setting site.
• Packet communication charges do not apply for the setting site. However, the charges apply for connecting to other sites.

Select effect tone

Setting Effect Tone

You can set the effect tone when a key is pressed or operation is performed.

1. Press **MENU** "Settings" "Sounds & Vibration" "Select effect tone"



Effect tone selection screen

2 Perform the following operations

[Keypad tone]

Select an effect tone when a key is pressed except Dial sound.

[Flip tone]

Select an effect tone when the FOMA terminal is opened/closed.

[Dial sound]

Select an effect tone when a dial key, **[*]**, or **[#]** is pressed in the Stand-by display or the Phone number entry screen (P56). If set to "Japanese", "English", or "Korean", the numbers entered with dial keys will be read out.

[Power ON]

Select an effect tone when the terminal is turned on.

Music : Select from Chaku-Uta Full® songs saved in "Music" of "Data Box". P270
Go to Step 3 in "Setting a Chaku-Uta Full® Song as a Ring Tone" (P266).
P314

Melody : Select from melodies saved in "Melody" of "Data Box".
P314

[Power OFF]

Select an effect tone when the terminal is turned off.

- Available items are the same as for "Power ON".

[Low battery alert]


Set whether to sound an alarm when the battery level becomes low.

* On the selection screen of the setting item, press **[Play]** to check the sound each time an effect tone is selected. To mute the sound, press **[Mute]**. If "Silent" is set for "Volume", an effect tone cannot be checked.

3 **[Done]**

Touch settings

Informing You of Touch Panel Operation by Sound or Vibration

- 1  "Settings" "Sounds&Vibration" "Touch settings" Perform the following operations

[Touch type]

Select an action when the touch panel is touched.

OFF : Does not perform actions.

Sound : Sound the tone selected for "Touch sound".

Vibration : Vibrate at the pattern selected for "Touch vibration".

Sound + Vib. : Perform actions with the sound selected for "Touch sound" and vibration selected for "Touch vibration".

[Touch sound]

Select an effect tone when the touch panel is touched.

[Touch vibration]

Select a vibration pattern when the touch panel is touched.

[Touch sound level]

Adjust the sound level.

[Touch vib. level]

Adjust the vibration level when the touch panel is touched.




[Done]

Quality alarm

Sounding Alarm when a Line is Likely to be Disconnected

The FOMA terminal notifies you of a call almost disconnected due to poor signal quality with an alarm tone.


- If the signal rapidly deteriorates, the call may be disconnected without sounding an alarm tone.

- 1  "Settings" "Call/VT/Dialing" "Call feature" "Quality alarm" "Alarm OFF"/"Low alarm"/"High alarm"

Mail ring duration

Setting Ring Time for Incoming Mail

You can set how many times you or how long the ring tone sounds when mail arrives.

- 1  "Settings" "Sounds&Vibration" "Mail ring duration" Perform the following operations



[Mail ring]

Select an effect tone sounded when the terminal is turned on.

OFF : Set to mute a ring tone.

1 cycle : Set to sound a ring tone once for up to approximately 30 seconds according to the set ring tone length such as music or melodies.

Select time : Set a ring tone duration.

  Enter a ring tone duration





[Done]

Headset usage setting

Sounding Ring Tone only from Earphones

You can set the ring tone or alarm tone to sound only from the earphones when the earphone/microphone (optional), etc. is connected.

1  "Settings" "Sounds&Vibration" "Headset usage setting"

2  [Select] "Headset only"/"Headset+speaker"

3  [Done]


Note

- While Manner mode is activated, ring tone, etc. sounds only from the earphones.

Manner mode

Muting Ring Tone from the FOMA Terminal


Turn o the tones that sound from the FOMA terminal so as not to disturb others.

1  (for 1 + seconds)

Canceling Manner mode

In Stand-by, press  (for 1 + seconds).

Note



- 2 types of Manner mode are equipped: "General manner" and "Original manner". P105
-  appears at the top of the screen when manner mode is activated.
- A playback confirmation screen appears when you attempt to play a melody, moving picture/-motion while Manner mode is activated.
- Even when Manner mode is activated, the camera shutter tone sounds.
- The vibration pattern while "General manner" is active follows "Vibrator". If "Vibrator" is set to "OFF", "Incoming call" is notified with the vibration "Pattern 1", "Mail/Message/SMS" is notified with "Message 1", and "Alarm/Schedule" is notified with "Alarm 1".


Manner mode set

Changing Manner Mode Settings



Select the Manner mode action from "General manner" or "Original manner". Original manner enables you to change the each setting of Manner mode.

Example: To change the settings of Original manner

1  "Settings" "Sounds&Vibration" "Manner mode set" Move the cursor to "Original manner"  [Edit]

- To select the Manner mode type
Move the cursor to "General manner"/"Original manner" and press  [Select].
The Manner mode setting is ended.

2 Perform the following operations

-  Select the vibration pattern or volume of the selected item. When the volume level is the lowest,  (Silent) is displayed and the sound is muted.

[Vibration]

Use  [ON/OFF] to set.

ON : As same as "General manner", the vibration pattern follows "Vibrator", and incoming voice, videophone calls, mails, or messages are notified with vibration. If "Vibrator" is set to "OFF", "Incoming call" is notified with the vibration "Pattern 1", "Mail/Message/SMS" is notified with "Message 1", and "Alarm/Schedule" is notified with "Alarm 1".

OFF : The FOMA terminal does not vibrate.

[Incoming call vol.]

Adjust the ring tone volume for incoming voice/videophone calls.

[Mail/SMS vol.]

Adjust the ring tone volume for Mail/MessageR/F/SMS.

[Alarm/Schedule vol.]

Adjust the alarm tone volume for Alarm/Schedule.

[E ect/Popup tone]

Adjust the e ect tone or volume when the popup is displayed.

[Low battery alert]

Set whether to sound an alarm when the battery level becomes low.


- * When the volume level is set to the highest,  (Step up) is displayed to increase the sound progressively.

3 [Done]

Stand-by display

Changing Stand-by Display



You can set the items (wallpaper, clock, calendar, schedule, shortcut, etc.) to be shown on the Stand-by display.

- 1  "Settings" "Display" "Stand-by display"



Stand-by display setting screen

2 Perform the following operations

-  [Preview]: The selected preview screen is displayed. Press  to return to the Stand-by display setting screen.

[Wallpaper]

TOUCH : Select an image to change when the Stand-by display is touched.

- Press [Backgnd] to set a slideshow in background. P107
- Select an image saved in "My picture" of "Data Box". P296

• A slideshow created from My picture cannot be selected with this operation. Make the Stand-by display setting from the Slideshow list screen (P305).

i-motion : Select a moving picture/i-motion saved in "i-motion" of "Data Box". P307

i-ppli : Select a Stand-by i-ppli saved on the FOMA terminal. P285

[Display items]

Set the display such as clock, calendar, shortcut, etc. in the Stand-by display.

- If "TOUCH" is selected for "Wallpaper", this item is unavailable.

Do not show : Items such as clock, calendar, etc. are not displayed.

Analog clock : Select an item from Analog clock.

Digital clock : Select an item from Digital clock.

Calendar : Select to display only "Calendar" or "Calendar + Schedule".

Shortcut : Display shortcuts.

Select a registration field [Add] Select a function [Done]

- Up to 8 functions can be saved as a shortcut.
- Press [Menu] to delete saved function or reset to default settings.

[Battery icon]

Select a battery icon.

[Antenna icon]

Select an antenna icon.

3 [Done]

Note

- After changing to the option other than "Kisekae settings" for "Battery icon" and "Antenna icon, these icons return to "Kisekae settings" by setting all in "Kisekae Tool" (P111).

Setting Slideshow of Touch Image

If "TOUCH" is selected for "Wallpaper", up to other 10 images can be displayed as slideshow in background of the touch image.

- If "Splash clock" or "Game" is selected for the touch image, a slideshow cannot be set.

1 Stand-by display setting screen (P106)

"Wallpaper" "TOUCH" [Backgnd]

Perform the following operations

[Slideshow image]

Select a background image.

Move the cursor to a list number [Add] Move the cursor to a folder [Open] Select an image Repeat the operation to add an image [Done]

- [Delete]: Delete the selected image.
- [Change]: Change the selected image.

[Slideshow speed]

Select a slideshow speed.

[Random slideshow]

Set whether to display slideshow images in random order.

2 [Done]

Setting "Dual clock"

Selecting "Dual clock" in "Digital clock" displays the dates and times of 2 countries or areas, and cities.
Select the country or area, and city of the clock displayed at the bottom of the dual clock.

- Use to move to the target area [Zoom in] Use to move to the target city [Set]
- Press [Search] to display the city name list. You can also enter the city name with dial keys and search for a target city.
- Press [Menu] to search for a city or set Daylight Saving to ON/OFF.

Note

- Some data may not be displayed in the Stand-by display.
- The moving picture/i-motion or Flash movie set as the Stand-by display starts when the FOMA terminal is opened and the moving picture/i-motion stops when the terminal is closed. Also, press to play or stop it.
- Web To function is not available from a moving picture/i-motion set as the Stand-by display.
- When displaying the Stand-by display, a Flash movie such as a clock, or GIF animation stops after played for a certain period of time.


<When setting "TOUCH">

- Under the setting of "4 season", "SAKURA", "SummerBeach", "MOMIJI", and "Yuki" are automatically switched depending on the month.
- Under the setting of "4 season", "SAKURA", "SummerBeach", "MOMIJI", or "Yuki", part of touch image disappears and the clock appears when the display is touched once. The entire touch image and the clock disappear and only the background image appears when the display is touched once again.



- If the background image and the text color of the clock are overlapped, the clock becomes invisible. Change the background setting or touch image.
- Under the setting of "Splash clock", the clock moves to the position you touch.
- Under the setting of "Game", you can play game on the Stand-by display such as concentration or hidden catch, etc.
- When setting "Analog clock" or "Digital clock">
 - If the time zone is set to other than GMT+9 in "Auto time adjust" (P53) or "Local time zone" (P53), the clock is automatically changed to "Dual clock".
 - After this option is set, press in Stand-by move the cursor to the clock display to display the following screen.
- "Dual clock"
 - The Date&Time settings screen (P53) appears when the Home clock (the upper clock) is selected, and the Stand-by display setting screen appears when the Sub clock (the lower clock) is selected.
 - Other clocks
 - The Alarm list screen (P351) is displayed. (If the date is selected, the Calendar screen of the schedule (P354) is displayed.)
- <When setting "Calendar">
 - After this option is set, press in Stand-by move the cursor to the calendar display to display the Calendar screen of the schedule (P354).
 - After "Calendar + Schedule" is set, press in Stand-by move the cursor to the schedule to display the Schedule list screen (P355).

Setting Image for Incoming Calls

Set an image displayed on the screen for incoming calls, etc.

- 1  "Settings" "Display" "Call & Mail image"

2 Perform the following operations

-  [Preview]: The preview screen of the selected image is displayed, and press  to stop the preview.

[Incoming voice call]

Set an image displayed on the screen when a voice call arrives.

Image : Select an image saved in "My picture" of "Data Box".
P.296

i-motion : Select a moving picture/i-motion saved in "i-motion" of "Data Box". P.307

[Incoming video call]

Set an image displayed on the incoming videophone call screen.

- Available items are the same as for "Incoming voice call".

[Mail sending]

Select an image displayed when sending a mail from "My picture" of "Data Box". P.296

[Mail receiving]

Select an image displayed when receiving a mail and MessageR/F from "My picture" of "Data Box". P.296

[Mail complete]

Set an image displayed on the completion of receiving a mail and MessageR/F.

- Available items are the same as for "Incoming voice call".

[Check new messages]

Select an image displayed on the completion of checking new message from "My picture" of "Data Box". P.296

3 [Done]



Note

- A sound only moving picture/i-motion cannot be set to the incoming call screen.
- If a moving picture/i-motion with sound is set to the incoming call screen, the "Select ring tone" (P.100) is also changed to the same.
- If a moving picture/i-motion with sound is set as an incoming image, the ring tone settings are automatically reset to the default when you change it to a still image or moving picture/i-motion without sound.

Quick dial

Setting Dialing Screen Display


Set whether to search and display the Phonebook entry corresponding to the memory number when entered between a 1-digit and 2-digit number in Stand-by.

- 1  "Settings" "Display" Move the cursor to "Quick dial"  [ON/OFF]

Wake-up display

Setting Wake-up Display

Set an image displayed on the screen when the FOMA terminal is started up.

- 1  "Settings" "Display" "Wake-up display"

-  [Preview]: The preview screen of the selected image is displayed, and press to stop  the preview.

- 2  [Select] Select an image

- To select from other folders, press  and then select an image.

- 3  [Done]

Note

- Flash movies cannot be set as a wake-up screen.

Show ph. book img

Displaying Image Set to Phonebook on Incoming Call Screen

Display the image set to the Phonebook entry when a call arrives from the number saved in the Phonebook with caller ID shown.

- 1  "Settings" "Call/VT/Dialing" "Incoming call" Move the cursor to "Show ph. book img"  [ON/OFF]

Note

- The image display priority for an incoming call is as follows:

- ① Image set to a Phonebook entry
- ② Image set to a Group in the Phonebook
- ③ Image set for the Call & Mail image

Backlight

Setting Display Backlight

You can set the Display backlight.

- 1  "Settings" "Display" "Backlight" Perform the following operations

[Display duration]

Set the backlight duration of the display from between 10 seconds and 10 minutes, or Always ON.

- When the set time elapsed after the last operation, the screen becomes dark. When approximately more 5 seconds elapsed, the backlight turns o completely. (While i-Channel ticker is displayed, the backlight does not turn o completely until at least 1 minute elapsed after the last operation.)

[Display brightness]

Set the backlight level of the display.

- If "Auto brightness" is set, the illumination sensor detects surrounding brightness and adjusts the display brightness automatically.

[AC connected]

Set the lighting when the AC charger is connected.

Display setting : Use the settings in "Display duration" and "Display brightness".

Always ON : Light is always on.

2 [Done]


Note

- During the voice call, the backlight turns on after approximately 5 seconds, regardless of the "Display duration" setting.

Power saver mode

Displaying in Power Save Mode


You can set the backlight brightness of the display to the lowest power saving level.

- 1  "Settings" "Others" "Power saver mode" "ON"/"OFF"

Color theme

Setting a Color Theme for Display

You can select a color theme.

- 1  "Settings" "Display" "Color theme"

2 Select a color

-  [Preview]: The preview screen is displayed.

Kisekae Tool

Using Kisekae Tool

If you use "Kisekae Tool", items such as ring tone, Stand-by display, icon menu can be changed at a time.

- Downloading Kisekae Tool P195
 - Available items vary depending on Kisekae Tool.
 - Stand-by display
 - Custom menu
 - Incoming voice call image
 - Incoming vt call image
 - Mail sending image
 - Mail receiving image
 - Mail complete image
 - Check new message (Image)
 - Antenna icon
 - Battery icon
 - Color theme
 - Voice call
 - Video call
 - Mail/Message/SMS
 - MessageR
 - MessageF
 - SMS
 - Alarm
- If the Menu screen design is changed by using Kisekae Tool, menu structure may change, depending on menu types, according to the frequency of use. In addition, numbers assigned to menu items (item numbers) may not be applied.
- Pre-installed Kisekae Tool can display menu items in Japanese, English, and Korean (except for "L02B-direct"). Downloaded Kisekae Tool may not display menu items in English and Korean.



"Data Box" "Kisekae Tool"

2 "i-mode"/"Preinstalled"

- i-mode : Select from Kisekæ Tool downloaded from the site.
- Preinstalled : Select from preinstalled Kisekæ Tool.
- Select "Search by i-mode" and connect to the i-mode site to search Kisekæ Tool.



3 Select Kisekæ Tool [Set all] "Yes"

- [View]: View the contents of the selected Kisekæ Tool by item.

Resetting the settings

Press [Menu] on the Kisekæ Tool list screen "Reset screen display / sound setting" enter the Terminal security code.

Kisekæ Tool List Screen Sub Menu

1 Kisekæ Tool list screen (P112) Move the cursor to Kisekæ Tool [Menu]

- The Kisekæ Tool list screen sub menu is the same as for "Still Image File List Screen Sub Menu" (P298) except for "Set all" and "Reset screen display / sound setting". However, "Send via", "Set as", and "Store in center" are not displayed.

Menu settings

Changing Display of Main Menu

You can switch between the following 2 types of the Main menu.

- Custom menu: Menu items can be changed.
- Basic menu: Menu items cannot be changed, but icons or background images can be changed.

Changing Menu Items of Custom Menu

You can change the menu items of the Custom menu depending on Kisekæ Tool.

You can call up the function with a few steps by changing menu items to frequently used ones.

- Menu items cannot be changed from the default Custom menu.

1 Move the cursor to the function to change [Menu] [Menu] "Assign function" Select a function "Yes"

Resetting the Custom Menu to the default

[Menu] [Menu] "Reset function assignment" "Yes"

Deleting the Menu operation log

Depending on Kisekæ Tool, Custom menu items are automatically sorted according to the menu operation log. Perform the following operations to delete menu operation log.

[Menu] [Menu] "Reset menu operation log" "Yes"

Changing Icons or Background Images of Basic Menu

1 [MENU] [TV] [Basic]

2 Move the cursor to an icon to change [MENU] [Menu] "Icon settings" Select a new icon

- To select other folders, press [OK] and then select an icon.
- To change the background image Press [MENU] [Menu] "Set background" select an image.

Note

- JPEG or GIF images in 130 x 130 dots or smaller can be used as an icon. The image size larger than this size is automatically reduced. The image of the first frame is displayed for an image in animation GIF format.

Setting Preferentially Displayed Menu

You can set Menu displayed when pressing [MENU] in Stand-by.

1 [MENU] [Menu] "Menu priority" "Custom menu"/"Basic menu" "Yes"

Switching Menu

While displaying Menu, press [TV] [Basic/Custom].

Lighting LED

Setting Incoming Illumination Patterns

You can set the incoming or alarm illumination to ON/OFF, or set illumination patterns for each item.

1 [MENU] "Settings" "Display" "Lighting LED" Perform the following operations

- [MENU] [Preview]: Check the illumination set to the selected item.

[Lighting LED]

Set whether to light/blink the illumination light.

[Incoming voice call]

Set an illumination pattern for an incoming voice call.

[Incoming video call]

Set an illumination pattern for an incoming video call.

[New mail]

Set an illumination pattern for incoming mail/MessageR/F.

2 [Done]

- [New Voice mail]**
Set an illumination pattern to indicate that a new message is recorded at the Voice mail center.
- This option is valid only when "Tone/Vibration message notification" is set to "Yes". P393
- [New Record message]**
Set an illumination pattern to indicate that a new message is recorded.
- [Alarm]**
Set an illumination pattern at Alarm time.
- [IC card(Felica)]**
Set whether to light or blink an illumination when using the IC card.
- [Missed call]**
Set whether to light or blink an illumination when you missed a call.
- [Unread message]**
Set whether to light or blink an illumination when unread mails, SMS, or messages exist.
- [Low battery]**
Set whether to light or blink an illumination when the battery level becomes low.
- * Available when "Lighting LED" is set to "ON"

Note

- The illuminations for "Missed call" and "Unread message" light/blink for up to 1 hour at 10 seconds interval, and other illuminations light/blink for up to 30 seconds.

Setting Clock Display

You can set the display format for date and time.

- 1  "Settings" "Date&Time" "Date&Time format" Perform the following operations

[Date format]

Set the display format for the date.

[Time format]

Set the display format for the time.


- 2  [Done]

Note

- YYYY=year, MM=month, and DD=day in the display.

Adjusting Touch Panel

You can set the display format for date and time.

- 1  "Settings" "Others" "Calibration"
- 2 Touch the center of "+" at the upper left, upper right, lower left, lower right, and middle
- 3 "Yes" Check the calibration with the same operation as Step 2 "OK"
 - If "No" is selected, go to Step 4 without checking the calibration.
- 4 "Yes"



Security Settings

Security Code		
Security Codes Used on the FOMA Terminal	118	Rejecting a Call from Specified Number
Changing Terminal Security Code		Rejecting All Incoming Calls
Change security code	120	Setting Actions when Calls Arrive from Anonymous Callers
Setting PIN Codes	120	Anonymous caller
PIN code	121	Muting Ring Tone for a Caller Unset in Phonebook
Unblocking a Blocked PIN		Set mute ring(sec.)
Restricting Operations and Functions on Mobile Phone		Rejecting a Call from a Caller Unset in Phonebook
Various Lock Functions	121	Reject unknown
Restricting Others from Using	121	Using Data Security Service
Lock all	123	Data Security Service
Restricting Making/Receiving Calls		Resetting Various Functions
Restricting Display of Phonebook and Schedule etc.	124	Reset Settings
Data access lock		Deleting Saved Data All at Once
Restricting Display of Live Character Park	125	Other Security Settings
Live Character Park lock		Other Security Settings
Preventing the Touch Panel/Key Misoperations	125	
Touch lock		
Restricting Outgoing/Incoming Calls and Messages		
Automatically Setting Touch Lock	126	
Auto touch lock		
Setting Display for Redial and Received Calls	126	
Display Call/Mail logs		
Displaying Information Set as Secret	127	
Secret mode		

Security Codes Used on the FOMA Terminal

Some functions of the FOMA terminal require a password. In addition to the Terminal security code, the Network security code, the i-mode password, etc. are entered. These passwords help you utilize your FOMA terminal.

- The entered passwords such as the Terminal security code, Network security code, and i-mode password are displayed as "*".

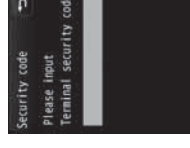
Cautions on security codes

- Avoid setting a password using your birthday, part of your phone number, your address or room number, "1111" or "1234", which can be easily guessed by others. Be sure to write down the set passwords and store them in a separate location.
- Do not reveal your passwords to others. DOCOMO is not responsible for damage caused by misuse of your security codes by others.
- If you forget your passwords, you need to bring your ID (driver's license, etc.), the FOMA terminal and UIM to the docomo Shop. For details, contact "General Inquiries" at the back of this manual.

Terminal Security Code

The Terminal security code is set to "0000" by default; you can change the code yourself. P 120

If the Terminal security code entry screen appears, enter the 4- to 8- digit code and press **[OK]**.



Terminal security code entry screen

Network Security Code

The Network security code is a 4-digit number to be used for confirming subscriber's identity at an acceptance of order at the docomo Shop, docomo Information Center, or "お客様サポート (user support)" and accessing network services. You can set any number at subscription, and can change the number yourself.

If you have "docomo ID/Password" for "My docomo" which is a total support site for a PC, you can change the Network security code from a PC. From i-mode, you can change the Network security code by accessing "お客様サポート (user support)" then "各種設定 (確認・変更・利用) (subscriptions & procedures)".

- For "My docomo" and "お客様サポート (user support)", see the backside of the back of this manual.

i-mode Password

The 4-digit "i-mode password" is required to register/remove contents in My Menu, or subscribe to/cancel message service, fee-based i-mode services. (Some other information service providers may set individual passwords.) The i-mode password is set to "0000" by default; you can change it yourself. From i-mode, you can change the password by accessing "iMenu" "English" "Options" "Change i-mode Password".

PIN1 /PIN2 Codes

You can set PIN1 and PIN2 codes to the UIM. These codes are set to "0000" by default. You can change them yourself. P120
The PIN1 code is a 4- to 8- digit number (code) required to identify the user every time the UIM is inserted into the FOMA terminal or the terminal power is turned on in order to prevent unauthorized use.
The PIN1 code entry is required to make or receive calls, and operate the terminal. The PIN2 code is a 4- to 8- digit number used to reset accumulated call charges, etc.

If the PIN1/PIN2 code entry screen appears, enter the 4- to 8- digit PIN1 /PIN2 code and press **[OK]**.

- Use the PIN1 and PIN2 codes you set previously if you purchase a new FOMA terminal and use the current UIM.

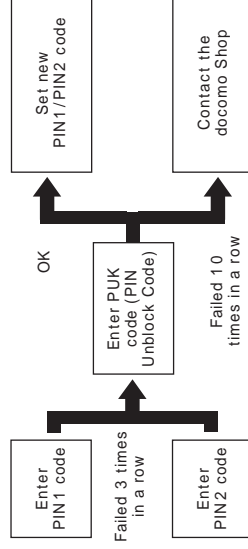


PIN1 code entry screen (Ex.: For PIN1 code)

PUK Code (PIN Unblock Code)

The PUK code is an 8-digit number used to unblock the PIN1 or PIN2 code. P121
You cannot change it yourself.


- If you fail to enter the correct PUK code 10 times in a row, the UIM is locked.



Change security code

Changing Terminal Security Code

You can change the Terminal security code.

- 1  "Settings" "Lock/Security"
"Change security code"
- 2 Enter the current Terminal security code
The Change security code screen appears.
- 3 Enter a new Terminal security code
- 4 Re-enter the Terminal security code entered in Step 3


PIN code

Setting PIN Codes

PIN1 code request



Requiring the PIN1 Code when the Terminal is Turned On

Set to display the PIN1 code entry screen when the FOMA terminal is turned on, and reject the use of the FOMA terminal unless entering the PIN1 code.

- 1  "Settings" "Lock/Security"
"PIN code" Enter the Terminal security code
"PIN1 code request" "ON"/"OFF"
Enter PIN1 code

Making emergency calls (110, 119, or 118) when the PIN1 entry screen is open


You can make emergency calls (110, 119, or 118) even when the PIN1 code entry screen appears right after the FOMA terminal is turned on.

[ER. call] Select an emergency number [OK]

Change PIN1/PIN2 code

Changing PIN1/PIN2 Code

• Set "PIN1 code request" to "ON" before changing the PIN1 code.

- 1  "Settings" "Lock/Security" "PIN code" Enter the Terminal security code
- 2 "Change PIN1 code"/"Change PIN2 code"
Enter the current PIN1/PIN2 code
The new PIN1/PIN2 code entry screen appears.
- 3 Enter the new PIN1/PIN2 code (4 to 8 digits)
The new PIN1/PIN2 code re-entry screen appears.
- 4 Re-enter the PIN1/PIN2 code entered in Step 3

Unblocking a Blocked PIN

If you enter an incorrect PIN1/PIN2 code 3 times in a row and the PIN lock screen appears, enter the PUK code to release the lock.

- You need to set a new PIN1/PIN2 code after unblocking the PIN code.

- 1** PIN lock screen Enter the PUK code (8 digits)
The new PIN1/PIN2 code entry screen appears.
- 2** Enter the new PIN1/PIN2 (4 to 8 digits)
The re-entry screen for confirmation appears.
- 3** Re-enter the PIN1/PIN2 code entered in Step 2

Various Lock Functions

Lock function	Description	Reference
Lock all	You can lock the FOMA terminal to prevent unauthorized use.	P121
Omakase Lock	If you lost the FOMA terminal, you can lock the terminal by remote control.	P122
Call/Mail lock	To prevent unauthorized use of the FOMA terminal, you can disable outgoing calls, address entries with dial keys, incoming calls or display of mail messages.	P123
Self mode	You can disable all network functions, such as making/receiving calls, using i-mode, or sending/receiving mails.	P124

Lock function	Description	Reference
Data access lock	You can specify certain functions to lock.	P124
Live Character Park lock	You can hide Live Character Park.	P125
Auto touch lock	You can set the FOMA terminal to automatically lock the touch operations and Keypad to avoid being used in Turn View Style mode and leave the FOMA terminal for a certain seconds without any operations.	P126
Display Call/Mail logs	You can hide redialed call, received call, sent mail, received mail logs.	P126
Secret mode	You can hide secret Phonebook entries or schedule events.	P127

Lock all

Restricting Others from Using

You can lock the FOMA terminal to prevent anyone from using it.

- When Lock all is activated, any operations other than turning power ON/OFF, making emergency calls, answering incoming voice/ videophone calls, and canceling Lock all are disabled.

- 1**  "Settings" "Lock/Security" "Lock" "Lock all" Enter the Terminal security code "Yes"/"No"

Note

- Even if mail or Messenger/F arrives while Lock all is activated, the Receive results screen or icon is not displayed.
- While Lock all is activated, the i-Channel ticker does not appear.

Calling emergency numbers (110, 119, or 118) during Lock all
Emergency numbers (110, 119, or 118) can be called during Lock all.  [Emergency] Select an emergency number  [OK]

Canceling Lock all

Touch "Unlock"/Press any key Enter the Terminal security code
If you fail to enter the correct Terminal security code 5 times in a row, the terminal automatically turns power o .

Omakase Lock

Using Omakase Lock

You can lock your personal information such as Phonebook entries and the IC card functions of Osaifu-Keitai by contacting DOCOMO when you lost the FOMA terminal and other cases. Your important privacy and Osaifu-Keitai will be protected. If Omakase Lock cannot be set at the subscription and communication becomes available within a year, the lock is automatically activated. However if you cancel or halt the contract, change your phone number, or issue a new UJM due to loss (only when locked the terminal by specifying numbers), the lock will not be automatically activated even within a year. The FOMA terminal can be unlocked upon your request.

* If you are the docomo Premier Club member, no charges apply to use this service as many times as you want. If you are not the docomo Premier Club member, charges apply (however, if you subscribe to this service upon or during suspension of the FOMA terminal, no charges apply.) Also, if you subscribe to Keitai Anshin Pack (Mobile Phone Security Package), you can use this service within the Keitai Anshin Pack flat rate fee.

Setting/canceling Omakase Lock

 0120 - 524 - 360 Available 24 hours a day
(In Japanese only)

- Setting/canceling the lock is available from the My docomo site using a PC.

* For details about Omakase Lock, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

When Omakase Lock is set, "Omakase Lock activated" appears.

- During Omakase Lock, operations except answering voice/video phone calls or turning power ON/OFF are unavailable and each function (including the IC card functions) cannot be used.
- Receiving voice/video phone calls is available. However, only phone number appears and the name or image saved in the Phonebook does not appear.
- The received mails during Omakase Lock are stored in the i-mode center.
- Turning power ON/OFF is available. However, turning power OFF does not cancel the lock.
- The UIM or microSD card cannot be locked.

Note

- Even when other functions are activated, relevant functions are ended and the lock is activated.
- Even while other lock function is set, Omakase Lock can be used. However, if Omakase Lock is set during Public mode (Drive mode), voice/video phone calls also cannot be received.
- When the FOMA terminal is out of service area, turned OFF, or used overseas, the lock cannot be activated nor deactivated. Also, depending on the usage status of the FOMA terminal, the lock may not be activated.
- If you subscribe to Dual Network Service and the mova service is in use, the lock cannot be activated.
- Even when the subscriber is different from the user of the FOMA terminal, the lock is activated upon the request from the subscriber.
- Omakase Lock can be canceled only if the UIM phone number that is the same as the one used when Omakase Lock is activated is inserted in the FOMA terminal. If the lock cannot be canceled, contact "General Inquiries" at the back of this manual.

Restricting Making/Receiving Calls

Call/Mail lock

Disabling Outgoing or Incoming Communications

You can disable making calls, entering an address with dial keys, answering calls, or displaying mails.

- 1  "Settings" "Lock/Security" "Lock" "Call/Mail lock" Enter the Terminal security code Perform the following operations

[Call/Mail lock set]

Set whether to activate the Call/Mail lock.

[Dialing call]*

Disable the following operations.

- Making calls by entering numbers with dial keys
- Making calls via the received call logs
- Making calls to redial phone numbers (making a call to a number saved in the Phonebook or an emergency number such as "110", "119", or "118" is available)
- Saving, editing, or deleting a Phonebook entry (including exchanging data via infrared communication, or copying/moving to the microSD card)

[Send mail]*

Disable the following operations.

- Entering a mail address with dial keys.
- Sending mail to an address in the redial or received mail logs (sending mails to an address saved in the Phonebook is available).
- Performing data communications connecting to a PC, etc.
- Saving, editing, or deleting a Phonebook entry (including exchanging data via infrared communication, or copying/moving to the microSD card).

[Incoming call]*

Disable incoming calls. While this function is activated, a missed call icon does not appear and the received call log cannot be viewed.

[Rcv. mail display]*

Disable viewing sent/received mails and Messenger/F. While this function is activated, an icon indicating incoming mail does not appear, and mails and received mail log in the FOMA terminal cannot be viewed.


* Can be set when "Call/Mail lock set" is set to "ON".



Self mode

Stopping All Incoming/Outgoing Transmissions

You can disable all network functions, such as making/receiving calls, using i-mode, or sending/receiving mails. Infrared data communication is also unavailable.

-  "Settings" "Call/VT/Dialing" "Self mode" "Yes"/"No"


Note

- Self mode is deactivated if you call an emergency number ("110", "119", or "118").
- While Self mode is activated, callers will hear a message indicating that the FOMA terminal is turned o or out of service area.
- The Voice mail service and the Call forwarding service still work in Self mode.
- All mails and MessageR/F received while in Self mode are stored at the i-mode center and SMS is stored at the SMS center. To receive them, deactivate Self mode and check new messages/SMS.
- If a call arrives while Self mode is activated, a missed call icon does not appear on the Stand-by display after the Self mode is deactivated.

Data access lock

Restricting Display of Phonebook and Schedule etc.

You can lock specified functions to reject the use unless the Terminal security code is entered, or restrict the use of the FOMA terminal.

-  "Settings" "Lock/Security" "Lock" "Data access lock" Enter the Terminal security code Perform the following operations

[Data access lock]

Set whether to activate the Data access lock.

[Phonebook]

Set to disable the Phonebook until the Terminal security code is entered.

- In the Redial list or logs, the phone number or mail address of the caller/sender will be displayed instead of the name saved in the Phonebook.
- Receiving Phonebook entries using infrared communication becomes unavailable.

[Data Box]

Set to disable the files in Data Box until the Terminal security code is entered.

- Receiving data such as images or melodies to be saved in Data Box using infrared communication becomes unavailable.

[Record message]

Set to disable the Record message until the Terminal security code is entered.

- If the Record message is set to "ON" and locked,  does not appear in the Stand-by display even when a message is recorded.

[Schedule]*
Set to disable the Schedule function until the Terminal security code is entered.

- An alarm set for a Schedule event does not sound.
- Receiving schedule events using infrared communication becomes unavailable.

[i-mode]*
Set to disable the i-mode function until the Terminal security code is entered.

- i-mode connections from other than the i-mode menu screen, such as "Web To" become unavailable.
- i-Channel ticker is not displayed.
- Pattern definition for the scanning function becomes unavailable.
- Receiving bookmarks using infrared communication becomes unavailable.
- Communication from i- ppli is available.
- i- ppli update is available from i- ppli menu.

[i- ppli]*
Set to disable the i- ppli until the Terminal security code is entered.

- Receiving i- ppli data using infrared communication becomes unavailable.
- If i- ppli is set as the Stand-by display, it will disappear from the Stand-by display.

* Can be set when "Data access lock" is set to "ON".


2 [Done]

Note

- You can access the functions by entering the Terminal security code when:
 - You access a function from the Main menu or Custom menu.
 - You press a key assigned to access the function in Stand-by.
 - You access a function from the New task screen (P.349) or Task list screen (P.350).

Live Character Park lock Restricting Display of Live Character Park

You can restrict the display of Live Character Park unless the Terminal security code is entered.

- Only available to display the Live Character Park screen from the Stand-by display. If performed from the Live Character Park screen, the screen returns straight to the Live Character Park screen.
-  "Settings" "Lock/Security" "Lock" "Live Character Park lock" Enter the Terminal security code
Perform this operation to switch ON and OFF.

Touch lock Preventing the Touch Panel/Key Misoperations

Disable the use by locking touch panel and keys at the time of the FOMA terminal in Turn View Style mode.

Setting Touch Lock

While the FOMA terminal is in Turn View Style mode 

Releasing Touch Lock

While the FOMA terminal is in Turn View Style mode Touch  (for 1 + seconds) (for 1 + seconds)

- You can also release the Touch lock by opening the FOMA terminal.

Note

- While 1Seg, Camera, or music playback function (except BGM), etc. is in use, Touch lock is not applied.
- If a call arrives during Touch lock, the Incoming call screen, etc. appears and operations become available temporarily.
- During background playback, you can adjust the volume by pressing \square/\square even if Touch lock is set.
- If Auto touch lock (P126) is set, Touch lock is applied automatically after a certain period of time.
- Touch lock cannot be set in some occasions such as during a call, while making a call, or communicating.

Auto touch lock

Automatically Setting Touch Lock

You can automatically lock and disable touch operations and keys if the FOMA terminal does not operate for a certain period of time with the FOMA terminal in Turn View Style mode.

1 "Settings" "Lock/Security" "Auto touch lock" Select a lock method

- OFF : Do not activate Auto touch lock.
- After 15 sec. : Activate Touch lock 15 seconds after the last operation of the FOMA terminal in Turn View Style mode.
- After 30 sec. : Activate Touch lock 30 seconds after the last operation of the FOMA terminal in Turn View Style mode.
- After 60 sec. : Activate Touch lock 60 seconds after the last operation of the FOMA terminal in Turn View Style mode.
- When LCD o : Activate Touch lock when the display turns o in Turn View Style mode.

Display Call/Mail logs

Setting Display for Redial and Received Calls

You can disable the display of redial, received call, sent mail, and received mail logs.

1 "Settings" "Lock/Security" "Display Call/Mail logs" Enter the Terminal security code

2 Move the cursor to an item to set

 [ON/OFF]

The items set to "OFF" cannot be displayed.

- Redial logs : Set whether to display the redial logs.
- Rcv. call logs : Set whether to display the received call logs.
- Sent mail logs : Set whether to display the sent mail logs.
- Rcv. Mail logs : Set whether to display the received mail logs.

Note

- If "Rcv. call logs" is set to "OFF", the recorded message list is not displayed.

Secret mode

Displaying Information Set as Secret

You can set whether to display secret Phonebook entries/Schedule events.

 "Settings" "Lock/Security" "Secret mode" Enter the Terminal security code

Select a Secret mode setting

OFF : Display only general data other than secret data.

Secret mode : Display secret and general data.

Secret data only : Display only secret data.

Reject on list

Rejecting a Call from Specified Number

You can reject calls from the specific parties saved on the list.

- This function is available only when the caller sends caller ID.
- It is recommended that you set the Caller ID request service concurrently.

Saving Phone Numbers to Reject


You can save and edit up to 20 phone numbers to reject.

 "Settings" "Call/VT/Dialing" "Incoming call" "Accept/Reject call" Enter the Terminal security code "Edit reject list"



Reject list screen

2 Select an empty list number Enter a phone number to reject "Silent"/"Disconnect call"

- Silent : Mute the ring tone.
Disconnect call : Incoming call actions are not performed.
-  [Search]: Invoke a phone number to reject from the Phonebook.


Deleting a saved phone number

Select a number to delete on the Reject list screen select "Delete".

Editing a saved phone number


Select a number to edit on the Reject list screen select "Edit".

Setting the Reject on List

- 1  "Settings" "Call/VT/Dialing" "Incoming call" "Accept/Reject call" Enter the Terminal security code "Accept/Reject set" "Accept/Reject set" "Reject on list"

- To cancel the rejection
Select "Accept" on the screen after selecting "Accept/Reject set".

Note

- When the Reject on list is activated, and a call from a party saved as "Disconnect call" arrives,  appears on the Stand-by display and the call is recorded in the Received call log as a missed call. The other party hears a busy signal.
- i-mode mail or SMS messages are received regardless of the rejection settings.

Reject all calls

Rejecting All Incoming Calls


You can mute the ring tone for all incoming calls or disconnect calls before incoming call actions are performed.

- 1  "Settings" "Call/VT/Dialing" "Incoming call" "Accept/Reject call" Enter the Terminal security code "Accept/Reject set" "Reject all calls" "Silent"/"Disconnect call"

- Silent : Mute the ring tone for all incoming calls.
Disconnect call : Do not perform incoming call actions for all incoming calls.

- To cancel the rejection
Select "Accept" on the screen after selecting "Accept/Reject set".

Note

- When a call arrives while "Disconnect call" is set, the call is not notified and  appears on the Stand-by display. The call is recorded in the Received call log as a missed call. The other party hears a busy signal.
- i-mode mail or SMS messages are received regardless of the rejection settings.

Anonymous caller

Setting Actions when Calls Arrive from Anonymous Callers

You can set whether to accept or reject calls without caller ID per reason for anonymous call.



"Settings" "Call/VT/Dialing"

"Incoming call" "Anonymous caller"

Enter the Terminal security code Perform the following operations

[User unset]

Set options for incoming calls without caller ID at the caller's will.

Response : Set response method for anonymous caller.

Disable : Cancel the setting.

Reject call : Reject incoming calls.

Silent alert : Mute the ring tone. You can select an image for the incoming call from images saved in "My picture" of "Data Box". P296

Alert setting : Select an image and ring tone for the incoming call from data in "Data Box".

Incoming call image : Set an image for anonymous caller. "Terminal setting"/"Image"/"i-motion" Select an image

Ring tone : Set ring tone for anonymous caller. "Terminal setting"/"MUSIC"/"i-motion"/"Melody" Select a ring tone

- If Chaku-Uta Full® saved in "MUSIC" is selected, go to Step 3 in "Setting a Chaku-Uta Full® Song as a Ring Tone" (P266).

[Pay phone]

Set options for calls made from payphones.


- Set items and operations are the same as in "User unset".

[Not support]

Set options for calls for which caller ID cannot be sent such as calls made from overseas or from a land-line phone via forwarding services. (Caller ID may be sent depending on the carrier.)

- Set items and operations are the same as in "User unset".


Note

- If an anonymous call set to "Reject call" arrives while the Anonymous caller is activated, the call is not notified and  appears on the Stand-by display. The call is recorded in Received call log as a missed call. The other party hears a busy signal. Calls are rejected even when the Voice mail or Call forwarding service is activated. However, if Ringing time is set to 0 second or the FOMA terminal is out of service area or turned power o , network services are activated.
- i-mode mail or SMS messages are received regardless of the rejection settings.
- If "Select ring tone" (P100) or "Call & Mail image" (P109) is set with a moving picture/i-motion with audio/video for a specific caller and change either of them, the default sound or image, even if the response method is set to "Alert setting", is played for "Ring tone" or "Incoming call image" with the setting unchanged.
- If a moving picture/i-motion with video/sound is set as either "Incoming call image" or "Ring tone", the same moving picture/i-motion is set for the other item.
<User unset >
- If the Caller ID request service is activated, it takes priority over the settings of "Anonymous caller". The caller hears the voice guidance for a Caller ID request.

Set mute ring(sec.)

Muting Ring Tone for a Caller Unset in Phonebook

You can set the FOMA terminal not to ring immediately when a call arrives from a caller not saved to the Phonebook or without caller ID. This prevents nuisance calls such as "one-ring call" that are disconnected after a short ringing time.

1  "Settings" "Sounds&Vibration"
"Set mute ring(sec.)" Perform the following operations

[Set mute ring time]

Set whether to enable the Set mute ring time.

[Mute time]

Set the time for which the ring tone is muted before the ringing action starts between 1 and 99 seconds.

[Missed call logs]

Set whether to display the Received call logs for the call that was terminated in the time specified in "Mute time".

* Can be set when "Set mute ring time" is set to "ON".

2  [Done]

Note

- When a relevant call arrives while this function is activated, incoming call actions, such as sounding the ring tone, do not take place for the set time; however, the Incoming call screen appears.
 - This function operates even when "Secret mode" is set to "OFF" or a call from a operates Phonebook entry arrives.
- <Set mute ring time>
- If this option is set longer than the response time of the Voice mail/Call forwarding service, network services start without the ringing action.
 - If this option is set longer than "To answer" time of "Record message", the Record message starts without the ringing action.
 - You cannot set "Set mute ring time" when "Reject unknown" is set to "ON".

Reject unknown

Rejecting a Call from a Caller Unset in Phonebook

You can set to reject calls from callers not saved to the Phonebook or without caller ID.

- It is recommended that you set the Caller ID request service concurrently.

1  "Settings" "Call/VT/Dialing"
"Incoming call" "Accept/Reject call" Enter the Terminal security code Move the cursor to "Reject unknown"  [ON/OFF]

Note

- The FOMA terminal does not perform incoming call actions for a rejected incoming call, however, the call is recorded in the Received call log. The other party hears a busy signal.
- Calls are rejected even when the Voice mail or Call forwarding service is activated. However, if the ringing time is set to 0 second, network services start.
- i-mode or SMS messages are received regardless of the rejection settings.
- You cannot activate "Reject unknown" when "Set mute ring time" is set to "ON" or "Data access lock" is set to "ON" with "Phonebook" marked.



Data Security Service

Using Data Security Service

This service enables you to back up the Phonebook, images and mails ("Saved data") at the DOCOMO's Data Center so that the Saved data can be restored if you lose your FOMA terminal or when changing models. Also, you can notify all connected parties of your mail address change at a time. No packet communication charges apply for sending the multi-address notice mail. If you have a PC (My docomo), you can use this service more conveniently.

- For details about the Data Security Service, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".
- The Data Security Service is a fee-based service requiring a separate subscription (The i-mode contract is necessary for this subscription).

Saving the FOMA Terminal Phonebook at the Data Security Center




- 1.  "LifeKit" "Data security service"
- 2.  "Connect to center" Enter the Terminal security code "Yes"

Note

- You cannot save the UIM Phonebook.
- If another Phonebook is saved already, the data is updated.
- Note that if you use this service after deleting the Phonebook entries in the FOMA terminal, the Phonebook entries saved at the Data Center are deleted likewise.
- You can restore the Phonebook or use Set auto-update from. i モードの電話帳本預かりサイト (i-mode's Data Security Service). "iMenu" "English" "My Menu" select "電話帳お預かり (Data Security Service)".

Displaying Exchanging History

Display exchanging history with the Data Center.

- 1.  "LifeKit" "Data security service"
- 2.  "Exchanging history" Select an exchanging history
 - Move the cursor to an exchanging history and press  [Menu] to select "Delete one" or "Delete all".

Setting whether to Send Images Set for the Phonebook

Set whether to save images set for the Phonebook entries to the Data Center.

- 1.  "LifeKit" "Data security service"
- 2. Move the cursor to "Sndg img in phonebook"
 -  [ON/OFF]

Saving Images/Mails to the Data Center

Example: To save images saved in "My picture"

- 1 **MENU** "Data Box" **MENU** "My picture" Move the cursor to a folder **MENU** [Open]
- 2 **MENU** [Menu] "Store in center" Mark images to save **MENU** [Done] Enter the Terminal security code "Yes"

Note

- Only images and mail saved in the FOMA terminal can be saved.
- SMS reports cannot be saved.
- An image larger than 100KB cannot be saved.
- Files attached to i-mode mail will not be saved.
- SMS with Korean text cannot be saved.

Reset Settings

Resetting Various Functions

You can reset settings of various functions to the defaults.

- For functions that can be reset to the defaults, refer to "Menu List" (P.430).

- 1 **MENU** "Settings" "Others" "Reset/Clear" "Reset Settings" "Yes" Enter the Terminal security code

Note

- Perform "Reset Settings" with the battery level sufficient.
- During "Reset Settings", functions/communication cannot be used.

Clear memory

Deleting Saved Data All at Once

You can delete saved data.

- 1 **MENU** "Settings" "Others" "Reset/Clear" "Clear memory"

- 2 Mark items to delete **MENU** [Done] "Yes" Enter the Terminal security code

Data to be deleted

Item	Data
Pre-installed data	Default data in "Data Box" ^{*1}
User data	All data other than pre-installed data in "Data Box"
PIM data	Data in "Phonebook" ^{*2} /"Schedule"/"Text memo"/"Sketch memo"/"To do list"/"Remembering dates"/"1Seg", data in Inbox/Outbox ^{*3} , data in Bookmark, Screen memo, URL history, settings in Additional service and Additional guide of the network service

^{*1} Kisekae Tool data is not deleted.

^{*2} The total calls cost is not deleted.

^{*3} Inbox/Outbox folders, MessageR/F folders, and mail-connected i-ppml folder are not deleted.

Deleting data saved on the microSD card

You can delete all data saved on the microSD card.

- "Settings" "Others" "Reset/Clear" "Clear microSD"
- "Yes" Enter the Terminal security code

Note

- Data saved on the UIM are not deleted.
- "Welcome Mail" and "Welcome ドコモ画面" are deleted.
- <Pre-installed data>
- Some files that are used for default settings are not deleted.
- The use of WOW LG
- If you deleted pre-installed i-ppli, Deco-mail pictures, Deco-mail pictograms, wallpapers (the Stand-by display), frames, stamps, melodies, or i-motion and want to restore it, visit site, "WOW LG" in iMenu and you can download.
- "iMenu" "メニューリスト (Menu list)" "ケータイ電話メーカー (Mobile Phone Manufacturers)" "WOW LG"
- *Packet communication charges apply for downloading.

Other Security Settings

In addition to the security settings described in this chapter, the following functions/services are available.

Function name/Service name	Purpose	Reference
IC card lock	To prevent unauthorized use of the IC card function	P 292
Nuisance call blocking service	To reject "nuisance call"	P 397
Caller ID request service	To reject a call from a caller without caller ID	P 398

Function name/Service name	Purpose	Reference
Software Update	To update software on the FOMA terminal when necessary	P 459
Scanning function	To protect the FOMA terminal from harmful data	P 464
Receive option	To accept only necessary mails out of mass mails	P 149
i-mode Disaster Message Board Service		
Change your mail address		
Spam Mail Prevention (Reject Mail with URLs) (Reject/Receive Mail Settings)		
(Kantan Mail Settings) (Reject Mass i-mode Mail Senders)		
(SMS Rejection Settings) (Reject Unsolicited Ad Mail) (Confirm Settings)	See "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".	
Suspending/reactivating mail functions		
Limiting mail size		
Keitai-Osagashi Service		
imadoco kantan search (Location Search Service Lite)		

Note

- The order of precedence when the function to prevent nuisance calls is set concurrently is the following:

- ① "Nuisance call blocking service"
- ② "Reject on list"
- ③ "Reject unknown"
- ④ "Accept/Reject call"
- ⑤ "Anonymous caller"



Mail

Mail Functions of FOMA Terminal.....	136	Using Mail History	166
i-mode Mail.....	136	Using Mail History	166
Displaying Mail Menu	137	..... Received mails/Sent mails/Recent mails	166
..... Mail menu	137		
Composing i-mode Mail/Deco-Mail		Configuring Mail Settings	
Composing and Sending i-mode Mail	138	Setting Mail Functions of the FOMA Terminal	168
..... Compose/Send i-mode mail	138	..... Mail setting	168
Creating and Sending Deco-mail.....	141	Using Message Services	
..... Deco-mail	141	When You Receive Message.....	Receive Message 172
Using a Template to Create Deco-mail.....	144	Checking New Message.....	Check new messages 173
Attaching a File.....	146	Displaying New Message.....	MessageR/MessageF 174
..... Attachment	146		
Receiving and Operating i-mode Mail		Using SMS	
When You Receive i-mode Mail	147	Composing and Sending SMS	176
..... Receive mail automatically	147	..... Compose/Send SMS	176
Receiving i-mode Mail Selectively... Receive option	149	When You Receive SMS Messages... Receive SMS	177
Checking New i-mode Mail... Check new messages	150	Checking New SMS Messages ...Check new SMS	177
Replying to i-mode Mail	151	Setting SMS	SMS Settings 178
..... Reply to i-mode mail	151		
Forwarding i-mode Mail to Other Address	151		
..... Forward i-mode mail	151		
Adding Mail Addresses/Phone Numbers to	152		
Phonebook.....	152		
Playing/Saving an Attached File from i-mode	152		
Mail	152		
		Operating Mailbox	
		Displaying Mail in Inbox/Outbox or Unsent	154
		Messages.....	Inbox/Outbox/Unsent message

Mail Functions of FOMA Terminal

The FOMA terminal provides 2 mail types: i-mode mail and SMS.

- Using i-mode mail requires i-mode subscription.
- Using SMS requires no i-mode subscription.
- If you send i-mode mail or SMS containing some symbols (絵, 顔, etc.) or pictographs, they may not be displayed properly on a mobile phone other than i-mode terminal or on a PC.
- Mail function in Korean is supported only by SMS. If you receive e-mail in Korean via i-mode mail, text will not be displayed properly.

i-mode Mail

Upon subscription to i-mode, you can send and receive e-mail via the Internet, as well as between i-mode terminals. In addition to the message text, a total of 2MB in 10 files (pictures or moving pictures, etc.) can be attached. Also, Deco-mail is supported, in which you can change the color and size of message text or background color. You can also use Deco-mail pictogram to send expressive mail easily.

- For details about i-mode mail, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

SMS

You can send and receive text messages using only mobile phone numbers without subscription to i-mode. Sending P176, Receiving P177, Checking P177

SMS Addresses

The SMS address is the "subscribed mobile phone number".

- You can send and receive SMS to/from terminals that use international carriers other than DOCOMO. Visit the DOCOMO International Services website for available countries and international carriers.

Number of Characters that Can be Sent or Received

The number of characters that can be sent and received in SMS is as follows:

Receiver	21 characters (including "+")
SMS text	Japanese (70 characters), Korean (70 characters)
	English (160 characters)

Sending and Receiving SMS in Korean

You can send and receive SMS in Korean to/from terminals that support Korean.

- Use L-02B to send and receive international SMS in Korean to/from Korean-support terminals of Korea and other international carriers. Visit the DOCOMO International Services website for international carriers that support international SMS. The number of characters that can be sent depends on the situation of each recipient carrier. For details, contact recipient carriers.
- SMS texts in Korean sent to a terminal which does not support Korean will not be displayed properly on the terminal.
- Switching input modes in SMS message to Korean P178
- Entering in Korean P382

When SMS Cannot be Received


SMS delivered to the SMS center will be immediately sent to your FOMA terminal. However, when your FOMA terminal is turned on or out of service area, the SMS is stored in the SMS center.

Note

- The maximum storage period of SMS in the SMS center is 72 hours. You can specify the storage period from "SMS validity period". P178
- Expired SMS is automatically deleted.
- SMS stored in the SMS center can be received by "Check new SMS". P177
- When SMS stored in the SMS center is delivered, it is deleted from the SMS center.

Mail menu

Displaying Mail Menu

Stand-by display 



Mail menu screen

2 Perform the following operations

[Inbox]

Display the Inbox list screen. P154

[Compose message]

Create new i-mode mail. P138

[Unsent message]

Display the Unsent mail list screen. P155

[Outbox]

Display the Outbox list screen. P155

[Check new messages]

Receive i-mode mail stored in the i-mode center by checking new messages. P150

[Receive option]

Check subjects of i-mode mail stored in the i-mode center, and select mail to be received, or deleted without reception from the i-mode center. P149

[SMS]

Compose new SMS, or receive SMS stored in the SMS center by checking new SMS. P176, P177

[Template]

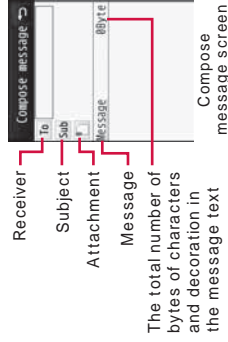
Display a list of saved templates. P145

[Mail setting]

Set mail functions. P168

Composing and Sending i-mode Mail

1 Mail menu screen (P 137) "Compose message"



2 Select **To** field "Direct input" Enter the address

- Up to 50 half-pitch characters can be entered.
- The address can be selected from Sent message log, Received message log, Phonebook, or Mail group. P 139
- Also, press **[Ph. book]** to select an address from the Phonebook.

3 Select **Sub** field Enter the subject

- Up to 15 full-pitch or 30 half-pitch characters can be entered.

4 Select [Message] field Enter the message

- Up to 5,000 full-pitch or 10,000 half-pitch characters can be entered.



5 **[Send]**

- **[Save]**: Save as unsent message.

Note

- To decorate message text P 141
- To send with attachments P 146
- You can insert a line feed in the message text. The line feed is counted as 1 full-pitch character.
- A space inserted by pressing **[]** is counted as 1 half-pitch character.
- Characters may not be sent to the receiver depending on the signal strength.
- Half-pitch katakana and pictographs except for mail exchanged between i-mode terminals may not be displayed correctly.
- The secret code is added automatically when mail is sent with the secret code set. However, the address of the sent mail does not display the added secret code.
- Even if i-mode mail is sent successfully, an error message indicating failure of sending mail may appear depending on the signal strength.

- If you use Deco-mail pictogram (Picto. D) in mail, the mail is automatically sent as Deco-mail.
- If you send a mail with pictographs added to the subject or message text to the other carrier's mobile phone, they will be automatically replaced with the similar pictographs that the carrier/mobile phone supports. However, they may not be displayed properly depending on the mobile phone type or its functions.
- i-mode mail that is successfully sent will be saved in Outbox. If the total number or total size of the stored sent mail exceeds the limit, the oldest mail will be deleted first. Protect sent mail that you want to keep.

Compose Message Screen Sub Menu

1 Compose message screen (P138)



[Menu] Perform the following operations

[Send]

Send mail.

[Auto send]

Send i-mode mail that was composed in out of service area automatically when the terminal moves to the place where signal can be received.

[Save]

Save mail being created or edited in Unsent message.

[Address]

- Add address : Send mail to multiple addresses (multi-address transmission). Up to 5 addresses can be added.
- Sent msg. log : Select an address from Sent message log.
- Rcv. msg. log : Select an address from Received message log.
- Phonebook : Select an address from Phonebook.
- Mail group : Select an address from Mail group.
- Direct input : Enter the receiver address directly.
- Delete address : Delete a selected receiver address.
- Change rcv. type : Change the selected receiver address type.
- Change to To : Change the selected receiver to To. The mail address entered in the To field will be shown to the recipient.
- Change to Cc : Change the selected receiver to Cc. You can specify additional addresses to send a copy of the same mail to other recipients in addition to the direct recipients. The mail address entered in the Cc field will be shown to other recipients.
- The mail address may not be displayed depending on the recipient's mobile phone, device or mail software.
- Change to Bcc : Change the selected receiver to Bcc. You can specify addresses to hide from other recipients. The mail addresses entered in the Bcc field will not be shown to other recipients.

[Attachment]

Attach, view/play, or delete files. P146

[Template]

Load template : Load a template to create Deco-mail. P144.

Save as template : Save the current Deco-mail as a template.

[Header/Sign.]

Attach header : Attach the set header.

Attach sign. : Attach the set signature.

[Delete body]
Delete the message text.

Note
<Add address>
• When selecting a Phonebook entry with multiple mail addresses saved, you need to further specify which addresses are to be added for recipients.
<Template>
• If the message text is already entered, a confirmation whether to delete the text appears. To load the template, select "Yes".

Message Text Entry Screen Sub Menu

Message text entry screen (P138)
[Menu] Perform the following operations

[Decorate mail]
Open the palette to select the decoration to Deco-mail. P142

[Common phrases]
Enter or edit Common phrases. P381

[Edit character]
Select a character or decoration in message text to copy, cut, or paste. Undo the last entry or pasting of characters. P385

[Edit user dict.]
Edit a dictionary stored in the FOMA terminal. P387

[Quote]
Quote the contents of a Phonebook entry, etc. P380

[Input setting]
Configure the character entry settings. P380

[Special input]
Enter a space, line feed, or enter characters using Kuten code. P380

[Header/Sign.]
Header : Attach the set header.
Signature : Attach the set signature.

[Jump]
Top : Move to the top of the displayed message text.
Bottom : Move to the end of the displayed message text.

[Image info.]
Display detailed information about an image behind the cursor.

[P review]
Open the preview screen of the message text.

Creating and Sending Deco-mail

You can create your own designed mail by adding decorations such as changing font size, font color or background color, or inserting images while editing an i-mode mail message.

- Deco-mail up to 10KB can be sent.
- Up to 20 images within 90KB can be inserted.
- Some i-mode terminals may receive Deco-mail that is larger than 10,000 bytes as mail containing a URL to browse.

The set decoration — appears at the cursor position.



Message text entry screen

- 1** Mail menu screen (P137) "Compose message"
- 2** Enter the receiver and subject
 - Entering the receiver and subject P138

- 3** Select [Message] field [Deco]



Palette display screen

- 4** Use the palette to decorate the message text


- Decorating P142
- To specify a decoration before entering characters For operations, refer to "Specifying a Decoration before Entering Characters" (P143).
- To enter characters before specifying a decoration For operations, refer to "Entering Characters before Specifying a Decoration" (P144).

- 5** [Close]

- To view the Deco-mail message Press [Menu] "Preview".


- 6** [Set] [Send]

Note

- If you exchange Deco-mail with Deco-mail incompatible i-mode terminals, the decorations may not be displayed correctly.
- After decorated text is deleted, the decoration data may remain and this may result in a reduction in the number of characters available to enter in the text field. Cancel any decoration before deleting the text. When you delete the text by pressing  for 1 + seconds, the text including any decoration data will be deleted.
- If a template contains an image that cannot be sent via mail, the image may be deleted.

Decorating

1 Message text entry screen (P138) [Deco]

-  [Close]: Switch from palette functions to character entry.





2 Perform the following operations

(Insert image)

Data box : Insert an image saved in "My picture" to the message text.

 [Open] : Move the cursor to the folder. Select an image.

Still image photography : Capture and insert a still image.
Capture an image  [Save] (if capturing in Turn View Style mode, )

(Background color)

Set a background color of the message text.

(Insert line)

Insert a line in message text.

(Edit decoration)

Specify the range of text to decorate. P144

- This option cannot be selected when no text has been entered in the message.

(Char decoration)

Select decorations to apply to characters. P143

(Cancel decoration)

Delete decoration in the line at the cursor.

(My decoration)

Apply My decoration : Apply a character decoration which is saved beforehand.

Edit My decoration : Save your favorite character decoration. P143.

(Undo)

Restore a set decoration to the previous state.

(Reset all settings)



Delete all set decorations.

Note

- When characters with "Telop" or "Swing" set are selected and copied or cut, "Telop" or "Swing" will not take effect.
- <Insert image>
- Up to 90KB or 20 images can be inserted. The number of available attachments may be reduced depending on the file size. If the maximum number of images or size is exceeded, a warning message appears.
- By default, images are saved in the "Decomail picture" and "Decomail picto" folders.
- If the same image is inserted more than once, it is considered that one image is inserted.

1 Specifying a Decoration before Entering Characters

1 Message text entry screen (P138)

 [Deco] Select  (Char decoration)

Perform the following operations

(Font color)


Set the color for characters.

- You can also select a color from the palette by pressing  [Palette].

(Font size)

Set a font size.

(Blink)

- Set the text to blink.
- To cancel blinking, select  (Reset) (Blink).



(Move/Align)

Set the display of the text.

- To cancel the setting, select  (Move Align (Default)).
-  (Telop) : Set the text to display from right to left as a telop.
 - Characters entered between  and  appear as a telop.
 - Characters entered between  and  swing.
-  (Left) : Align characters to be entered or images to be inserted to the left.
-  (Center) : Align characters to be entered or images to be inserted to the center.
-  (Right) : Align characters to be entered or images to be inserted to the right.

2 [Set] Enter characters

Note

- The size of Deco-mail pictogram cannot be changed.
-
- Pictographs are also displayed in the specified color. To restore the default color, select  on the right of  (Text color (Unchange)) from the color palette.
- <Blink>
- When characters set to blink are displayed on the preview screen or the Compose message screen, the characters stop blinking after a certain period of time.

Entering Characters before Specifying a Decoration

- 1 Message text entry screen (P138)
[Menu] [Deco] Select [Edit decoration]
- 2 Use [Enter] to move the cursor to start point
[Select]
 - [Sel/All]: Select the entire message.
 - [Top]: Move to the top of the message text.
 - [End]: Move to the end of the message text.
- 3 Use [Enter] to move the cursor to end point
[Select] Specify a decoration

- You can also decorate text by performing the following steps:
[Menu] (for 1 + seconds) Use [Enter] to move the cursor to start point [Select] Use [Enter] to move the cursor to end point [Select] "Decoration" Specify a Decoration
Selecting "Cancel decoration" deletes the decoration applied to the text.

Template

Using a Template to Create Deco-mail

Templates are form data for Deco-mail with decorations such as the font size and image insertion already set. In addition to the pre-installed templates, you can use templates downloaded from sites.

- 1 Compose message screen (P138) [Menu] [Menu] "Template" "Load template" "Yes"
 - If the mail has entered message text, the entered text will be deleted and the template will be loaded.
- 2 Select a template
 - The selected template is inserted in the message text.
 - To select a template while viewing, press [Preview] and switch templates using [Enter].
 - You can edit the message text after inserting a template.

Creating a New Template

Create user-defined templates. Created templates are saved in "Template" of Mail menu.

- 1 Mail menu screen (P137) "Template"
[Menu] [Menu] "New Template"
- 2 Create templates
 - Decorating P142
- 3 Create a template [Set] Edit the title
[Set] "Yes"

Note

- If message text in the mail is not decorated, a template cannot be saved.

Editing Templates

You can edit user-defined templates.

1 Mail menu screen (P137) "Template"



Template list screen

2 Select a template [Edit] Edit the template

•Decorating P142

3 [Set] "Overwrite save"/"New save"

Overwrite save : Save the edited template over the source template.

New save : Save the edited template as a new template.

4 Edit the title [Set]

5 "Yes"

Template List Screen Sub Menu

1 Template list screen (P145) Move the cursor to a template [Menu] Perform the following operations

[Compose mail]

Compose a new message with the selected template.

[New Template]

Create a new template. P144

[Delete]

Delete one : Delete the selected template.

Del. Selected : Select and delete templates.

Mark templates to delete [Done] "Yes"
• Press [Menu] to select "Select all" or "Deselect all".

Delete all : Delete all templates.

Enter the Terminal security code "Yes"

[Edit title]

Edit the title of the selected template. P145

[Detail info]

Display the properties of the selected template.

Attachment

Attaching a File

You can send i-mode mail with images or melodies attached.



- Up to 10 files, a total of 2MB, can be attached. The number of available attachments may be reduced depending on the file size.
- The following file types can be attached:

- Images (JPEG, GIF)
 - Moving picture/i-motion
 - Motion Oekaki™ image
 - Melody
 - Phonebook
 - Schedule event
 - To do
 - Bookmark
 - Other files on microSD
- A file prohibited to be attached to mail or to be output from the FOMA terminal cannot be attached.

Compose message screen (P138) Select field Perform the following operations



[Image]

My picture : Select an image saved in "My picture" of "Data box", P296

Start camera : Capture and attach a still image.
Capture a still image  [Save] (If capturing in Turn View Style mode, )

[Movie]

i-motion : Select a moving picture/i-motion saved in "i-motion" of "Data Box".

Start camera : Capture and attach a moving picture.
Capture a moving picture  [Save] (If capturing in Turn View Style mode, )


[Motion Oekaki]

microSD : Select a Motion Oekaki™ image or Flash movie saved in "OTHER" folder of microSD card.

Start drawing : Start Motion Oekaki™ and attach a created image.

[Melody]

Select a melody saved in "Melody" of "Data Box".

Move the cursor to a folder  [Open] Select a melody

[Phonebook]

Select a Phonebook entry.

[Calendar]

Select a schedule event saved in the FOMA terminal.

Select a date Select a Schedule event

[To do]

Select To do saved in the FOMA terminal.

[Bookmark]

i-mode : Attach a bookmark saved in "Bookmark" folder of "i-mode".

Full browser : Attach a bookmark saved in "Bookmark" folder of "Full browser".

[Others]

Attach a file saved in "OTHER" folder of a microSD card.

Note


- GIF images and attached melodies cannot be received with an i-mode terminal using the mova service.
- A moving picture/i-motion larger than 2MB cannot be attached. Reduce the size under "Clipping" to the available size before attaching it. P 312
- Depending on the recipient terminal, a moving picture may be displayed coarsely or as sequential still images. When sending a moving picture/i-motion larger than 500KB to i-mode terminals other than 2MB-compatible ones, a moving picture captured with following setting is recommended.
Size restriction: 500KB; Select size: QCIF (176 x 144), Quality: Super fine
- Some i-motion may not be attached.

Playing /Displaying /Deleting an Attached File

1 Compose message screen (P138) Select a desired attachment field with a file attached
Perform the following operations

- [Select]: Play/display the selected attachment.
- [Delete]: Delete the selected attachment.

Note

- To add another attachment, select an  field where no file is attached.

Receive mail automatically



When You Receive i-mode Mail

When the FOMA terminal is in the service area, i-mode mail is automatically sent from the i-mode center.

1 After the i-mode mail is received,  appears at the top of the screen









Receive results screen

- When the reception is completed, the Receive results screen appears.
- The previous screen returns if no operation is performed for approximately 30 seconds.
- Selecting "Mail" displays the Inbox list screen.
- Until the detail screen of received i-mode mail is displayed,  appears at the top of the screen and  (the number indicates the number of messages) appears in Stand-by.

Note

- When new i-mode mail is delivered, other i-mode mail and MessageR/F stored in the i-mode center are received at the same time.
- When receive option for i-mode mail has been set, sent i-mode mail is stored in the i-mode center. You can check the subject of i-mode mail stored in the center before selecting and receiving the mail. P149
- If received mail was sent from a terminal that is capable of setting To, Cc, or Bcc, you can check how the mail was addressed to you on the FOMA terminal. P156
- Melodies, moving pictures, and still images can be received as attachments to i-mode mail. Incompatible files may be automatically deleted at the i-mode center. If an attached file is deleted, "添付ファイル削除 (Attached file deleted)" is added below the subject.

- Files attached to a mail cannot be saved in the FOMA terminal when the FOMA terminal does not support the file type. Those files can be saved to a microSD card or forwarded. P151
- Up to 100KB of i-mode mail including attachments can be automatically downloaded. Attachments larger than 100KB can be manually downloaded from the i-mode center. P152
- You can set whether to receive attached melodies or images under "Receive attach file". P168
- If the size of a received mail exceeds the number of characters (data capacity) set under "iMenu" "English" "Options" "Mail Settings" "Other Settings" "Limit Mail Size", you can select and download the attached file or the data whose name appears in the message text. P152
- If the total number or total size of the received mail (i-mode mail and SMS) stored in the FOMA terminal exceeds the limit, the oldest read message will be deleted first. Protect the received messages you want to keep.
- Incoming mail is saved at the i-mode center when:
 - Power is 0
 - Self mode is activated
 - A videophone call in progress
 - The terminal is out of service area
 - Omakase Lock
 - "Receive option set" is set to "ON"
 - Inbox is full with protected or unread mail
- When mail is kept at the i-mode center,  or  appears. When the terminal power is 0 or the terminal is out of service area, these icons may not be displayed even there is i-mode mail at the i-mode center.
- If multiple i-mode mail messages or MessageR/F are received concurrently, the ring tone set to the last received i-mode mail or MessageR/F sounds.
- By default,  "Welcome Mail" and  "Welcome" are saved in Inbox. No communication charge applied for this mail.
- You cannot reply to  "Welcome Mail" and  "Welcome" mail.

Displaying New i-mode Mail

- 1 Receive results screen (P147) "Mail" Select a folder
- 2 Select mail to be displayed
 - Displaying/playing/saving/deleting an attached file P153



Received mail detail screen

Note

- Selecting mail icon in Stand-by also display mail.
- Images attached to i-mode mail may not be properly displayed.
- Attachments incompatible with the FOMA terminal cannot be saved to "Data Box", however, they can be forwarded or saved to a microSD card (when saving in a microSD card, the file name will be changed to "OTHER001" to "OTHER999").

Receive option

Receiving i-mode Mail Selectively

You can check the subject of i-mode mail stored in the i-mode center, and select mail to receive or delete at the i-mode center before downloading new messages. To use the Receive option, set "Receive option set" to "ON" in advance.

Setting Receive Option

After setting "Receive option set" to "ON", perform the following to receive selected i-mode mail.

- Mail menu screen (P137) "Receive option"
 [Select] "ON"

After this option is set, i-mode mail will not be received automatically.

Note

- To set "Receive option" to "OFF", perform from "Receive option set" (P168).

When You Receive Mail

Notification of received mail screen appears

Press [OK] or [Mail] / [Close] to close the notification screen.



Notification of received mail screen

Note




- [OK] or [Mail] indicating the incoming i-mode mail will not be displayed, and the mail ring tone will not sound.
- The i-Channel ticker stops while the Notification of received mail screen is displayed.

Setting Receive Option for Mail

After "Receive option set" is set to "ON", perform the following steps to select and receive i-mode mail.

- 1 Mail menu screen (P137) "Receive option"
For subsequent steps, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

■ Icons displayed on the Receive option screen indicating attachments

Icon	File type
	An image is attached.
	i-motion is attached.
	A melody is attached.
	Another type of file is attached.


Note

- Even if "Receive option set" is set to "ON", all messages will be received when "Check new messages" is used. If you do not want to receive mail, exclude "Mail" from the items to be checked. P168
- Receive option can also be performed from "iMenu". Select "iMenu" "メニューリスト (Menu List)" "メール選択受信 (Receive option)".
- If the total number or total size of the received mail (i-mode mail and SMS) stored in the FOMA terminal exceeds the limit, the oldest read message will be deleted first. Protect the received messages you want to keep.

Check new messages

Checking New i-mode Mail


i-mode mails that could not be received for a reason, such as because the FOMA terminal was out of service area, are stored in the i-mode center. You can receive stored i-mode mail by checking the i-mode center.

-  appears at the top of the screen when mail is kept at the i-mode center.
- You can select items to check (mail or MessageR/F) under "Check new messages" (P168).
- You cannot check new messages when the FOMA terminal is out of service area.

1 Mail menu screen (P137) "Check new messages"

When checking is completed, the Check results screen appears.

Note

- Even when i-mode mail is kept at the i-mode center,  may not appear on the screen if mail arrived while the FOMA terminal power was turned o .

Replying to i-mode Mail

You can reply to the sender of i-mode mail. Replying can be made by entering new text or quoting the text of received i-mode mail.

- 1 Received mail detail screen (P154)
 [MENU] [Menu] "Reply/Forward" "Reply"/"Reply with quote"
 • You can reply to mail also by pressing [Fw] [Reply] on the Received mail detail screen.
 • If the mail is sent to multiple receivers, you can select "Sender" to reply only to the sender or select "All" to reply the sender and all other receivers.

2 Enter the subject and the message text

- "Re:" is added to the subject.
- When replying with quotation, ">" is added at the beginning of the quoted message.
- Editing the subject and message P138

3 [Fw] [Send]

Note

- After exceeding the storage capacity of Outbox, you cannot send a reply. Delete mail saved in Outbox before replying.
- The reply to received Deco-mail with quotation has original decoration and images entered in the message text. However, images restricted to be output from the FOMA terminal will not be entered.

Forwarding i-mode Mail to Other Address

You can forward received i-mode mail to other addresses.

- 1 Received mail detail screen (P154)
 [MENU] [Menu] "Reply/Forward" "Forward"
 2 Enter the receiver
 • "Fw:" is added to the subject.
 • Editing the receiver and message text P138

3 [Fw] [Send]

Note

- When a file prohibited to be attached to mail or to be output from the FOMA terminal is attached or pasted to an i-mode mail to be forwarded, the file will be deleted.
- After exceeding the storage capacity of Outbox, you cannot forward mail. Delete mail saved in Outbox before forwarding.
- If you forward a received Deco-mail, the original decoration and images remain entered in the message text. However, images restricted to be output from the FOMA terminal will not be entered.

Adding Mail Addresses/Phone Numbers to Phonebook

You can save mail addresses and phone numbers in received mail to the Phonebook.

Saving an Address/Phone Number from the Message Text

- Received mail detail screen (P 154) Move the cursor to the address/number to save
[MENU] [Menu] "Save" "No./addr. in body"
Go to Step 2 in "Adding Phonebook Entries from Redial/Received Calls etc." (P89).

Saving a Receiver, Sender Address, or Phone Number

- Received mail detail screen (P 154)
[MENU] [Menu] "Save" "Address"
If there are multiple recipients/senders, further select the addresses/phone numbers to save.
Go to Step 2 in "Adding Phonebook Entries from Redial/Received Calls etc." (P89).

Playing/Saving an Attached File from i-mode Mail

You can play or save an image, melody, moving picture, or i-motion attached or pasted to i-mode mail.

Retrieving Selected Attached File

When the size of a received message including attachments larger than 100KB, you will need to download the attachments from the i-mode center.


- All the attached files selected are downloaded regardless of the setting of "Receive attach file" option in "Communication" of "Mail setting".
 - Expired files cannot be downloaded.
- Received mail detail screen (P 154) Select a file name

Note

- When available space for Inbox is less than the file size, the attachment cannot be retrieved.

Displaying/Playing/Saving/Deleting an Attached File

1 Received mail detail screen (P154) Move the cursor to the attached file

-  [Select]: Display/play the selected attachment.

2 [Menu] "Attach file" Perform the following operations

[Save]

Save the selected attachment.

- In addition, select the destination when a microSD card is inserted on the terminal.

[Delete]

Delete the selected attachment.

- Savable file type and saving destination

File type	Destination
Image*1	"i-mode" folder of "My picture" in "Data Box"
Image available as Deco-mail pictogram	"Decomail picto" of "My picture" of "Data Box"
Moving picture/i-motion	"i-mode" folder of "i-motion" in "Data Box"
Melody	"i-mode" folder of "Melody" in "Data Box"
Phonebook	Phonebook
Schedule	Schedule
To do	To do list

File type	Destination
Bookmark	"Bookmark" in "i-mode" or "Full browser"
Others*2	

*1 Images other than ones available as Deco-mail pictogram and Flash movie

*2 Other files, such as Flash movies, are saved only on a microSD card. However, depending on attachment, files cannot be saved.

Note

- Large i-mode mail may be rejected by the i-mode center, and an error message may be returned to the source address.
- i-mode mail that is 100KB (with attachments included) or smaller can be automatically downloaded. Attachments larger than 100KB can be manually downloaded from the i-mode center.
- You can set a size limit for i-mode mail messages.
- When the image size is larger than the screen, it is shrunk and displayed.
- Some images and moving pictures/i-motion may not be displayed or played.
- When "Melody auto play" is set to "ON", an attached melody is played automatically when you open a received i-mode mail.
- A software that supports i-motion is required to play an i-motion mail on a PC.

Saving Inline Images

1 Received mail detail screen (P154)

[Menu] [Menu] "Save" "Inline image"

2 Select an image "Yes"

- To set as Stand-by display, select "Yes".

Inbox/Outbox/Unsent message

Displaying Mail in Inbox/Outbox or Unsent Messages

- To display contents of a folder with security set, enter the Terminal security code.

Displaying Received Mail

- Up to 1,000 incoming i-mode mail and SMS messages can be saved in Inbox. However, the savable number depends on the amount of data.
- By default, "Welcome Mail" and "Welcome" are saved. No communication charge applied for this mail.
- You cannot reply to "Welcome Mail" and "Welcome".

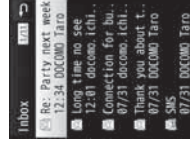
1 Mail menu screen (P137) "Inbox"

- [ShowAll]: Display all received mail in list.
- [Inbox/Outbox]: Display the Outbox list screen. P155



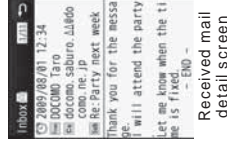
2 Select a folder

- [Reply]: Reply to the sender and multiple recipients. P151
- [Delete]: Delete the selected mail.
- [Search]: Search from the Phonebook, Schedule, Address (Sent msg. log/Rcv. msg. log/Phonebook/Direct input), or Subject.



3 Select a message

- [Previous/Next]: Display the previous or next mail.
- [Reply]: Reply to the sender and multiple recipients. P151



Displaying Sent Mail

- Up to 5.00 i-mode mail, SMS, and unsent messages can be saved in Outbox. However, the savable number depends on the amount of data.

1 Mail menu screen (P137) "Outbox"

- [Show All]: Display all sent mail in list.
- [Inbox]: Display the Inbox list screen. P154



2 Select a folder

- [Edit]: Display the Compose message screen or the Compose SMS screen. P138, P176
- [Delete]: Delete the selected mail.
- [Search]: Search from the Phonebook, Schedule, Address (Sent msg. log/Rcv. msg. log/Phonebook/Direct input), or Subject.



3 Select a message

- : Display the previous or next mail.
- [Edit]: Display the Compose message or SMS screen. P138, P176

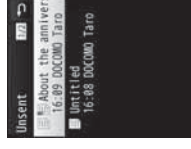


Displaying Unsent Messages

- The number of messages saved in Unsent message are included in the maximum number of savable messages in Outbox.

1 Mail menu screen (P137) "Unsent message"

- [Send]: Send the selected mail.
- [Delete]: Delete i-mode mail, or SMS.



2 Select a message

- The Compose message/SMS screen appears depending on the type of the selected mail. You can edit unsent mail.

Received/Sent/Unsent Mail Screen Components

Inbox/Outbox List Screen



- 1 Folder name
- 2 Number of unread messages/total number of messages in the folder
Appear on the Inbox list screen. For Outbox, only the total number of messages in the folder is displayed.

Icons displayed on the Inbox/Outbox screen

Icon	Description
	"Inbox"/"MessageR"/"MessageF"/"Outbox" (Default folders)
	No messages
	Security set
	No unread mail
	Standard i- ppli
	i- ppliDX

* Created automatically when mail-connected i- ppli is received.

Received Mail List Screen/Received Mail Detail Screen



- 1 Displayed folder name
- 2 Subject
"SMS" is displayed for an SMS message.
- 3 Received date and time
On the Received mail list screen, the date is displayed for messages received before today, and the time is displayed for messages received today.
- 4 Sender's phone number/mail address
If the phone number or mail address is saved in the Phonebook, the name in the Phonebook appears.
- 5 Address types and multiple recipients
If mail is sent to multiple addresses, their address types (To or Cc) are displayed. If the mail address is saved in the Phonebook, the name in the Phonebook appears.

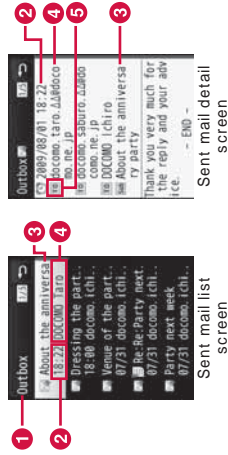
■ Icons displayed on the Received mail list screen/Received mail detail screen

Icon	Description
	Unread i-mode mail/SMS/SMS report request
	Read i-mode mail/SMS/SMS report
	Replied
	Forwarded
	The message is protected.
	Saved in the UIM.
	Mail-connected i- ppli (Standard i- ppli)
	Mail-connected i- ppli (i- ppliDX)
	Received date and time
	Di erent Time zone SMS received
	Melody is attached.
	i- ppli can be started from the message text.
	Melody (SMF)/melody (MFI)/still image/moving pictures/Phonebook entry/Schedule event/bookmark/other file is attached.
	Multiple files attached
	Damaged file (Example: For a still image)
	Deleted attachment (Example: For a still image)
	Attached file un-retrieved
	Attached file deleted without retrieving
	Attached file interrupted while retrieving
	Acquisition failed.
	Attached file with the UIM security function activated

Icon	Description
	Subject
	The message sent with the address as To, Cc, or Bcc
	Multiple recipient address types other than own address (To/Cc)
	Sender mail address to which the reply cannot be sent
	Multiple recipient addresses to which the reply cannot be sent

* Di erent icons indicated with () appear on a detail screen.

Sent Mail List Screen/Outbox Detail Screen



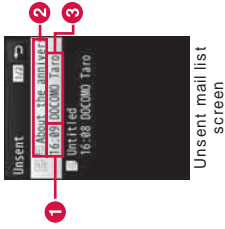
- 1 Displayed folder name
- 2 Sent date and time
On the Sent mail list screen, the date is displayed for messages sent before today, and the time is displayed for messages sent today.
- 3 Subject
"SMS" is displayed for an SMS message.
- 4 Recipient phone number/mail address
If the phone number or mail address is saved in the Phonebook, the name in the Phonebook appears.
- 5 Receiver type
Indicate the receiver type of the sent mail (To, Cc, or Bcc).

■ Icons displayed on the Sent mail list screen/Sent mail detail screen

Icon	Description
	Sent i-mode mail/SMS
	i-mode mail sent to multiple recipients
	Failed to be sent
	The message is protected.
	SMS saved in the UIM
	Mail-connected i- ppli (Standard i- ppli)
	Mail-connected i- ppli (i- ppliDX)
	Sent date and time
	Melody is attached.
	i- ppli can be started from the message text.
	Melody (SMF)/melody (MF)/still image/moving pictures/Phonebook entry/Schedule event/Bookmark/other file is attached.
	Multiple files attached
	File with UIM security function attached
	Subject
	Sent as To/Cc/Bcc
	Failed to send as To/Cc/Bcc

* Different icons indicated with () appear on a detail screen.

Unsent Mail List Screen



- 1 Saved date and time
The date is displayed for messages saved before today, and the time is displayed for messages saved today.
- 2 Subject
"SMS" is displayed for an SMS message.
- 3 Recipient phone number/mail address
If the phone number or mail address is saved in the Phonebook, the name in the Phonebook appears.

Icons displayed on the Unsent mail list screen

Icon	Description
	Unsent i-mode mail/SMS
	i-mode mail with auto send reserved
	Auto send failed

* Other than the above, same icons as for sent mail are used.

Inbox/Outbox List Screen Sub Menu

Inbox list screen (P154)/Outbox list screen (P155) [Menu] Perform the following operations

[Manage folders]

- New folder : Add a folder.
Delete folder : Delete the selected folder.
Enter the Terminal security code "Yes"
Edit folder name : Change the name of the selected folder.
Reorder folder : Select the display position of the selected folder and sort.
Folder lock : Set or release security to the selected folder.
Enter the Terminal security code

[Delete message]

- Read in folder : Delete all read messages in the Inbox folder.
Enter the Terminal security code "Yes"
All without Protected : Delete all messages in the Inbox/Outbox folders. (Except the protected messages)
Enter the Terminal security code "Yes"
All with Protected : Delete all messages in the Inbox folder. (Including the protected messages)
Enter the Terminal security code "Yes"

[Send all Ir data]

- Send all mail in Inbox/Outbox via infrared communication. P329
Enter the Terminal security code Enter the authentication password "Yes"

[Copy all microSD]

- Copy all messages in Inbox/Outbox to the microSD card.
Enter the Terminal security code "Yes"

[Memory status]

- Display number of messages in Inbox/Outbox and Unsent message folders.

[Clear inbox]

- Delete the user-defined folders and mail saved in "Inbox" and "user-defined" folder. (Except the protected messages and folders containing the protected messages)
Enter the Terminal security code "Yes"
* Not displayed for sent mail list screen.

Note

- <Delete folder/Edit folder name/Reorder folder>
• This option is not available for the default "Inbox", "Outbox", "MessageR", and "MessageF" folders. However, "Auto sort" is available for the "MessageR" and "MessageF" folders.
<Delete message>
• A folder containing protected mail cannot be deleted.
• Protected mail and SMS saved in the UIM are not deleted.
• When unread mail exists, or when "Delete folder" is selected for a folder containing mail, a confirmation for deletion appears. Select "Yes" to delete.
<Send all Ir data>
• If mail with a Flash movie (files with extension of swf including Motion Oekaki™ files) larger than 100KB attached is sent, the attached file is deleted.

<Copy all microSD>

- If mail with a Flash movie (files with extension of swf including Motion Oekaki™ files) larger than 1 00KB attached is copied, the attached file is deleted.

Received Mail List Screen Sub Menu

1 Received mail list screen (P154) Move the cursor to mail Perform the following operations

[Reply/Forward]

- Reply : Reply to the selected mail. P151
Reply with quote : Reply to the selected mail by quoting the received message text. P151
Forward : Forward the received mail to another receiver.

[Delete]

- Delete one : Delete the selected mail.
Delete selected : Select and delete mail.
Mark mail to delete [Done] "Yes"
• Press [Menu] to select "Select all" or "Deselect all".
Delete all read : Delete all read mail in the folder.
Delete all : Enter the Terminal security code "Yes"
Delete all mail in the folder.
Enter the Terminal security code "Yes"

[Move]

- Move one : Move the selected mail to another folder.
Move selected : Select and move mail to another folder.
Mark mail to move [Done] Select a destination folder
• Press [Menu] to select "Select all" or "Deselect all".
Move all : Move all mail in the folder to another folder.

[Protect]

- Protect :
Protect one : Protect the selected mail.
Protect selected : Select and protect mail.
Mark mail to protect [Done]
• Press [Menu] to select "Select all" or "Deselect all".
Protect all : Protect all mail in a folder.
Clear :
Clear one : Unprotect the selected mail.
Clear selected : Select and unprotect mail. [Done]
Mark mail to unprotect [Done]
• Press [Menu] to select "Select all" or "Deselect all".
Clear all : Unprotect all mail in a folder.

[Store in center]

Save mail at the Data Center.

Save one : Save the selected mail.
Enter the Terminal security code "Yes"

Save selected : Select and save mail.
Mark mail to save [Done]
• If the number of saved mail is less than 10, press [SelAll/CirAll] to select/clear all.
Enter the Terminal security code "Yes"

[Sort]

Set conditions and sort mail.

[Filter]

Display messages that meet certain conditions.

Unread : Display only unread mail.
Read : Display only read mail.
Protected : Display only protected mail.
With attach file : Display only mail with a file attached.
Mail : Display only i-mode mail.
SMS : Display only SMS and SMS reports.
All : Display all mail in the folder.

[Export]

Ir exchange : Send the selected mail or all mail in the selected folder via infrared communication. P328
Copy to microSD : Copy the selected mail or all mail in the selected folder to the microSD card. Copying all mail in the folder requires you to enter the Terminal security code.
UIM : Copy or move the selected SMS to the FOMA terminal or the UIM.

[Search]

With phonebook : Search mail by the Phonebook group search.
With scheduler : Select date from the Schedule to search received mail on the selected date.
Address :
Sent msg. log : Search mail by recipients' address in Sent mails.
Rcv. msg. log : Search mail by sender address in Received mails.
Phonebook : Search mail by searching all Phonebook entries.
Direct input : Enter address to search mail.
Subject : Enter subject to search mail.

Note

- <Delete>
 - If there are unread messages, a confirmation for deletion appears. Select "Yes" to delete.
 - Protected mail cannot be deleted.
- <Protect>
 - Up to 1,000 mail can be protected.
- <Store in center>
 - SMS with Korean text cannot be saved at the Data Center.

<Export>

- If mail with a Flash movie (files with extension of swf including Motion Oekaki™ files) larger than 100KB attached is sent via infrared communication ("Ir exchange") or copied to microSD ("Copy to microSD"), the attached file is deleted.

Received Mail Detail Screen Sub Menu

1 Received mail detail screen (P154)

[Menu] [Menu] Perform the following operations

[Reply/Forward]

Reply or forward the displayed mail to another receiver. P151

[Delete]

Delete the displayed mail.

[Move]

Move the displayed mail to another folder.

[Protect]

Protect or unprotect the displayed mail.

[Save]

Address : Save the mail address of the sender or multiple recipients to the Phonebook. P152
No./addr. in body : Save the phone numbers or mail addresses in the displayed mail to the Phonebook. P152
Inline image : Save images contained in the displayed mail. P154
Template : Save Deco-mail as a template.
Edit the title "Yes"

[Copy]

Copy contents of the displayed mail.

Body : Select and copy contents of message text. P385
Subject : Copy the subject.
Address : Copy address. If there are multiple addresses, select an address from the Mail address list screen.

[Attach file]

Save or delete files attached to the displayed i-mode mail. P153

[Export]

Ir exchange : Send the displayed mail via infrared communication.

Copy to microSD : Copy the displayed mail to the microSD card.

UIM : Copy or move the displayed SMS to the FOMA terminal or the UIM.

[Store in center]

Save the displayed mail at the Data Center.
Enter the Terminal security code "Yes"

[Font size]

Set a font size for the message text on the Mail display screen.

Note

<Delete>

- Protected mail cannot be deleted.

<Protect>

- Up to 1,000 mail can be protected.

<Export>

- If mail with a Flash movie (files with extension of swf including Motion Oekaki™ files) larger than 1,00KB attached is sent via infrared communication ("lr exchange") or copied to microSD ("Copy to microSD"), the attached file is deleted.

<Store in center>

- SMS with Korean text cannot be saved at the Data Center.

Sent Mail List Screen Sub Menu

1 Sent mail list screen (P155) Move the cursor to mail Perform the following operations

[Edit]

Edit and send sent mail. P138, P176

[Delete]

Delete one : Delete the selected mail.

Delete selected : Select and delete mail.

- Press [Menu] to select "Select all" or "Deselect all".

Delete all : Delete all mail in the folder.

Enter the Terminal security code "Yes"

[Move]

Move one : Move the selected mail to another folder.

Move selected : Select and move mail to another folder.

Mark mail to move Select a destination folder

- Press [Menu] to select "Select all" or "Deselect all".

Move all : Move all mail in the folder to another folder.

[Protect]

Protect :

Protect one : Protect the selected mail.

Protect selected : Select and protect mail.

Mark mail to protect

- Press [Menu] to select "Select all" or "Deselect all".

Protect all : Protect all mail in a folder.

Clear :

Cancel one : Unprotect the selected mail.

Cancel selected : Select and unprotect mail.

- The operations are the same as "Protect selected".

Cancel all : Unprotect all mail in the folder.

[Store in center]

Save mail at the Data Center.

Save one : Save a selected mail.

Enter the Terminal security code "Yes"

Save selected : Select and save mail.

Mark mail to save

- If the number of saved mail is less than 10, press to select/clear all.

Enter the Terminal security code "Yes"

[Sort]

Set conditions and sort mail.

[Filter]	<p>Display mail that meet certain conditions.</p> <p>Protected : Display only protected mail.</p> <p>With attach file : Display only mail with a file attached.</p> <p>Mail : Display only i-mode mail.</p> <p>SMS : Display only SMS.</p> <p>All : Display all mail in the folder.</p>
[Export]	<p>Ir exchange : Send the selected mail or all mail in the selected folder via infrared communication. P.328</p> <p>Copy to microSD : Copy the selected mail or all mail in the selected folder to the microSD card. Copying all mail in the folder requires you to enter the Terminal security code.</p> <p>UIM : Copy or move the selected SMS to the FOMA terminal or the UIM.</p>
[Search]	<p>With phonebook : Search mail by the Phonebook group search.</p> <p>With scheduler : Select date from the Schedule to search mail received on the selected date.</p> <p>Address :</p> <p>Sent msg. log : Search mail by recipients' address in Sent mails.</p> <p>Rcv. msg. log : Search mail by sender address in Received mails.</p> <p>Phonebook : Search mail by searching all Phonebook entries.</p> <p>Direct input : Enter address to search mail.</p> <p>Subject : Enter subject to search mail.</p>

Note	<p><Delete></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Protected mail cannot be deleted. <p><Protect></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Up to 500 mail can be protected. <p><Store in center></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> SMS with Korean text cannot be saved at the Data Center. <p><Export></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> If mail with a Flash movie (files with extension of swf including Motion Oekaki™ files) larger than 1 00KB attached is sent via infrared communication ("Ir exchange") or copied to microSD ("Copy to microSD"), the attached file is deleted.
-------------	--

Sent Mail Detail Screen Sub Menu	
Sent mail detail screen (P155)	[Menu]
Perform the following operations	
[Edit]	Edit and send sent mail. P138, P176
[Delete]	Delete the displayed mail.
[Move]	Move the displayed mail to another folder.
[Protect]	Protect or unprotect the displayed mail.

[Save]

Address : Save the mail address to the Phonebook. P152
No./addr. in body : Save the phone numbers or e-mail addresses in the displayed mail to the Phonebook. P152
Inline image : Save images contained in the displayed mail. P154
Template : Save Deco-mail as a template.
Edit the title "Yes"

[Copy]

Copy contents of the displayed mail.
Body : Select and copy contents of message text. P385
Subject : Copy the subject.
Address : Copy the address. If there are multiple recipients, select addresses to copy.

[Attach file]

Save or delete files attached to the displayed i-mode mail. P153

[Export]

Ir exchange : Send the displayed mail via infrared communication.
Copy to microSD : Copy the displayed mail to the microSD card.
UIM : Copy or move the displayed SMS to the FOMA terminal or the UIM.

[Store in center]

Save the displayed mail at the Data Center.
Enter the Terminal security code "Yes"

[Font size]

Set a font size for the message text on the Mail display screen.

Note

- <Delete>
 - Protected mail cannot be deleted.
 - <Protect>
 - Up to 500 mail can be protected.
- <Export>
 - If mail with a Flash movie (files with extension of swf including Motion Oekaki™ files) larger than 100KB attached is sent via infrared communication ("Ir exchange") or copied to microSD ("Copy to microSD"), the attached file is deleted.
 - <Store in center>
 - SMS with Korean text cannot be saved at the Data Center.

Unsent Mail List Screen Sub Menu

Unsent mail list screen (P155) Move the cursor to mail **Perform the following operations**

[Delete]

Delete one : Delete the selected mail.
Delete selected : Select and delete mail.
Mark mail to delete "Yes"
• Press to select "Select all" or "Deselect all".
Delete all : Delete all unsent mail.
Enter the Terminal security code "Yes"

[Store in center]

Save mail at the Data Center.

- Save one : Save the selected mail.
Enter the Terminal security code "Yes"
- Save selected : Select and save mail.
Mark mail to save [Done]
- If the number of saved mail is less than 10, press [SeiA]/[CrAl] to select/clear all.
Enter the Terminal security code "Yes"

[Sort]

Set conditions and sort mail.

[Filter]

Display mail that meet certain conditions.

Mail : Display only i-mode mail.

SMS : Display only SMS.

All : Display all unsent messages.

[Ir exchange]

Send the selected mail or all unsent mail via infrared communication. P328

[Copy microSD]

Copy the selected mail or all unsent mail to the microSD card.
Copying all unsent mail requires you to enter the Terminal security code.

[Cancel auto send]

Cancel the auto send setting.

[Auto send fail reason]

Display the reason for auto send failure.

Note

<Store in center>

- SMS with Korean text cannot be saved at the Data Center.
- <Ir exchange>
- If mail with a Flash movie (files with extension of .swf including Motion Oekaki™ files) larger than 1 00KB attached is sent, the attached file is deleted.
- <Copy microSD>
- If mail with a Flash movie (files with extension of .swf including Motion Oekaki™ files) larger than 1 00KB attached is copied, the attached file is deleted.

Received mails/Sent mails/Recent mails






Using Mail History

Up to 30 entries will be saved in each the Received mail logs and Sent mail log. Also, up to 60 entries of sent/received mail will be saved in "Recent". These logs can be used to compose mail and save addresses to the Phonebook.

- If the maximum number of recordable entries has been exceeded, the oldest entry will be deleted first.

Example: To display the Received mails








1 Stand-by display (for 1+ seconds)

- To display the Sent mails
Stand-by display  press  (for 1+ seconds).
- To display the Recent mails
Press  on the Received mail list screen/Sent mail list screen.
- [Mail]: Create mail to the receiver or sender of the selected log entry.
- [V. phone]: Make a videophone call to the phone number of the selected log entry.
- [Call]: Make a voice call to the phone number of the selected log entry.



Ex.: Received mail list screen






2 Select an entry in the log

- [Call]: Make a call to the selected number in the log.
- [Mail]: Create mail to the receiver or sender of the selected entry.
- [V. phone]: Make a videophone call to the phone number of the selected log entry.
- [Add]: Add the selected mail address in the log to the Phonebook. Go to Step 2 in Adding Phonebook Entries from Dialed/Received Calls etc." (P89).
Only unsaved mail addresses can be saved.
-  The name saved in the Phonebook
-  Other party's mail address
-  Receive/sent date & time



Ex.: Received mail detail screen

Icons displayed on the Received mails/Sent mails/Recent mails

Icon	Description
	Received mail
	Sent mail
	Received SMS
	Sent SMS
	Mail and SMS that were received/sent while roaming*

* The received/sent date and time is shown in the local time.

Received Mails/Sent Mails/Recent Mails Sub Menu

1 Use  to move the cursor to a log entry to use [Menu] Perform the following operations

[Call function]

- Voice call : Make a voice call to the phone number of the selected log entry.
- Videophone call : Make a videophone call to the phone number of the selected log entry.
- Customize call : Edit the phone number of the selected log entry and dial.

[Mail]*1

- Compose mail : Create mail to the receiver or sender of the selected log entry.
Go to Step 3 in "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" (P138).
- Compose SMS : Create SMS to the receiver or sender of the selected log entry. Go to Step 3 in "Composing and Sending SMS" (P176).

[Add to phonebook]

- Save the mail address of the selected log entry to the Phonebook. Go to Step 2 in "Adding Phonebook Entries from Redial/Received Calls etc." (P89).
- Only unsaved mail addresses can be saved.

[Change list]²

- Recent calls : Display recent call log entries.
- Recent mails : Display recent mail log entries.
- Received calls : Display incoming call log entries.
- Received mails : Display received mail log entries.
- Redial : Display phone redial log entries.
- Sent mails : Display sent mail log entries.
- The item for the currently displayed log is not displayed.

[Delete]³

Delete the selected log entry.

[Delete]²

- Delete one Selected : Delete the selected log entry.
- : Select and delete log entries.
 - Mark mail to delete [F3][Delete]
 - Press [Menu][Sel/All/Cir/All] to select/clear all.
- Delete all : Delete all log entries.

*1 On the detail screen of Received mails/Sent mails/Recent mails, "Compose mail" is displayed instead.

*2 Not displayed on the detail screen of Received mails/Sent mails/Recent mails.

*3 Displayed only on the detail screen of Received mails/Sent mails/Recent mails.

Mail setting

Setting Mail Functions of the FOMA Terminal

Communication

Configuring Communication Settings

- 1 Mail menu screen (P137) "Mail setting" "Communication" Perform the following operations

[Receive option set]

To enable/disable the Receive option (P149), set whether to receive i-mode mail automatically.

ON : Do not receive mail automatically.

OFF : Receive mail automatically.

[Receive attach file]

Specify attached files to be retrieved when i-mode mail is received.

Mark items to download [F3][Done]

[Check new messages]

Specify request items when using "Check new messages".

Mark items to check [F3][Done]

Note

<Receive option set>

- When this option is set to "ON", i-mode mail cannot be received automatically. Incoming i-mode mail is kept at the i-mode center, and the Notification of received mail screen (P149) appears.

<Receive attach file>

- If the attached file set not to be received arrives, the file name is displayed in the message text and you can receive by selecting it. P152

Display

Configuring Display Settings

- 1 Mail menu screen (P137) "Mail setting" "Display" Perform the following operations

[Font size]

Set a font size for text on the Mail detail screen.

- Pressing , , or  on the Received mail detail screen also changes the font size.

[Folder lock]

Set security for Inbox/Outbox and Unsent message in Mail menu. To display security-activated mail, the Terminal security code must be entered.

- Enter the Terminal security code Mark items to set [Done]

[Melody auto play]

Set whether to automatically play attached or pasted melodies on the Mail display screen.

[Receiving display]

Set whether to notify with a ring tone or Receive results screen when i-mode mail or Messenger/F is received while operating the FOMA terminal (displaying other than Stand-by display).

Alarm mode : Notify with a ring tone or the Receive results screen.

- The Receive results screen is not displayed depending on the function in use such as while calling or activating Camera.

Operation mode : Prioritize the FOMA terminal operation and does not notify with a ring tone or the Receive results screen, etc.

- When receiving i-mode message or Messenger/F while the display is turned on, the display does not light up.

Mail group




Registering Mail Group

Register mail addresses to a mail group so that you can easily specify a certain group of multiple recipients. Up to 20 mail groups can be created. Up to 5 recipients can be registered to a mail group.


- 1 Mail menu screen (P137) "Mail setting" "Mail group"



Mail group list screen

- 2 [Add] Enter a mail group name
- 3 Select a registered mail group Move the cursor to a receiver field [Add] Select a registration method [Done]
Sent msg. log : Select an address from Sent mails.
Rcv. msg. log : Select an address from Received mails.
Phonebook : Select an address from the Phonebook.
Direct input : Enter an address directly.

Mail Group List Screen Sub Menu

- 1 Mail group list screen (P169)  [Menu] Perform the following operations

[Delete group]

Delete the selected mail group.

[Add group]

Create a new mail group.

[Rename group]

Edit the selected mail group name.

[Write Mail]

Create i-mode mail addressed to the selected mail group. P138

Auto sort

Sorting Mail Automatically to Folders

Set conditions to automatically save mail in specified folders.

Setting Auto Sort Rule

Set conditions to sort mail to folders automatically.

- Create folders in "Inbox" or "Outbox" for sorting beforehand.
- Up to 30 sorting conditions can be saved.

- 1 Mail menu screen (P137) "Mail setting" "Auto sort"



- 2 "Sort inbox"/"Sort outbox" field Select a Sort rule

- 3 Select the Sorting criteria field Perform the following operations

[Address]

Set mail address or phone numbers as a condition to sort.

"Direct input" Enter a mail address/phone number

- Select an address from Recent msg log, Recent dial log, or Phonebook. P139

[Phonebook Group]

Set a phonebook group as a condition to sort.

[Subject]

Set mail subject as a condition to sort.

- 4 Select the Folder to sort into field  [Done] Select a folder to sort into

Note

- To edit the sorting condition, select a sorting condition to edit and set a rule again.
- The same sorting conditions as ones set to another folder cannot be set.
- When setting a mail address as a sorting condition, the domain name (the string after @) should be included. For example, when setting from the Sent message log, or the Received message log, if the mail is exchanged based on their phone numbers, the address does not include the domain name. In this case, the mail address is not recognized as a sorting condition.
- When setting a sorting condition to SMS, enter a phone number for "Address". You cannot set "Phonebook Group"/"Subject" as a sorting condition.

Re-sorting Mail

Re-sort saved mail according to a sorting condition.

- 1 Auto sort screen (P170) "Re-sort"
"Inbox"/"Outbox"
- 2 Mark folders to re-sort [Done] "Yes"
• Press [SelAll] to select all.

Deleting Auto Sort Rule

- 1 Auto sort screen (P170) "Sort inbox"/"Sort outbox"
Move the cursor to the Sort rule field [Menu] Perform the following operations

[Delete]

- Delete one : Delete the selected sorting rule.
Delete selected : Select and delete the sorting rules.
• Press [Done]
Delete all : Delete all sorting rules.
• Press [SelAll] to select all.

Re-ordering Auto Sort Rule

The execution priority of the auto sort rule follows the display sequence of the rules on the screen. Re-ordering the auto sort rules changes the execution priority.

- 1 Auto sort screen (P170) "Sort inbox"/"Sort outbox"
- 2 Move the cursor to the Sort rule field to re-order [Reorder] Use to move a sort rule [Select]

Edit

Editing Header/Signature/Quotation

- 1 Mail menu screen (P 137) "Mail setting"
"Edit" Perform the following operations

[Edit header]

Set a header to be inserted to i-mode mail text.

[Edit] Enter a header

[Edit signature]

Set a signature to be inserted to i-mode mail text.

[Edit] Enter a signature

[Edit quotation]

Set a symbol indicating that a text is quoted from received mail when replying with quoting.

[Select] Enter a quotation mark [Done]

[Auto attach]

Set whether to automatically attach a header or signature when composing i-mode mail.

Mark items to be attached [Done]

Others

Configuring Other Settings

- 1 Mail menu screen (P 137) "Mail setting"
"Others" Perform the following operations

[Check settings]

Check the contents set in "Mail setting".

[Reset settings]

Reset the contents set in "Mail setting" to the default.

Enter the Terminal security code "Yes"

Receive Message

When You Receive Message

When the FOMA terminal is in service area, Messenger/F is sent automatically from the i-mode center. When Messenger/F arrives, the display, ring tone, or vibration notifies you of new messages.

- Up to 100 Messenger/F can be saved respectively. However, the number of savable messages varies depending on the message size.

Viewing New Message

When Messenger/F arrives, the latest message appears automatically.

- "Auto-display setting" can be configured to allow the detail screen to automatically open after receiving a Messenger/F. P173

Automatically receive Messenger/F when it arrives

- After receiving Messenger/F, the Receive results screen is displayed.
- The previous screen returns if no operation is performed for approximately 30 seconds.

Auto-display setting

Displaying Message Automatically

Set automatic display method of MessageR/F.

- 1 i-mode menu screen (P182) "i-mode setting"
"Image&E ect set." "Auto-display setting"
Perform the following operations

MessageR preferred : Display MessageR automatically
when MessageR and MessageF arrive
simultaneously.
MessageR only : Display only MessageR automatically.
MessageF preferred : Display MessageF automatically
when MessageR and MessageF arrive
simultaneously.
MessageF only : Display only MessageF automatically.
Auto-display OFF : Do not display MessageR/F
automatically.

Melody auto play




Playing a Melody Automatically when Message is Displayed

Set whether to automatically play a melody when
MessageR/F is displayed.

- 1 i-mode menu screen (P182) "i-mode setting"
"Image&E ect set." "Melody auto play"
Switch between ON and OFF each time "Melody auto play" is
selected.

Check new messages

Checking New Message

MessageR/F that was not received because the FOMA
terminal was out of service area is stored at the i-mode
center, and , , or  appears at the top on the screen.
Checking new messages downloads the stored MessageR/F.
• You cannot check new messages when the FOMA terminal is out of
service area.

- Set items to check (mail and MessageR/F) in "Check new
messages" (P168).

- 1 i-mode menu screen (P182) "Check new
messages"

When checking is completed, the Check results screen appears.

- 2 "MessageR"/"MessageF"

Note

- Incoming MessageR/F is stored at the i-mode center when:
 - Power is OFF
 - A videophone call in progress
 - Self mode is activated
 - The FOMA terminal is out of service area
 - Omakase Lock is activated
 - MessageR/F on the FOMA terminal is full

Displaying New Message

When MessageR/F arrives from the i-mode center,  or  appears at the top of the screen.

1 i-mode menu screen (P182) "MessageR/F" "MessageR"/"MessageF"

-  [Delete]: Delete the selected MessageR/F

1 Subject

2 Received date and time

On the MessageR/F list screen, the messages received before today are displayed with date and ones received today are displayed with time.



1

2

2 Select MessageR/F

1 Received date and time



2 Subject



1

2

■ Icons displayed on the MessageR/F list/detail screen

Icon	Description
	Unread MessageR/F
	Read MessageR/F

* Icons other than above are the same as for Received mail. P157


MessageR/F List Screen Sub Menu


1 MessageR/F list screen (P174) Move the cursor to a message [Menu] Perform the following operations

[Delete]

Delete one : Delete the selected MessageR/F.

Delete selected : Select and delete MessageR/F.

Mark MessageR/F to delete  [Done] "Yes"

• Press  [Menu] to select "Select all" or "Deselect all".

Delete all read : Delete all read MessageR/F.

Delete all : Enter the Terminal security code "Yes"

Delete all : Delete all MessageR/F.

Delete all : Enter the Terminal security code "Yes"

MessageR/F Detail Screen Sub Menu

[Protect] MessageR/F detail screen (P174) [Menu]

Perform the following operations

[Delete]

Delete the displayed MessageR/F.

[Protect]

Protect or unprotect the displayed MessageR/F.

[Save]

No./addr. in body : Save the mail address or phone numbers in the currently displayed MessageR/F to the Phonebook. P152

Inline image : Save or check information about an image inserted in the currently displayed MessageR/F.

Background image : Save the background image used in the currently displayed MessageR/F.

[Attach file]

Save : Save an attached file of the currently displayed MessageR/F.

Delete : Delete an attached file of the currently displayed MessageR/F.

Note

- <Delete>
- Protected message cannot be deleted.
- <Protect>
- Up to 100 MessageR/F can be protected respectively.

[Protect]

Protect :

Protect one : Protect the selected MessageR/F.

Protect selected : Select and protect MessageR/F.

- Mark MessageR/F to protect [Done]
- Press [Menu] to select "Select all" or "Deselect all".

Protect all : Protect all MessageR/F.

Clear :

Clear one : Unprotect the selected MessageR/F.

Clear selected : Select and unprotect MessageR/F.

- The operation is the same as "Protect selected".

Clear all : Unprotect all MessageR/F.

[Sort]

Set conditions and sort MessageR/F.

[Filter]

Display only the MessageR/F that meet sorting conditions.

Unread : Display only the unread MessageR/F.

Read : Display only the read MessageR/F.

Protected : Display only the protected MessageR/F.

All : Display all MessageR/F.

Note

- <Delete>
- If there are unread MessageR/F, a confirmation for deletion appears. Select "Yes" to delete.
- Protected mail cannot be deleted.
- <Protect>
- Up to 100 MessageR/F can be protected respectively.

Compose/Send SMS

Composing and Sending SMS

- You can send and receive SMS to/from terminals that use international carriers other than DOCOMO. Visit the DOCOMO International Services website for available countries and international carriers.
- You can send and receive SMS in Korean to/from terminals that support Korean.
- Use L-02B to send and receive international SMS in Korean to/from Korean-support terminals of Korea and other international carriers. Visit the DOCOMO International Services website for international carriers that support international SMS. The number of characters that can be sent depends on the situation of each recipient carrier. For details, contact recipient carriers.
- Switching input modes in SMS message to Korean P178

1 Mail menu screen (P137) "SMS" "Compose SMS"

- [Ph. book]: Select a recipient from the Phonebook.



Compose SMS screen

2 Select [To] field "Direct input" Enter the phone number

- Up to 21 digits (including "+") can be entered.
- On the Phone number entry screen, press [Menu][Menu] to select "Int. call", "Select prefix", or "Cancel". To cancel the entry, press [Cancel].
- The address can be selected from Sent message log or Received message log, or Phonebook. P139

3 Select [To] field Enter the message

- The number of characters that can be entered depends on the settings in "SMS input character". P178

4 [Send]

Note

- For a destination of an international carrier other than DOCOMO, enter in the order of "+" (press [+] for 1+ seconds), "Country Code", and "other party's mobile phone number". For the mobile phone number starting with "0", enter the phone number excluding "0". Numbers may be entered in the order of "010", "Country Code", and the "other party's mobile phone number" (to reply to overseas SMS received, enter "010").
- Characters may not be sent correctly on receiver's side depending on the signal strength, etc.
- When you send an SMS to a receiver who uses an international carrier and some of the characters you send are not supported by the carrier, those characters may not be displayed correctly.
- Even if you set "Caller ID notification" to "Not notify", your caller ID is sent to the other party.
- You cannot reply to SMS sent with unknown ID or from a public phone.
- When sending SMS, "Pictographs" and "Pictograph idioms" other than ♥ and ☺ are displayed as half-pitch space in receiver's screen.
- SMS texts in Korean sent to a terminal which does not support Korean will not be displayed correctly on the terminal.

Compose SMS Screen Sub Menu

1 Compose SMS screen (P176) [Menu] [Menu] Perform the following operations

- [Send] Send SMS.

[Save]
Save SMS being created or edited as an unsent message.

[Report request]
Set whether to request an SMS report when SMS is delivered. P.178

[Validity period]
Set the period of time that a sent SMS can be kept undelivered at the SMS center. P.178

Receive SMS



When You Receive SMS Messages

When the FOMA terminal is in service area, SMS is automatically received.

- Up to 1,000 received SMS messages including i-mode mail can be saved. However, the savable number depends on the amount of the data.

1 When SMS is received appears at the top of the screen

When the reception is completed, the Receive results screen appears.

- The previous screen returns if no operation is performed for approximately 30 seconds.
- Selecting "SMS" opens the Inbox list screen.
- Until the detail screen of received SMS opens,  appears at the top of the screen and  (the number indicates the number of messages) appears in Stand-by.



Receive results screen

Note

- When Stand-by i-ppii is set, the Receive results screen for SMS does not appear, and the ring tone and vibrator for SMS do not work.

Viewing New SMS

- 1 Receive results screen (P.177) "SMS"
Select a folder
- 2 Select an SMS message to display



Received mail detail screen

Check new SMS

Checking New SMS Messages

SMS that could not be received for a reason such as because the FOMA terminal was out of service area, are stored at the SMS center. You can receive stored SMS by checking the SMS center.

- You cannot check new messages when the FOMA terminal is out of service area.

- 1 Mail menu screen (P.137) "SMS"
"Check new SMS"

When the reception is completed, the Check results screen appears.

SMS Settings

Setting SMS

SMS Report Request

Set whether to request an SMS report after the SMS is delivered. If set to "ON", an SMS report indicating that the SMS has been delivered to the receiver will be sent to you.

- 1 Mail menu screen (P137) "Mail setting" "SMS" "SMS report request" "ON"/"OFF"

Note

- An SMS report includes the sent time and the phone number of the receiver.

SMS Validity Period

Set the period of time that a sent SMS will be kept undelivered at the SMS center because the recipient terminal is out of service area, etc.

- If "0 day" is selected, sending the SMS message is retried after a while, then the message is deleted from the SMS center.

- 1 Mail menu screen (P137) "Mail setting" "SMS" "SMS validity period" Select the period

SMS Input Character

Set the SMS input mode.

- 1 Mail menu screen (P137) "Mail setting" "SMS" "SMS input character" Select an item to set

JP(70Chara) : Enter Japanese text. Up to 70 characters can be entered.


JP/KR(70Chara) : Enter Japanese and Korean text. Up to 70 characters can be entered.

English(160Chara) : Enter English text. Up to 160 characters can be entered.

SMS Center

* You usually do not need to change this setting.

Set the SMS center settings.

- 1  "Settings" "International roaming" "Network" "SMS center" Perform the following operations

[SMS Center]

DOCOMO : Set DOCOMO as the SMS center.

Others : Set a carrier other than DOCOMO as the SMS center.

[Address]

When "Others" is selected for "SMS Center", enter connection address.

[Type of number]

Set this option when "Others" is selected for "SMS Center".

International : If the SMS center phone number is for international calls, select this option.

Unknown : If you do not know whether the SMS center phone number is for international calls, select this option.

2  [Done]





i-mode

i-mode makes use of the display of the FOMA terminal supporting i-mode (i-mode terminal) to use online services such as sites access, Internet access and i-mode mail.

- i-mode is a fee-based service requiring a separate subscription.
- For details about i-mode, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

Before using i-mode

- Contents of sites and Internet web sites (web pages) are generally protected by copyright law. Data, such as text or images you download to the i-mode terminal from sites or web pages, can be used only for personal entertainment, and the data cannot be used, in whole or in part, as it is or after modification, for sale or redistribution, without the consent of the copyright holders.
- If you insert another UIM or turn the FOMA terminal power on without the UIM, depending on the model of the FOMA terminal, still images, moving pictures, melodies downloaded from sites, mail attachments (still images, moving pictures or melodies), screen memos, and MessageR/F cannot be viewed or played.
- When a file with UIM restrictions is set as the Stand-by display or ring tone, the setting will revert to its default if a different UIM is inserted or the terminal power is turned on without a UIM.

i-mode Menu

Displaying the i-mode Menu

You can use i-mode functions from the i-mode menu.

1 Stand-by display



i-mode menu screen

2 Perform the following operations

[iMenu]

Connect to the i-mode center. P 183

[Bookmark]

Display the Bookmark folder list screen. P 190

[Screen memo]

Display the Screen memo list screen. P 193

[Last URL]

Open the last viewed i-mode site or web page. P 185

[Go to location]

Enter a URL to connect to the Internet. P 188

[i-Channel]

Display the i-Channel menu screen. P 204

[MessageR/F]
Display a list of MessageR/F. P174

[Check new messages]
Check whether i-mode mail or MessageR/F is stored at the i-mode center. P173

[i-mode setting]
Configure the FOMA terminal i-mode functions. P197

[Full browser]
Display the Full browser menu screen. P206

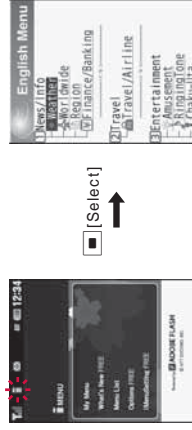
Displaying a Site

You can use various services offered by IP (Information Providers).

- Services vary depending on the IP (Information Providers). Some sites require a separate subscription.

1 i-mode menu screen (P182) "iMenu" "English" "Menu List"

 appears at the top of the screen during i-mode communication.



- Press **[Stop]** to cancel a page download.

2 Select an item (link)

- **[Reload]**: If the current site is updated, reload the page.
- **[Up]**: Scroll the screen up.
- **[Down]**: Scroll the screen down.
- **[Exit i-mode]**: Select "Yes".

Note

- When a number appears in front of a link item, press the corresponding dial key to access the linked site. Some sites may not be possible to connect.
- Some sites may require "Phone/Terminal and UIM ID" to be sent in order to gain access.

The "Phone/Terminal and UIM ID" is sent to the IP (Information Provider) so that the IP can recognize you and provide customized information or judge whether the contents that the IP provides can be used on your mobile phone. The "Phone/Terminal and UIM ID" is sent via the Internet to the IP and may be seen by a third party. This action does not reveal your address, age, or sex to the IP.

- Images that can be displayed are in JPEG, GIF, and SWF formats.

Site Display Screen Sub Menu

While viewing a site  **[Menu] Perform the following operations**

[Bookmark]

Save : Save the URL of the displayed site as a Bookmark. Go to Step 2 in "Adding to Bookmark" (P190).
List : Display the Bookmark folder list screen. P190

[Screen memo]

Save : Save the displayed page as a Screen memo. P192
List : Display the Screen memo list screen. P193

[Save image]

Save images or background images contained in the displayed page. P194

[Show properties]

URL : Display the URL of the displayed page.
Page properties : Display the URL and title of the displayed page.
Certificates : If the displayed page supports SSL, the SSL certificate is displayed.

[Go to location]

Enter URL : Enter a URL to access the web page. Go to Step 2 in "Displaying Internet Web Pages" (P188).
Home : Connect to the URL set as "Home".
URL history : Select an entry in the URL history to access the web page. Go to Step 2 in "Using URL History"(P189).

[Reload]

If the displayed site is updated, reload the page.

[Compose message]

Create i-mode mail with the URL of the displayed page pasted in the message text. Go to Step 2 in "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" (P138).

Select from the following options when a linked item is selected.

This page : Paste the URL on the displayed page.

Link page : Paste the URL of the link.

[Add to Phonebook]

Save a phone number or mail address displayed on the site to the Phonebook. P187

[Display]

Change char code : If characters are not displayed correctly, change the character encoding and display.

Retry : Play Flash movie/an animation contained in the displayed page from the beginning.

[Settings]

Image display : Set whether to display images contained on the displayed page.


Sound effect : Set whether to play sound effects of the Flash movie contained in the displayed page.

i-motion type : Specify the i-motion type to download. P202


[Switch to Full Browser]

Switch to Full browser. P213

Note


- <Change char code >
 - If characters are not displayed correctly, repeat the steps. However, after the character code is changed 4 times, the default character encoding returns.
 - Characters may not be displayed correctly even after repeatedly changing the encoding.
 - The new character encoding is valid only for the displayed page.
- <Image display >
- Images may not be displayed correctly even when this option is set to "ON". In this case,  appears.

Downloading an SSL page

The screen shown on the right appears when you access an SSL site. When accessed, the SSL page opens and  appears on the top of the screen.



Returning to a normal site

The screen shown on the right appears when you return to a non-SSL site. Select "Yes" to return to a normal site, and  disappears.



Note

- If the SSL certificate has already expired or the site does not support SSL, a warning indicating that this site may not be secure may appear. To connect, select "Yes". However, note that your personal information (credit card number or contact address) may not be sent safely.

Last URL

Opening the Last Viewed Web Page

After i-mode is terminated, the URL of the last opened page is saved in "Last URL". You can re-connect to the last accessed page using Last URL.

- 1 i-mode menu screen (P182) "Last URL"  [Connect]

Viewing and Operating Sites

This section describes basic operations on sites.


Going Back to Previous Page/Going to Next Page The FOMA Terminal

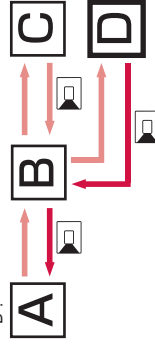
The FOMA terminal temporarily saves the displayed sites data in a cache.

Data saved in the cache can be displayed, without revisiting the site, by using .

- However, communication is established if the data is larger than the cache size, or if the site requires the latest information always be loaded.
- Characters or settings entered at the site will not be stored in the cache.
- Terminating i-mode deletes data from the cache.

Example: When pages are displayed in the order of Screen "A" "B" "C" "B" "D"

If the pages are opened in the order "A" "B" "C", then returning to "B", and opening "D", "C" is deleted from the cache. Pressing  displays "B" "D".

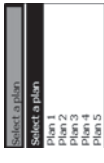


Note

- Touch operation is not available on sites which use Flash movies.
- Operation on sites may differ when a Flash movie is displayed.

Selecting Links or Items

You may need to perform operations using the following items while connecting to i-mode. For details, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

Name	Display example	Details
Radio button	<input type="radio"/> (Not selected) <input checked="" type="radio"/> (Selected)	Select only 1 item.
Check box	<input type="checkbox"/> (Not selected) <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> (Selected)	Select multiple items.
Text box	<input type="text"/>	Enter text. Select a text box to display the text entry screen.
Pull down menu		Select an item from an option list. Click pull-down menu to display the option list.

Note

<Text box>

- Perform the following operations to quote and enter information saved in the FOMA terminal, such as Phonebook entries, your own number, or data scanned with the bar code reader.
[Menu][Menu] "Quote" "Phonebook"/"Own number"/"Bar code"

Displaying Flash Movies

The FOMA terminal supports Flash movies, an animation technology using images and sounds. You can access sites that provide various kinds of animations. You can also download a Flash movie and set it for the Stand-by display.

Note

- Even if a Flash movie is displayed, the animation may not work correctly.
- Some Flash movies use data about your FOMA terminal. To allow Flash movies to use the data, set "Use phone info." to "ON".
- If the Flash movie contains audio, it will be played at the volume set for "Incoming call". To mute sound effects, set "Sound effect" to "OFF". P198
- If you play a Flash movie with vibration set, the FOMA terminal vibrates regardless of "Vibrator" (P102) settings on the FOMA terminal.
- Flash movies are not displayed if "Images" is set to "OFF".
- Flash movies which are saved in Data Box, microSD card, or Screen memo may appear differently depending on the saved part.
- Flash sound effect or vibration does not work if they are set to the Stand-by display/incoming call screen, etc.

Adding a Mail Address/Phone Number to Phonebook

You can save a phone number or mail address displayed at a site to the Phonebook.

- 1 While viewing a site Move the cursor to a phone number/mail address [MENU] [Menu] "Add to Phonebook" "Yes"

Go to Step 2 in "Adding Phonebook Entries from Redial/Received Calls etc." (P89).

My Menu

Subscribing to a Site in My Menu

Frequently accessed sites can be saved in My Menu for quick access.

- Up to 45 entries can be saved in My Menu.
- Some sites cannot be saved in My Menu.

- 1 Display a site to save "マイメニュー登録 (Save in My Menu)"

- Item names may vary depending on the site.

- 2 Select i-mode password text box Enter the i-mode password "決定 (OK)"

- The entered i-mode password is masked by asterisks "*".
- i-mode password P188

Note

- When you subscribe to a fee-based site in "Menu List", the site is automatically added to My Menu.

Accessing a Site from My Menu

- 1 i-mode menu screen (P 182) "iMenu"
"English" "My Menu" Select the site to access

Change i-mode Password

Changing i-mode Password

"i-mode Password" (4 digits) is required to save to/delete from My Menu, subscribe to/unsubscribe from message services or fee-based i-mode sites, or configure mail settings. The password is set to "0000" by default. Change it to a number of your own choice for safety. Do not reveal your i-mode password to others.

- 1 i-mode menu screen (P 182) "iMenu"
"English" "Options" "Change i-mode Password"
- 2 Select the "Current Password" text box
Enter the i-mode password (4 digits)
- 3 Select the "New Password" text box Enter a new i-mode password (4 digits)
- 4 Select the "New Password (Confirmation)" text box Enter the new i-mode password (4 digits)
- 5 "Select"

Note

- If you forget the i-mode password, you need to bring a picture ID such as your driver's license to the docomo Shop to have the i-mode password reset to "0000".

Internet Access

Displaying Internet Web Pages

You can view a web page by entering its URL. Use half-pitch alphanumeric characters and symbols to enter a URL.

- 1 i-mode menu screen (P 182) "Go to location"
"Enter URL"
- 2 Enter the URL
 - Up to 2,033 half-pitch characters can be entered.

Note

- Web pages that do not support i-mode may not be displayed correctly.
- When the same URL as a history entry is accessed, the old URL is overwritten and the entry is displayed at the top of the URL history as the latest URL.

Using URL History

Up to 10 previously entered URLs are stored in the URL history. You can access a web page by using the URL history.

- 1 i-mode menu screen (P182) "Go to location" "URL history"



URL history list screen

- 2 Select the URL to access

Note

- If more than 10 URLs are saved in the history, the oldest URL will be overwritten first.
- The visited URL is displayed at the top of the URL history.

URL History List Screen Sub Menu

- 1 URL history list screen (P189) Move the cursor to a URL history entry [Menu] [Menu] Perform the following operations

[Connect]

Connect to the selected site in the URL history.

[Edit URL]

Edit and connect to the URL of the selected history.

Edit URL [] [Set]

[Delete]

Delete one : Delete a selected URL history entry.

Del. selected : Select and delete entries in the URL history.

Mark the URL history entries to delete

[] [Delete] "Yes"

- Press [] [SelAll/ClrAll] to select/clear all.

Delete all : Delete all entries in the URL history.

Enter the Terminal security code "Yes"

[Compose message]

Create i-mode mail with the URL of the selected history entry pasted in the message text. Go to Step 2 in "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" (P138).

Saving Web Pages or Sites for Quick Access

Save frequently accessed sites or web pages in Bookmark to quickly display the pages.

Adding to Bookmark

- Up to 100 URLs can be saved in the Bookmark folders.

1 While viewing a site [Menu] "Bookmark" "Save"

2 [Select] Edit a title [Set]

[Add] Select a destination folder



- If there is already the same URL saved, a confirmation to overwrite appears. Select "Yes".

Note

- Up to 256 half-pitch characters can be entered for a URL saved as a Bookmark.
- Up to 12 full-pitch or 24 half-pitch characters can be saved for a Bookmark title.
- If the maximum number of Bookmarks has been saved, a confirmation whether to select items to delete appears. To select "Yes" select a folder select Bookmark to delete select a destination folder.

Accessing a Homepage/Site from Bookmark

i-mode menu screen (P182) "Bookmark"

-  [Add]: Add a folder. Up to 16 full-pitch or 32 half-pitch characters can be entered for a folder name.
-  [Edit]: Edit the folder name of the selected user-defined folder.



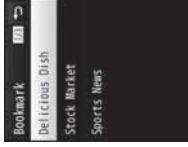
Bookmark folder list screen

Icons displayed on the Bookmark folder list screen

Icon	Description
 (Gray)	"Bookmark" (pre-installed folder)
 (Yellow)	User-defined folder

2 Select a folder

- **[URL]**: Display the URL.
- **[Edit]**: Edit the title.



Bookmark list screen

3 Select the Bookmark URL to access

Bookmark Folder List Screen Sub Menu

1 Bookmark folder list screen (P190) Move the cursor to a folder **[Menu]** Perform the following operations

[Manage folder]

Create folder : Add a folder. Up to 16 full-pitch or 32 half-pitch characters can be entered for a folder name.
Rename folder : Edit the selected folder name.
Sort folder : Sort the selected folder.

[Delete]

Delete one : Delete the selected folder.
Enter the Terminal security code "Yes"
Delete all : Delete all Bookmarks.
Enter the Terminal security code "Yes"

[Send all Ir data]

Send all Bookmarks via infrared communication.
Enter the Terminal security code "Yes"
Enter the authentication password "Yes"

[Copy all microSD]

Copy all Bookmarks to a microSD card.
Enter the Terminal security code "Yes"

[Memory status]

Display the number of saved Bookmarks in the entire folder.

Note

- <Rename folder/Sort folder/Delete one>
 - The pre-installed "Bookmark" folder cannot be renamed, moved, or deleted.
- <Delete one>
 - If there is a bookmark in the folder, a confirmation to delete appears. Select "Yes" to delete in the entire folder.

Bookmark List Screen Sub Menu

1 Bookmark list screen (P191) Move the cursor to a bookmark **[Menu]** Perform the following operations

[Connect]

Connect to the selected Bookmark site.

[Edit title]

Edit the title or URL of the selected Bookmark.
Edit the title or URL **[Set]**

[Move]
 Move this : Move the selected Bookmark to another folder.
 Move selected : Select and move Bookmarks.
 Mark the Bookmarks to move [Move]
 Select a destination folder
 • Press [SelAll/CirAll] to select/clear all.
 • Press [SelAll/CirAll] to select/clear all.
 Move all : Move all Bookmarks in the folder to another folder.

[Delete]
 Delete one : Delete the selected Bookmark.
 Del. selected : Select and delete Bookmarks.
 Mark the Bookmarks to delete [Delete]
 "Yes"
 • Press [SelAll/CirAll] to select/clear all.
 Delete all : Delete all Bookmarks.
 Enter the Terminal security code "Yes"

[URL Info]
 Display the URL of the selected Bookmark.

[Copy URL]
 Copy the URL of the selected Bookmark.

[Compose message]
 Create i-mode mail with the selected Bookmark attached. Go to Step 2 in "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" (P138).

[Ir exchange]
 Send : Send the selected Bookmark via infrared communication.
 Send all : Send all bookmarks in the folder via infrared communication.
 Enter the Terminal security code "Yes"
 authentication password "Yes"

[Copy microSD]
 Copy one : Copy selected Bookmark to microSD card.
 Copy all : Copy all Bookmarks in the folder to microSD card.
 Enter the Terminal security code "Yes"

[Memory status]
 Display the number of saved Bookmarks in the folder.

Screen memo

Saving Site Contents

You can save the displayed page as a Screen memo. Pages saved as Screen memo can be opened without connecting to i-mode.

Saving Screen Memos


- Up to 50 Screen memos can be saved. However, the actual number of savable pages may be reduced depending on the saved data size.
- Up to approximately 100KB per page can be saved.

While viewing a site [Menu] "Screen memo" "Save" "Yes"

Note
 • If the maximum number of Screen memos have already been saved, a confirmation whether to select a screen memo to delete appears. To select, "Yes" select a screen memo to delete.

Viewing Screen Memos

1 i-mode menu screen (P1 82) "Screen memo"

- [Delete]: Delete the selected Screen memo.
- [URL]: Display the URL.



Screen memo list screen

2 Select the Screen memo to display

The Screen memo detail screen is displayed.

Note

- The page saved as a Screen memo has the information at the time it was saved. The Screen memo may not contain the latest information.

Screen Memo List Screen Sub Menu

- ### 1 Screen memo list screen
- Move the cursor to the Screen memo [Menu] Perform the following operations

[Display]

Display the selected Screen memo.


[Edit title]

Edit the title of the selected Screen memo. Up to 12 full-pitch or 24 half-pitch characters can be entered for a title.


[Delete]

Delete one : Delete the selected Screen memo.

Del. selected : Select and delete Screen memos.

[Delete] "Yes"

Mark the Screen memos to delete

- Press [SeiAll/ClrAll] to select/clear all.

Delete all : Delete all Screen memos.

Enter the Terminal security code "Yes"


[URL Info]


Display the URL of the selected Screen memo.

[Protect on/off]

One ON/OFF : Disable/Enable protection for the selected Screen memo.

Select ON/OFF: Select and protect or unprotect a Screen memo.

Mark Screen memos to protect [Done]

- Press [SeiAll/ClrAll] to select/clear all.

Unprotect all : Unprotect all Screen memos.

Enter the Terminal security code

[Memory status]

Display the number of Screen memos.

Screen Memo Detail Screen Sub Menu

1 Screen memo detail screen [Menu] Perform the following operations

[Save image]

Save an image or background image contained in the current Screen memo. Go to Step 2 in "Downloading Images from Sites or Screen Memos" (P195).

[Show properties]

URL : Display the URL of the displayed Screen memo.
Page properties : Display the title and the URL of the displayed Screen memo.
Certificates : If the displayed Screen memo supports SSL, the SSL certificate is displayed.

[Add to Phonebook]

Save a phone number or mail address on the site to the Phonebook. P187

[Retry]

Play a Flash movie or an animation contained in the Screen memo from the beginning.

[Sound effect]

Set whether to play sound effects of the Flash movie contained in the displayed Screen memo.

ON : Play the Flash movie sound effects.

OFF : Do not play the Flash movie sound effects.

[Edit title]

Edit the title of the displayed Screen memo. Up to 12 full-pitch or 24 half-pitch characters can be entered for a title.

[Delete]

Delete the displayed Screen memo.

[Protect ON/OFF]

Protect or unprotect the displayed Screen memo.

Note

<Delete>

- Protected Screen memos cannot be deleted. Unprotect them before deleting.

<Protect ON/OFF>

- Up to 10 Screen memos can be protected. The number of protectable Screen memos may vary depending on the data size.

Downloading Data from Sites

You can download files or data such as images or melodies from sites and save them to the FOMA terminal or microSD card.

- Savable data (file) type and maximum savable size per file are as follows:

- Image (JPEG, GIF, or SWF format), i-melody, template: 100KB
- Kisekae Tool: 2MB
- Dictionary: 32KB


Save image

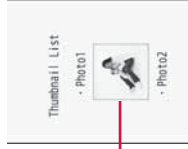
Downloading Images from Sites or Screen Memos

Save images on the displayed site or contained in Screen memo to the FOMA terminal or a microSD card.

- Obtained images are saved in the "i-mode" folder in "My picture" of "Data Box" or microSD card.

Example: To save the image displayed on a site

- 1 While viewing a site  [Menu] "Save image"
- 2 "Select image" Select an image to save
 - To save the background image from a site Select "Save backgnd".



A savable image is framed by a dotted border.

3 "Yes"

- Further select the destination when a microSD card is inserted on the FOMA terminal. However, images in SWF format is automatically saved to the FOMA terminal.
- If you saved the image on the FOMA terminal, a confirmation appears asking whether to set the saved image as Stand-by display. Select "Yes" to set it.

Note

- Images cannot be saved if "Images" is set to "OFF".
- Some images saved on the FOMA terminal may not be displayed properly even if they are displayed on the site.
- Some obtained images may not be displayed correctly.

- Image files in JPEG, GIF, or Progressive JPEG* formats cannot be displayed after they are saved with the size (pixels) exceeding the following. However, they can be output to external devices such as by attaching to mail.
 - JPEG or Progressive JPEG image files that exceed 2592 x 1944 dots
 - GIF image files that exceed 800 x 600 dots
- Progressive JPEG is an image format that is used on the Internet. The image looks coarse at the beginning of the download and the image sharpness improves as the download progresses.

Downloading Data from a Site

Savable data type and the saving destination are as follows.

Data (file) type	Destination
i-melody	"i-mode" folder in "Melody" of "Data Box" or microSD card
Template	"Template" in Mail menu (P144)
Kisekae Tool	"i-mode" folder in "Kisekae Tool" of "Data Box"
Dictionary	"Download dictionary" (P389)

While viewing a site Select data

When download completes, a confirmation appears.

2

"Save"

- To cancel saving, select "Back".
- You can check data by selecting "View", "Play", or "Preview" depending on the data type.

■ To save i-melody

Further select the destination if a microSD card is inserted on the FOMA terminal.

- To save a template
Select "Save" change the file name "Yes".
- To save a dictionary
Select the destination.

Note

- <i-melody >
- Download may not be possible depending on the site.
- Some downloaded melodies may not be played correctly.
- In some downloaded melodies, playback part may be specified. Those melodies will be played entirely at playback, however, when the melody is set for a ring tone etc., only the specified part is played.
- <Template >
- When downloading templates, select "Compose mail" to create Deco-mail using downloaded template.
- <Dictionary >
- Using downloaded dictionaries P389

Phone To/Mail To/Web To/Media To/i- ppli To function

Using Phone To/Mail To/Web To/Media To/i- ppli To Function

When a phone number, mail address or URL is highlighted on a site or in mail, you can use it to easily make a call, send i-mode mail, or access the web page. Also, when 1Seg information is highlighted, you can watch 1Seg or set timer for starting 1Seg.

- Phone To, AV Phone To, Mail To, Web To, or Media To function in mail sent from a PC may not be available.

Phone To/AV Phone To Function

Make a voice call (Phone To)/videophone call (AV Phone To) to the highlighted phone number on a site or in mail.

1 Select a phone number Perform the following operations

- Voice call : Make a voice call.
- Video call : Make a videophone call.
- SMS : Create an SMS message addressed to the selected phone number.
- Add phonebook : Add the selected phone number to the Phonebook.
Go to Step 2 in "Adding Phonebook Entries from Redial/Received Calls etc." (P88).
- Copy : Copy the selected phone number.

Note

- The Phone To/AV Phone To function may not be available depending on the site.
- For mail, the order of displayed items varies.

Mail To Function

You can send a mail to an i-mode mail address highlighted on a site page or in mail.

Select a mail address

Go to Step 3 in "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" (P138).

Note

- The Mail To function may not be available depending on the site.

Web To Function

Access a URL highlighted on a site or in mail.

Select a URL

- For mail, further press [Connect].

Note

- The Web To function may not be available depending on the site.
- The appearance of the URL varies depending on the site.
- The Web To function may be available using a highlighted item other than a URL.

Media To Function

You can watch 1 Seg or set timer for starting 1Seg.

Select 1Seg information

"Yes"

Note

- The Media To function may not be available when other functions are running.

i- ppli To Function

You can start i- ppli from a URL highlighted on a site or in i-mode mail.

- If "Set i- ppli To" (P285) or "Mail i- ppli To" in "Set i- ppli To" is not marked, the i- ppli will not start.

Select i- ppli information

"Yes"

Note

- Some i- ppli, which immediately start directly from the site using the i- ppli To function, may not be saved.

i-mode setting

Setting i-mode

Set functions of i-mode or MessageR/F.

Communication

Configuring Communication Settings

i-mode menu screen (P182) "i-mode setting"
"Communication" Perform the following operations

[Connection timeout]

Set the timeout duration until the connection is automatically terminated if there is no response due to network tra c. P199

[Check new messages]

Specify request items when using "Check new messages".
Mark the items to check [Done]

Image&E ect set.

Configuring Image and E ect Settings

- 1 i-mode menu screen (P182) "i-mode setting"
"Image&E ect set." Perform the following operations

[Images]

Set whether to display images or Flash movies contained on sites or in Screen memos.

[Sound e ect]

Set whether to play sound e ects of Flash movies contained on sites or in Screen memos.

[Font size]

Set the font size for sites or Screen memos.

[Scroll]

Set the number of lines to scroll with each press of  on sites or Screen memos.

[Use phone info.]

When a Flash movie is displayed on a site or in a Screen memo, information saved on the FOMA terminal may be required. Set whether to use the information from the FOMA terminal then.

[Auto-display setting]


Set how MessageR/F is displayed automatically. P.173

[Melody auto play]

Set whether to automatically play a melody when MessageR/F is displayed. P.173

Note

<Images >

- Images may not be displayed correctly even when "Images" is set to "ON". In this case,  appears.

<Sound e ect>

- Even if "Sound e ect" is set to "ON", some sound e ects may not sound depending on the Flash movie.

<Use phone info.>

- If set to "ON", the battery level, signal strength, Date & Time, Ring Volume, Language, and terminal model information may be sent to IP (Information Provider) via the Internet, and a third party may intercept the information.

Home

Configuring Home Setting

Set the home URL by selecting "Home" from the Site display screen sub menu.

- 1 i-mode menu screen (P182) "i-mode setting"
"Home"

- 2 Select "Enable" "http://" field Enter the URL  [Done]

Note

- If set to "Disable", selecting "Home" does not open the specified page. The URL entered in the "http://" field will remain intact.

Others

Configuring Other Settings

- 1 i-mode menu screen (P1 82) "i-mode setting"
"Others" Perform the following operations

[Check settings]

Check the options set in "i-mode setting".

[Reset settings]

Reset the options set in "i-mode setting" to the default.
Enter the Terminal security code "Yes"

Connection timeout

Setting Connection Timeout

Set the timeout duration until the connection is automatically terminated if there is no response due to network traffic.

- 1 i-mode menu screen (P1 82) "i-mode setting"
"Communication" "Connection timeout"
"60 seconds"/"90 seconds"/"Unlimited"
 - If set to "Unlimited", the connection will not be automatically terminated.

Note

- Even if set to "Unlimited", the connection attempt may be terminated depending on the signal strength etc.


Host selection

Changing Access Point from i-mode

* If you use the DOCOMO i-mode service, changing the access point is not required.


Set an Access Point Name (APN) used when you use services other than i-mode (DOCOMO), i-mode and i-mode mail become unavailable when you connect to an APN other than DOCOMO.

Adding Access Points

- 1  "Settings" "International roaming"
"Network" "Host selection"



Host selection screen

- 2  [Add] Enter the Terminal security code
Perform the following operations

[Host name] Enter the access point name within 15 full-pitch or 30 half-pitch characters.

[Host number] Enter the number of the access point within 99 half-pitch alphanumeric characters.

[Host address] Enter the access point address within 30 half-pitch alphanumeric characters.

[Host address 2]
Enter the access point address for i-Channel within 30 half-pitch alphanumeric characters.

3 [Done]

Changing Access Point

1 Host selection screen (P199) Select the access point to change

Host Selection Screen Sub Menu

1 Host selection screen (P199) Move the cursor to the access point [Menu] [Menu] Perform the following operations

- Not available while "i-mode" is selected.

[Add new]
Add a new access point. P199

[Edit]
Edit the access point settings.
Enter the Terminal security code Edit the access point settings
[Done]

[Delete]
Delete the selected access point.
"Yes" Enter the Terminal security code

[View]
Display the selected access point settings.
• [Edit]: Edit the access point settings.

Note

- When an access point is changed, the i-Channel ticker does not appear. When the information is auto-updated or you download the latest information by pressing [Done] in Stand-by, the ticker will appear automatically.
- If the set access point is deleted, "i-mode" will be set as the default host.

SSL Certificate Info

Operating SSL Certificate



You can view an SSL certificate, or set a certificate valid or invalid.

1 i-mode menu screen (P182) "i-mode setting" "Certificates"

- [Select]: Display the contents of the selected certificate.

2 Move the cursor to the certificate

- Press [Menu] [Invalid/Valid]
- Press [Menu] [Menu] and select "Certificate Info" or "Valid/Invalid".

Icon	Description
	Valid certificate
	Invalid certificate

Certificates used for SSL communication

These certificates are issued by an authentication company, and are saved on the FOMA terminal by default.

Downloading i-motion from Sites

Up to 2,000 i-motion can be saved. However, the savable number depends on the amount of the data.

- Downloaded i-motion is saved in the "i-mode" folder in "i-motion" of "Data Box" or microSD card.

1 While viewing a site Select i-motion

- When "Auto-replay setting" is set to "ON", i-motion is played automatically after downloaded.
Operations during playback P308
- Streaming-type i-motion
 - The Playback confirmation screen appears. Select "Yes" to play i-motion during the download.
 - When "i-motion type" is set to "Standard type", you cannot play i-motion. Switch to "Std/Streaming", then download i-motion again. P202

2 After download, "Save"

- Play : Play downloaded i-motion.
- File property : Display information about downloaded i-motion.
- Back : Return to the Site display screen without saving i-motion.
- Further select the destination when a microSD card is inserted on the FOMA terminal.

i-motion

i-motion is a moving picture with video and sound. They can be obtained from i-motion sites, played, saved, and set as the Stand-by display or a ring tone, etc.

i-motion Types

There are 2 types of i-motion.

■ Standard type

There are 2 formats of the Standard type.

- ① The format in which an i-motion can be played after download (Up to 10MB)
 - ② The format in which an i-motion can be played during the download (Up to 10MB)
- Some standard type i-motion cannot be saved.



■ Streaming type

This type allows you to play i-motion while downloading data. Up to 10MB of i-motion can be played. The data is deleted after playback. It cannot be saved on the FOMA terminal.

Note

- i-motion that can be downloaded and played are in MP4 (Mobile MP4) format. i-motion in ASF format cannot be downloaded or played.

Note

- Depending on the connected site or i-motion, some i-motion may not be downloaded or played during the download.
- If you play i-motion while downloading data, i-motion may stop playing or the image may become distorted due to signal strength etc.
- Some i-motion cannot be saved on the FOMA terminal.
- Some i-motion have playback restrictions.  appears for i-motion with playback count.
-  appears for i-motion with playback period or playback limit. i-motion which has restricted term for playback cannot be played before/after the term.
- Some downloaded i-motion may not be played correctly.

Auto-replay setting

Setting whether to Play i-motion Automatically

Set whether to play i-motion automatically when downloading from a site or mail.

- 1 i-mode menu screen (P182) "i-mode setting" "i-motion setting" "Auto-replay setting"

Switch between ON and OFF each time "Auto-replay setting" is selected.

i-motion type

Specifying Type of Downloading i-motion

Set the type of the new i-motion to download from a site.

- 1 i-mode menu screen (P182) "i-mode setting" "i-motion setting" "i-motion type" Select a type

Standard type : Download only standard-type i-motion.
Std/Streaming : Download standard or streaming-type i-motion.

Note




- To download streaming-type i-motion, "Std/Streaming" must be set.

When a Link is Set in Ticker

When a ticker is set in i-motion, the ticker is displayed during playback. If a phone number, a mail address, or a URL is set in the ticker, you can use Phone To, AV Phone To, Mail To, or Web To functions after the i-motion playback is finished.

- 1 i-motion playback ends Select an item

Note

- While information is being received,  blinks.
- Even when the information arrives, a ring tone does not sound nor does the terminal vibrate. The illumination does not light/blink either.
- Information may not be received when the FOMA terminal power is turned on while the FOMA terminal is out of service area, or when the signal reception is weak. Press  in Stand-by to receive information, then the obtained information is displayed automatically as the ticker on the Stand-by display. Also, information may not be received if the default settings are kept. In this case, press  in Stand-by to receive and automatically display the information as the ticker on the Stand-by display.
- In some conditions, information may be received only when a channel list is displayed.
- If you change the access point in "Host selection", the access point of i-Channel is also changed (normally, you do not need to change these settings).
- The ticker will not appear after i-Channel is unsubscribed.
- When i-motion is set to the Stand-by display, the ticker will not appear during playback.
- There may be a message notifying of failure to acquire channel information if:
 - the i-Channel access point has been changed
 - the UIM has been replaced
- Touch operation is not available on i-Channel screen.

i-Channel Setting

Setting i-Channel

You can set whether to display the ticker on the Stand-by display or to set the ticker display speed. Also you can delete all i-Channel information on the FOMA terminal.

"i-Channel" Perform the following operations

[i-Channel list]

Display the Channel list screen. P.203

[Ticker setting]

Ticker display : Set whether to display a ticker on the Stand-by display.

Ticker speed : Set the ticker display speed.

Font size : Set the ticker font size.

Font color : Set the ticker font color.

[Reset i-Channel]

Delete i-Channel data downloaded on the FOMA terminal and restore Ticker setting to defaults.

Note

<Ticker display>

- If you unsubscribe the i-mode service before unsubscribing i-Channel, the "Ticker display" setting remains.

Full Browser

Displaying Web Pages Designed for PC	Full browser	206
Setting Full Browser	Full Browser Settings	214

Full browser

Displaying Web Pages Designed for PC

With Full browser, FOMA terminal can display web pages designed for PC.

- Some pages may not be displayed correctly.
- Up to approximately 50KB per page can be displayed.
- Note that accessing web pages containing lots of images or performing communication with large amount of data such as data download makes communication charge high. For details about packet communication and billing plan, see "Mobile Phone Users Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

Displaying Full Browser Menu

1 i-mode menu screen (P 182) "Full browser"



Full browser menu screen

2 Perform the following operations

[Home]

Display a web page which URL is set as "Home".

[Bookmark]

Display the Bookmark folder list screen.

[Last URL]

Display the last accessed web page.

[Go to location]

Input address : Enter a URL to access a web page. P207
URL history : Select an entry in the URL history to access a web page. Go to Step 2 in "Using URL History" (P189).

[Full Browser Settings]

Set Full browser functions. P214


Note

- SSL/TLS-supporting web pages can be displayed with Full browser.
- SSL/TLS are methods to protect privacy and communicate safely with authentication/encryption technologies. SSL/TLS pages prevent others from eavesdropping, spoofing, and altering information during communication by exchanging encrypted data, and enable you to exchange your personal information such as credit card number and address safer.

Displaying a Web Page by Entering URL

1 Full browser menu screen (P206) "Go to location"

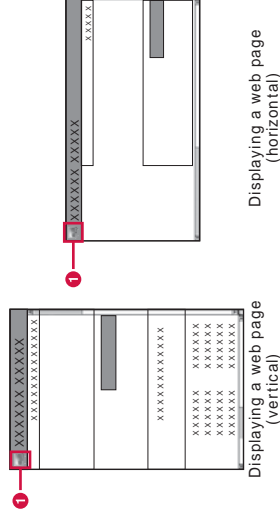
2 "Input address" [Select] Enter the URL [Connect]

- When "Access Setting" (P214) of Full browser is set to "Not Use", the Access setting screen is displayed to confirm whether to use Full browser when activating Full browser. Selecting "Yes" sets the Access setting to "Use" and displays a web page. This setting is valid even after Full browser is quit. Some web pages may take a while to be displayed.
- Up to 2,033 half-pitch characters can be entered.
- During Full browser communication,  appears at the top of the screen.
- To cancel the page retrieval while retrieving, press [Stop].
- Once a URL is input, you can use the URL history to open its web page by selecting on the Full browser menu screen (P206) "Go to location" "URL history". For details, refer to "Using URL History" (P189) in i-mode section.
- To close a web page, press [Yes].

Note

- Some web pages automatically establish communication. When starting communication, a confirmation appears. Select a communication method on a confirmation screen.
Yes (once)
: Connect this time only.
Yes (permanently)
: After this, connect automatically without confirmation.
No : Do not connect.

Full Browser Screen











Displaying a web page (vertical)

Displaying a web page (horizontal)

1 Display mode
: Displayed only in PC layout mode P215

Key operations while viewing a web page

Operation	Description
 (in Keitai mode),  (in PC layout mode), 	Scroll the screen to the direction of the key press
 <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/>	Scroll the screen up
 <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/>	Scroll the screen down
 [Menu]*	Display sub menu
 [Action]*	Display action menu
	Select a link
Dial keys, <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> *	Shortcut Operations P208

* Available only in a vertical screen.

Shortcut Operations

Some operations can be done directly by pressing dial keys while displaying a web page. The following operations are assigned to each key by default. The assigned operations can also be modified.

■ Shortcut operations

Operation	Description
(Zoom out)	Minify the view
(Scroll up)	Scroll up on the screen
(Zoom in)	Magnify the view
(Scroll left)	Scroll left on the screen
(PagePilot)	Display the whole page P.2/10
(Scroll right)	Scroll right on the screen
(Back to previous page)	Display the previous page
(Scroll down)	Scroll down on the screen
(Go to next page)	Display the next page
(Bookmark list)	Display the list of saved Bookmarks
(Switch to the left widow)	Display the left window while displaying multiple windows.
(Switch to the right widow)	Display the right window while displaying multiple windows.

Changing operations assigned to shortcuts

- While viewing a web page [Menu] "Shortcut List"
The Shortcut list screen appears.
- Move the cursor to a shortcut to change its assigned operation [Edit] Move the cursor to an operation to assign [Done]

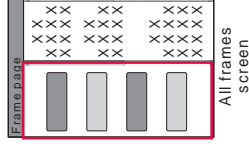
Note

- Images that can be displayed are in JPEG, GIF, BMP, and PNG formats.
- The following functions are not supported.
 - Displaying Flash movies - Plug-ins - Playing sound
 - Saving Screen memo - Phone To (AV Phone To)
- When user certificate stored in FOMA terminal is required for SSL/TLS communication, certificate selection screen appears.
- Tilting the FOMA terminal to the left automatically switches to the horizontal screen.

Displaying a Framed Web Page

A web page composed of multiple frames can be displayed.

- 1 Display a web page composed of multiple frames



- 2 Select a frame to display as full frame

• To return to the All frames screen, press **[F5]**.



Note

- For a web page composed of many frames, all frames may not be displayed.

Displaying in Multiple Windows

You can open multiple windows at a time and display those by switching.

- Up to 5 windows can be opened. The maximum number of window may not be opened depending on frame numbers or contents of the pages.

- 1 While viewing a web page **[Menu]** **[New Window]** Perform the following operations

[Open]

Display the Bookmark folder list screen.

[Go to location]

Input address : Enter a URL to access a web page. P.207

URL history : Select an entry in the URL history to access a web page. Go to Step 2 in "Using URL History" (P.189).

[Home]

Display a web page whose URL is set as "Home".

[Link]

Display a linked page

Note

- Tabs are displayed on the top of the screen.

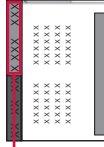
To switch windows, press [Menu]

"Window Operat." "Change

Window" select a window name

to display. The tab of the displayed

web page appears to the front.



Operations in Full Browser

The operations in Full browser is basically same as those on sites accessed from Go to location menu of i-mode (P186). Here describes different parts of the operation.

Full Browser Screen Sub Menu

- 1 While viewing a web page [Menu] Perform the following operations

[Goto Page]

- Back : Display the previously accessed web pages.
- Forward : When displaying web pages backwards, display next page of the displayed web page.
- Visit History : Access a web page by using the URL history.
- Home : Display a web page whose URL is set as "Home".

[Reload]

Reload the displayed web page.

[Bookmark]

Register a web page as Bookmark or display the list screen of the Bookmark folder.

[Go to location]

- Input address : Enter a URL to access a web page. P207
- Home : Display a web page whose URL is set as "Home".
- URL history : Select an entry in the URL history to access a web page. Go to Step 2 in "Using URL History" (P189).

[Display]

Set display settings for web pages.

- Zoom :
 - Zoom In : Magnify the view of the web page.
 - Zoom Out : Minify the view of the web page.
 - Zoom : Set zoom factor for web page display.
- Display Mode : Change display mode of a web page. P215
- PagePilot : Minify the whole view of the displayed web page and select a range to display.
 - Move the cursor to the part to display
 - [Select]
- All frames : Display the All frames screen when the Full frame screen is displayed.
- Goto on Page : Display the top/end of the web page.
 - Go to Top : Go to the top of the displayed web page.
 - Go to End : Go to the end of the displayed web page.

Search : Search text in the displayed web page. When the search text is found, the matched text is highlighted.
 Select the Search text field Enter the text to search [Done]
 To search the exact match word only, mark "Whole Words Only".
 To search a word distinguishing upper case from lower case, mark "Case Sensitive".
 To display search result in sequence, press [Enter][Next].
 Press to quit the search.

Character code : Change character code of the displayed web page.
 Every time you change the character code, the code switches in order of Shift-JIS EUC JIS UTF-8.

Play animation : Play GIF animation displayed from the beginning frame.

Title Info : Display the title of the displayed web page.
URL Info :
 URL Info : Display the URL of the displayed web page.
 • To copy the URL, press "Copy".
Link Info : Display the URL of the selected link.
 • To copy the URL, press "Copy".
SSL Info : Display the certificate of the web page.

[Window Operat.]

New Window : Open another web page loaded from the Open/Go to location/Home/Link in a new window. P209

Open as Back : Open another web page loaded from the Open/Go to location/Home/Link in a background window. P209

Open Link : Display the selected link in a new window.
 • If a moving picture is linked, a new window is closed and a moving picture application starts.

Close Window : Close the displayed web site.

Change Window : Select a web page from the list of pages displayed in multi windows.


[Save Image]

Save images on a web page to the FOMA terminal or microSD card.
 Select an image to save "Yes"
 • If microSD card is inserted, further select save location.

[Text]

Text Copy : Copy text on a web page.
 Select start point of a range including text to copy
 Select end point Select start point Select end point
 • Press [SelAll] to copy all text.

Text Paste : Paste copied text to the selected text box.

<p>[Compose msg] Create i-mode mail with the URL of the displayed web page in the message text. Go to Step 2 in "Composing and Sending I-mode Mail" (P138). Select from the following options when a linked item is selected. This page : Paste the URL of the displayed web page. Link page : Paste the URL link on the selected web page.</p> <p>[Setting] Image display : Set whether to display images. Set as Home : Set the displayed web page as "Home". TLS : Set whether to use TLS. Normally, changing this setting is not necessary.</p> <p>[Shortcut List] Check operations assigned to the dial keys in list. The assigned operations can be modified as well. P208</p> <p>Note</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> For some web pages, characters may not appear correctly or their view may differ from the web pages displayed on PC. When characters appear incorrectly, "Character code" (P211) may fix the problem. When no data is obtained for a web page due to communication error etc.,  may appear on the screen. In this case, reloading the web page (P210) may fix the problem. Save Image > Images that can be saved are in JPEG, GIF, BMP, PNG formats and up to 100KB. For BMP and PNG formats, images are automatically saved in "OTHER" folder of microSD card. These images cannot be saved in the FOMA terminal. Images may not be saved depending on the site. <p><Text > In some pages, text cannot be copied.</p>

<p>Full Browser Screen Action Menu</p> <p>[Action] While viewing a web page Perform the following operations</p> <p>[Open Link] Display a linked page</p> <p>[Link Info] Display the URL of selected link.</p> <p>[Save Image] Save the selected image to the FOMA terminal or microSD card. P211</p> <p>[Text Paste] Paste copied text to the selected text box.</p> <p>[Zoom In] Magnify the view of the web page.</p> <p>[Zoom Out] Minify the view of the web page.</p> <p>[Display Mode] Change display mode of a web page. P215</p>
--

[PagePilot]

Minify the whole view of the displayed web page and select a range to display. P210

[Go to Top]

Go to the top of the displayed web page.

[Go to End]

Go to the end of the displayed web page.

[Text Copy]

Copy text on a web page. P211

Note

- Some menu items may not appear depending on the operating condition.

Uploading Images

You can upload JPEG/GIF images saved in the FOMA terminal to a web page.

- Upload method varies depending on web pages. Follow the instructions on the screen.

Note

- Up to 80KB of an image can be uploaded. However, when multiple images and characters are included, the maximum size is 100KB altogether.
- Uploading may not be available on some web pages.
- Images which are restricted to be transferred from the FOMA terminal cannot be uploaded.

Bookmark

Adding to Bookmark

1 While viewing a web page  [Menu] "Bookmark" "Add"

2 Select the Title field Edit a title  [Add] Select the folder to save

Note

- The operations available for Bookmark folder list or Bookmark list are the same as for i-mode. P190

Switching to Full Browser from i-mode

You can switch i-mode view to Full browser.

- Some web pages may not appear or may not appear correctly.
- Note that the billing system for Full browser is different from the one for i-mode, and accessing web pages containing lots of images or performing communication with large amount of data such as data download makes communication charge high. For details about packet communication charges and billing plan, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

1 While viewing an i-mode site  [Menu] "Switch to Full Browser" "OK"

Full Browser Settings

Setting Full Browser

Set browser functions.

Communication

Configuring Communication Settings

- Full browser menu screen (P2.06) "Full Browser Settings" "Communication" Perform the following operations

[Access Setting]

Check the information about using Full browser.

- When you use Full browser changing settings, please read the information in the Access Setting carefully.

[Cookie Setting]

Set whether to validate Cookie. Cookie is the scheme to store information such as user name, access date, or number of accesses in the FOMA terminal temporarily when accessing web pages and use those data when accessing the same page next time.

- DOCOMO is not responsible if your information is passed to a third party by validating Cookie.
- When selected "Valid (notify)", you can select the option from "Sending", "Receiving", or "Sending/receiving".

[Delete Cookie]

Delete Cookie.

Enter the Terminal security code "Yes"

[Referer Setting]

Set whether to send Referer (information that where a page is linked from) when accessing a web page by selecting a link.

- DOCOMO is not responsible if your information is passed to a third party by sending Referer.

[TLS]

TLS is a method to protect privacy and communicate safely with authentication/encryption technologies. Set whether to use TLS. Normally, changing this setting is not necessary.

Note

<Access Setting>

- If inserting another UIM, Access Setting becomes invalid.

<Cookie Setting>

- If inserting another UIM, Cookie Setting becomes "Invalid".
- If changing the setting from "Invalid" to "Valid"/"Valid (notify)", and if UIM information does not match, the Terminal security code is required.

Image&E ect set.

Configuring Image and E ect Settings

- 1 Full browser menu screen (P206) "Full Browser Settings" "Image&E ect set." Perform the following operations

[Zoom]

Set zoom factor for a web page display.

[Display Mode Setting]

Set display method of a web page.

PC layout mode : Display a web page in the same way as you view on PC. Scrolling up/down, or to the right/left is available.

Keitai mode : Display a web page fit to the display width. Scrolling up and down is available.

[Set Image display]

Set whether to display images.

[Bookmark Display]

Set display method for saved Bookmark folder.

[Window Open Guard Setting]

Set the action when getting an instruction to open a new window from JavaScript on a web page.

Valid : A new window does not open.

Invalid : A confirmation appears when opening a new window.




[Script Setting]

Set whether to validate JavaScript. JavaScript is a program which works on web pages.

- Some web pages may not appear correctly with "Invalid" set.

Home URL

Configuring the Home Setting

- 1 Full browser menu screen (P206) "Full Browser Settings" "Home URL"  [Done]  [Select] Enter URL  [Done]
 - Up to 2,033 half-pitch characters can be entered.

Others

Configuring Other Settings

- 1 Full browser menu screen (P206) "Full Browser Settings" "Others" Perform the following operations

[Check Settings]

Display the list of Full browser settings.

[Reset Settings]

Reset the Full browser settings.

Enter the Terminal security code "Yes"



Camera

Copyrights and Portrait Rights

You have no right to copy, modify, or distribute contents such as text, image, music, or software downloaded from web sites on the Internet, or images captured with this product without permission from the copyright holder except when the copy or quote is for personal use that is allowed under copyright laws. Note that it may be prohibited to capture or record live performances or exhibitions even for personal use. Refrain from taking portraits of other people and uploading such portraits to web sites without their consent, as this violates portrait rights.



Please be considerate of other people's privacy when capturing and sending pictures using camera-equipped mobile phones.

Before Using Camera	218
Capturing Still Images	222
Photo-mode	227
Movie-mode	230
Changing Settings for Shooting	232
Camera settings	234
Using Bar Code Reader	234

Before Using Camera

Notes for Capturing Images

- The camera employs high-precision technology, but some pixels or lines may seem brighter or darker than others. Also, when you capture images in places with insufficient lighting, noises such as white lines increase. This is not a malfunction.
- Clean the lens with a soft cloth before capturing. If the lens is stained with fingerprints or oil, the captured image may be out of focus or blurred.
- Do not leave the FOMA terminal in a warm place or under a direct sunlight for a long period of time. The image or video to capture may deteriorate.
- If you capture under a fluorescent light, mercury lamp, or sodium lamp flickering at high speed, flickering such as stripes may appear. The color tone of still images or moving pictures may vary depending on the capturing timing.
- Do not expose the lens to direct sunlight for a long period of time and do not point at the sun or a bright light directly. The image may become discolored or the camera may malfunction.
- Do not cover the lens with your finger, hair, or the strap when capturing.
- Capturing a fast moving object may result in an image slightly off from the image displayed on the screen at the time of capturing, or the image may be blurred.
- When the battery level is low, you may not be able to save captured still images or moving pictures. Check the battery level before using the camera.
- Captured still images or moving pictures may differ from the actual subjects in brightness or color tone.
- Even in Manner mode, the shutter tone sounds at a fixed volume. The shutter tone sounds from the speaker even when a Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch (optional) is connected to the FOMA terminal.

Using Camera

You can use camera with the terminal closed or opened. This manual describes operations in horizontal capture mode (in Turn View Style) as a priority. Also, you can select the Inner or the Outer camera, depending on the situation.

Outer camera

Useful for taking pictures of scenery or other people. The screen output is similar to what you see (normal image). The Auto focus adjusts the focus of still image capturing with the Outer camera. P.22.5

Outer camera

Photo light/Light

Inner camera

Useful for taking pictures of yourself. Inverted (mirrored) images are shown in the frame. Captured image can be saved as either mirrored image or normal image. P.22.4

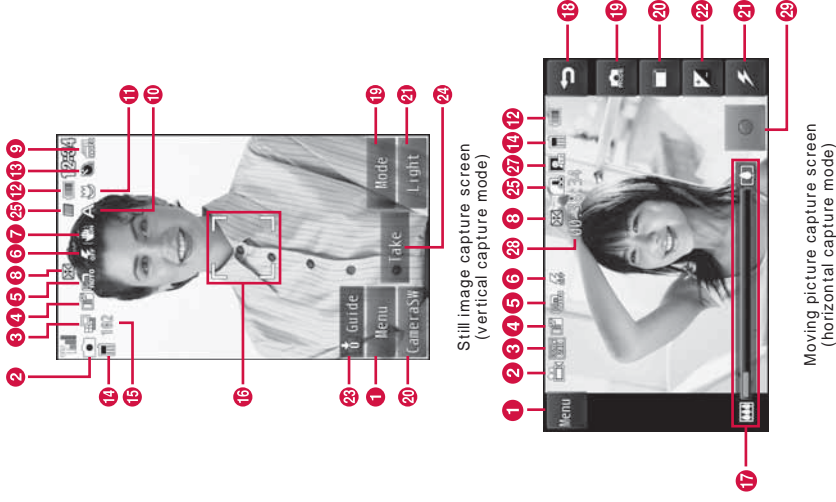
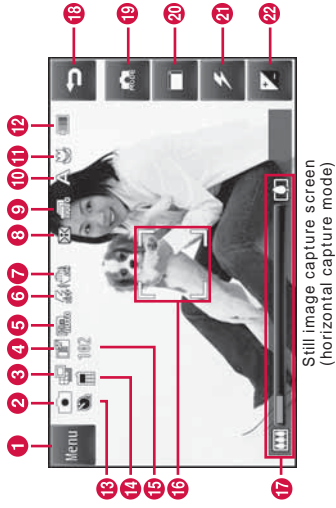
Inner Camera

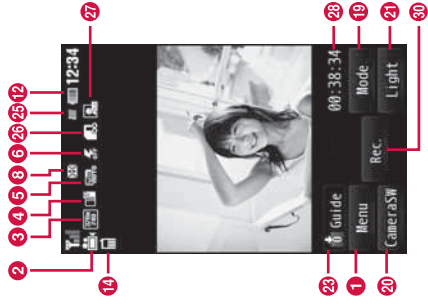
Note

- Photo light turns orange or blinks when capturing a still image/moving picture.
- The light can only be used for the Outer camera.

Capture Screen Components

The meanings of marks (icons and others) on the Still image/Moving picture capture screen are as follows:

























Moving picture capture screen
(vertical capture mode)

- 1 Menu
- 2 Camera-mode P.223, P.228
 - Photo-mode
 - Movie-mode
 - Funny face shot
- 3 Image size P.232, P.233
 - 5.1M (2560 x 1920)
 - 3M (2048 x 1536)
 - 2M (1600 x 1200)
 - 1M (1280 x 960)
 - VGA (640 x 480) (Outer camera)
 - VGA (480 x 640) (Inner camera)
 - CIF (352 x 288)
 - QVGA (320 x 240)

- QCIF (176 x 144)
- Sub-QCIF (128 x 96)
- Wallpaper (800 x 480)
 - Numbers in parentheses of still image files indicate as in horizontal capture mode. The right and left numbers switch when capturing in vertical capture mode.
- 4 Quality P.233, P.234
 - Super fine
 - Fine
 - Normal
- 5 White balance
 - Auto
 - Incandescent
 - Sunny
 - Fluorescent
 - Cloudy
- 6 Light P.222, P.227
 - OFF
 - When capturing
 - Always ON
 - AUTO
- 7 Shake reduction
 - ON
- 8 Receiving mail P.34
- 9 Continuous mode P.232
 - Auto
 - Manual
- 10 Scene mode P.232
 - Auto
 - Night scene
 - Set this mode when capturing in a dark place, etc.
 - Portrait
 - Landscape
 - Sports
 - Sunset

- 11 Macro P 233
 ON
- 12 Battery level P 50
- 13 Auto timer P 232
 3sec  10sec  15sec
- 14 Memory in use P 233, P 234
 Handset memory
 External memory (microSD card)
- 15 Number of available shots P 448, P 469
- 16 Focus frame P 225
The frame color changes to indicate status when the Auto focus is in operation.
- 17 Zoom bar P 230
- 18 Exit key
Return to the previous screen.
- 19 Camera-mode
 Photo-mode
 Movie-mode
 Bar code reader
 Funny face shot
 Album
- 20 CameraSW P 223, P 227
- 21 Light
 OFF
 When capturing
 Always ON
 AUTO
- 22 Brightness P 231
- 23 Display key operation guide
- 24 Capturing P 223

- 25 Task status P 34
- 26 Size restriction P 234
 No restriction  For mail long  For mail short
- 27 Type P 234
 Sound+ Video  Movie only  Sound only
- 28 Total recordable time
- 29 Start recording button P 227
- 30 Recording P 228

Note

- In horizontal capture mode, items 1, 7 to 22, 28, and 29 disappear in approximately 3 seconds after the Still image capture screen/Moving picture capture screen is displayed. Touch the screen to display.

Save Format of Still Images and Moving Pictures

File format	Still image file	Moving picture file
JPEG		MP4 (Mobile MP4)
Resolution*	Outer camera 5.1M (2560 x 1920) 3M (2048 x 1536) 2M (1600 x 1200) 1M (1280 x 960) VGA (640 x 480) CIF (352 x 288) QVGA (320 x 240) QCIF (176 x 144) Sub-QCIF (128 x 96) Wallpaper (800 x 480)	QVGA (320 x 240) QCIF (176 x 144) Sub-QCIF (128 x 96)
Inner camera	VGA (480 x 640) CIF (352 x 288) QVGA (320 x 240) QCIF (176 x 144) Sub-QCIF (128 x 96)	QVGA (320 x 240) QCIF (176 x 144) Sub-QCIF (128 x 96)
Encoding Format	-	Video: MPEG-4 Sound: AMR
File Extension	.jpg	.3gp

* Numbers in parentheses of still image files indicate as in horizontal capture mode. The right and left numbers switch when capturing in vertical capture mode.

Display name of the file	Still image file	Moving picture file
	The year, month, date, hour, and minute at the time of capture are added automatically. Example: If taken at 10:10:10 on 2009/8/1 Photo-mode: "P2009_0801_101010" Movie-mode: "V2009_0801_1010_X" (X is a sequential number) * If memory in use is "External memory" (microSD card) and type is "Sound+Video" or "Movie only", the file is named as "MOLXXX" (XXX is a sequential number). If the type is "Sound only", the file is named as "MMFXXXX" (XXXX is a sequential number).	
Maximum file size	Approx. 5.1MB	QCIF: Approx. 58MB

Photo-mode

Capturing Still Images

- Captured still images are saved in the "Camera" folder in "My picture" of "Data Box" on the FOMA terminal. To change the saving destination to a microSD card, set in "Memory in use" (p233).

Stand-by display



Still image capture screen

■ Touch/Key operations on the Still image capture screen (horizontal capture mode)

Operation	Description
	Shutter
Zoom bar, /	Zoom
"Menu"	Display setting menu
	Exit Photo-mode
	Change Camera-mode
	Switch between the Inner camera and the Outer camera
	Set lighting condition
	Display the Brightness adjustment bar

■ Key operations on the Still image capture screen (vertical capture mode)

Operation	Description
[Take],	Shutter
, /	Zoom
	Adjust brightness
1, [Mode]	Change Camera-mode
[Menu]	Display setting menu
[Light]	Set lighting condition
	Exit Photo-mode
[CameraSW]	Switch between the Inner camera and the Outer camera
	Display key operation guide
	Select size P.232
	Shot mode P.232
	Scene mode P.232

Operation	Description
	E ect P.232
	White balance P.232
	Funny face shot P.226
	Macro P.233
	Auto timer P.233
	Memory in use P.233
	Display captured images in "My picture" of "Data Box"
	Auto focus P.233

2 Point the camera to a subject

The shutter tone sounds and the still image is captured.
The Confirm save screen appears, and you can select whether to save the image.



Confirm save screen (Ex.: Outer camera)

■ Touch operations on the Still image confirm save screen (horizontal capture mode)

Operation	Description
	Create an i-mode mail with captured image attached
*2	Return to the Still image capture screen without saving the captured image
	Save the captured image
	Save and upload the captured image to Picasa
*1	Save the captured image as a mirror image
*1	Check the captured image by switching to normal/mirror image
*2	Save all continuous pictures captured
*2	Delete the selected image

*1 Appear only with the Inner camera.

*2 Appear only in the Continuous mode.

■ Key operations on the Still image confirm save screen (vertical capture mode)

Operation	Description
[Picasa]	Save and upload the captured image to Picasa
[Mail]	Create an i-mode mail with captured image attached
[Save]	Save the captured image
[New]*2	Return to the Still image capture screen without saving the captured image
[Menu]*1	<Save mirror image> Save the captured image as a mirror image <View normal image> Check the captured image by switching to normal image
[Save all]*2	Save all continuous pictures captured

Operation	Description
[Delete]*2	Delete the selected image

*1 Appear only with the Inner camera.

*2 Appear only in the Continuous mode.

3







The captured image is automatically saved in the destination specified under "Memory in use" (P2.33) and the Complete save screen will be displayed.

- When using the Inner camera, images on the capture screen and the Confirm save screen are displayed as a mirror image, however, the image will be saved as a normal image. To save the image as a mirror image, set "Auto Saving" to "OFF" and touch on the Confirm save screen.


■ Touch/Key operations on the Still image complete save screen (horizontal capture mode)

Operation	Description
	Create an i-mode mail with captured image attached
[Picasa]	Return to the Still image capture screen
	Set the captured image as wallpaper, etc. to the Stand-by display
	Edit the captured image
	Delete the captured image
	Upload the captured image to Picasa

■ Key operations on the Still image complete save screen (vertical capture mode)

Operation	Description
 [Picasa]	Upload the captured image to Picasa
 [Mail]	Create an i-mode mail with captured image attached
 [New]	Return to the Still image capture screen
 [Menu]	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <Use as> Set the captured image as wallpaper, etc. to the Stand-by display <Edit> Edit the captured image <Delete > Delete the captured image <Album> Display captured images in "My picture" of "Data Box"


Auto focus

When you capture images with the Outer camera, Auto focus operates and the subject in the center of the screen can be automatically focused on. When  is pressed on the Still image capture screen, auto adjustment starts, then the focus frame turns red. The focus frame turns green when focused, and shutter clicks.

For images captured with "Continuous mode"

- The captured image is displayed on the left side and the touched image is displayed in the center of the screen.
- To save all captured images, touch .
- To select and send images via mail, touch images to send .
- To select and delete images, touch images to delete .

When "Auto Saving" (P233) is set to "ON"

Pressing  captures a still image and automatically saves it in the destination specified under "Memory in use". (P233)
After the Complete save screen appears, the Still image capture screen returns. However, in the Continuous mode, the screen that notifies of saving appears instead.

Note

- Even when Manner mode is activated, the shutter tone sounds when capturing.
- If capturing with "Select size" set to "5.1M (2560 x 1920)" or capturing using the inner camera, the zoom feature cannot be used.
- <Picasa>
- The FOMA terminal connects to the Picasa site. Log in the site and upload files by mail attachment. The captured image is retained up to the compose message screen for uploading so make sure the receiver's address.
- A file of more than 2MB cannot be uploaded.
- For details, visit Picasa site (<http://picasa.google.co.jp/>) via PC, etc.

Panorama Shot




You can create a panoramic image from 3 captured still images taken by moving the FOMA terminal rightward.

- This option is available when the image size is "VGA (640 x 840)" to "Sub-QCIF (128 x 96)".
- This option is not available for the Inner camera.

- 1 Stand-by display 
- 2 "Menu" "Preview" "Shot mode" "Panorama shot"




Indicate where the current frame is

- 3 
- 4 Move the FOMA terminal rightward 
- 5 Move the FOMA terminal rightward 

A panoramic image made up of the 3 images is displayed.

- 6 


Note

- The right edge of the previously taken image is displayed at the left edge of the current capture screen, helping you to frame for the next shot.
- Touching  while capturing starts over capturing.

Funny Face Shot

If you point the camera to a subject, the camera recognizes faces and you can convert them into various funny faces.

- About image size, you can select for the inner camera from "VGA (480 x 640)" to "QVGA(320 x 240)", for the Outer camera from "Wallpaper (800 x 480)" to "QVGA (320 x 240)".

- 1 Stand-by display  (Camera-mode)

"Funny face shot"

- 2 Select a funny face type

■ Funny face type

Type	Description
(OFF)	Cancel Funny face shot mode.
(Bighead)	Change shape of head as enlarged.
(Mosaic)	Apply mosaic to face.
(Animal mask)	If this type is selected, animal mask type is displayed. Select a mask type to cover face with the selected animal mask.
(Snow)	Apply effect as if the snow is falling on the entire image.
(Monotone)	Apply black-and-white effect.
(Facial color)	Apply effect to make face look like beautiful skin.
(Outfocus)	Blur face outline.
(Radialblur)	Blur face outline radially.
(Fisheye)	Apply effect as if captured with Fisheye lens.
(Concave)	Apply face to look shrunk.

3 Point the camera to the subject

Once your face is recognized, the effect is displayed on the screen.

4

Movie-mode

Capturing Moving Pictures

- Captured moving pictures are saved in the "Camera" folder in "i-motion" of "Data Box" on the FOMA terminal. To change the saving destination to a microSD card, set in "Memory in use" (P234).

1 Stand-by display (Camera-mode)
"Movie-mode"



Moving picture capture screen

2 Touch/Key operations on the Moving picture capture screen (horizontal capture mode)

Operation	Description
	Start recording
Zoom bar.	Zoom (available while capturing)
"Menu"	Display setting menu
	Exit Movie-mode
	Change Camera-mode
	Switch between the Inner camera and the Outer camera
(Brightness)	Display the Brightness adjustment bar
(Light)	Set lighting condition

■ Key operations on the Moving picture capture screen (vertical capture mode)

Key	Description
[Rec.]	Start recording
,	Zoom (available while capturing)
	Adjust brightness
[Mode]	Change Camera-mode
[Menu]	Display setting menu
[Light]	Set lighting condition
	Exit Movie-mode
[CameraSW]	Switch between the Inner camera and the Outer camera
	Display the key operation guide
	Select size P.233
	Auto Saving P.234
	Video quality P.234
	E ect P.233
	White balance P.234
	Type P.234
	Common mode P.234
	Flicker tuning P.234
	Memory in use P.234
	Display captured images in "My picture" of "Data Box"

2 Point the camera to the subject

The tone sounds and capturing moving picture starts.

- / : Pause/resume the recording.
- * Pause is not available when "Type" is "Sound only".



Capturing moving picture screen

■ Key operations while capturing moving pictures (vertical capture mode)

Operation	Description
[Menu] [Pause]	Pause/Resume capturing
[Stop]	Stop capturing
[Cancel]	Cancel capturing

3

The tone sounds and capturing moving picture ends. The photo light turns o . After a moving picture is captured, the Confirm save screen appears, and you can select whether to save the moving picture.



Confirm save screen

■ Touch operations on the Moving picture confirm save screen (horizontal capture mode)

Operation	Description
	Create an i-mode mail with captured moving picture attached
"New"	Return to the Moving picture capture screen without saving the captured moving picture
	Preview the captured moving picture
	Save the captured moving picture
"YouTube"	Save and upload the captured moving picture to YouTube

■ Key operations on the Moving picture confirm save screen (vertical capture mode)

Operation	Description
[Save]	Save the captured moving picture
[Play]	Preview the captured moving picture
[YouTube]	Save and upload the captured moving picture to YouTube
[Mail]	Create an i-mode mail with captured moving picture attached
	Return to the Moving picture capture screen without saving the captured moving picture

4

The captured moving picture is automatically saved in the save location specified under "Memory in use" (P234) and the Complete save screen appears.

- When using the inner camera, images on the capture screen are displayed as a mirror image, however, images will be saved as a normal image.



Complete save screen

■ Touch/Key operations on the Moving picture complete save screen (horizontal capture mode)

Operation	Description
	Create an i-mode mail with captured moving picture attached
"New"	Return to the Moving picture capture screen
	Preview the captured moving picture
	Set the captured moving picture as wallpaper, etc. to the Stand-by display
	Delete the captured moving picture
"YouTube"	Upload the captured moving picture to YouTube

■ Key operations on the Moving picture complete save screen (vertical capture mode)

Operation	Description
[New]	Return to the Moving picture capture screen
[Use as]	Set the captured moving picture as wallpaper, etc. to the Stand-by display
[Delete]	Delete the captured moving picture
[YouTube]	Save and upload the captured moving picture to YouTube
[Mail]	Create an i-mode mail with captured moving picture attached

■ When "Auto Saving" (P234) is set to "On"

Pressing stops the recording and automatically saves it in the destination specified under "Memory in use" (P234). The Complete save screen appears and the Moving picture capture screen returns.

Note

- Even when Manner mode is activated, the shutter tone sounds when capturing starts and ends.
- Moving picture capturing will be terminated when it is interrupted by a call arrival. After the call is terminated, the Confirm save screen appears, and you can save the moving picture recorded until the interruption.
- Playing moving pictures on a PC. P.47
- <YouTube>
- The FOMA terminal connects to the YouTube site. Upload files by mail attachment. The captured moving picture is retained up to the compose message screen for uploading so make sure the receiver's address.
- A file of more than 2MB cannot be uploaded.
- For details, visit YouTube site (<http://www.youtube.com/>) via PC, etc.

Changing Settings for Shooting




Set the Camera functions according to the capturing conditions.

Using Zoom

Set the image zoom magnification.

- When capturing a still image, if capturing with "Select size" set to "5.1M (2560 1920)" or capturing using the inner camera, the zoom feature cannot be used.

Still image capture screen (P.222)/Moving picture capture screen (P.227) Slide the Zoom bar to adjust zoom magnification

- Move the Zoom bar pressing  or , or with your finger touching the touch panel.
- For vertical capture mode, using  also slides the zoom bar.



Zoom bar

Zoom setting

(Ex.: Still image capture screen)

■ Outer camera maximum magnification

Camera -mode	Image size*	Zoom	Maximum magnification
Photo-mode	5.1M (2560 x 1920)	-	-
	3M (2048 x 1536)		Approx. 1.2 times
	2M (1600 x 1200)		Approx. 1.6 times
	1M (1280 x 960)		
	VGA (640 x 480)		
	CIF (352 x 288)		Approx. 2.0 times
Movie-mode	QVGA (320 x 240)	10 steps	
	QCIF (176 x 144)		
	Sub-QCIF (128 x 96)		
	Wallpaper (800 x 480)		
	QVGA (320 x 240)		
Movie-mode	QCIF (176 x 144)		
	Sub-QCIF (128 x 96)		
	Sub-QCIF (128 x 96)		

* Numbers in parentheses indicate as in horizontal capture mode. The right and left numbers switch when capturing in vertical capture mode.

■ Outer camera maximum magnification

Camera -mode	Image size*	Zoom	Maximum magnification
Movie-mode	QVGA (320 x 240)	10 steps	Approx. 2.0 times
	QCIF (176 x 144)		
	Sub-QCIF (128 x 96)		

* Numbers in parentheses indicate as in horizontal capture mode. The right and left numbers switch when capturing in vertical capture mode.

Adjusting Brightness



Adjust the image brightness (exposure). You can adjust brightness in 9 steps.

1 Still image capture screen (P222)/Moving picture capture screen (P227)

2 Display the Brightness adjustment bar


- Horizontal capture mode
Touch .
- Vertical capture mode
Press .

3 Slide the Brightness adjustment bar to adjust brightness

- Move the Brightness adjustment bar with your finger touching the touch panel.
In horizontal capture mode, pressing  or  also allows to slide.



Brightness setting
(Ex.: Still image capture screen)

- For vertical capture mode, using  also slides the brightness adjustment bar.

Brightness adjustment bar


Setting Auto Timer

Set the number of seconds from the time the shutter is pressed until an image is captured.

- The Auto timer is not available for moving picture capturing.

1 Still image capture screen (P222) "Menu" "Preview" "Auto timer"

2 "3sec"/"10sec"/"15sec"

 (the number indicates the number of seconds) appears at the top of the screen.

- To release Auto timer, set to "OFF".

3 

Auto timer starts. An image is captured automatically after the set number of seconds.

After the shutter key is pressed, photo light blinks in orange and the timer sound rings until the image is captured.

Camera settings

Changing Camera Settings

Still Image Capture Screen Setting Menu

1 Still image capture screen (P222) "Menu" "Preview"/"Others" Perform the following operations

[Select size]

Set the image size to capture.

[Shot mode]

Normal : Capture one still image.

Continuous mode : Press the shutter key to capture images continuously.

- You can capture up to 6 continuous images smaller than "CIF (352 x 288)", or up to 4 images of "CIF (352 x 288)".

- When "Auto" is selected, you can capture continuous images by pressing the shutter key once. When "Manual" is selected, you can capture continuous images by pressing the shutter key repeatedly.

Shoot with frame : Add a frame to the subject when capturing an image. Select a frame from "My picture".

Move the cursor to a folder [Open]

Select a frame

Panorama shot* : Capture a panoramic image. P226

[Scene mode]

Capture a still image suitable for the capturing conditions.

[Effect]

Add an effect when capturing a still image.

[White balance]

Set hue/tint for the image. When set according to the capturing conditions, a naturally colored image can be produced.

[Macro]

Set close-up capturing.

- Become focused when distance between the Camera and subject is approximately 10cm.

[Auto timer]

Select the number of seconds from the time the shutter is pressed until an image is captured.

[Image quality]

Select the image quality used when saving the still image.

[Auto Saving]

Set whether to save the still image automatically.

[Memory in use]

Set the save location for the still image.

[Shake reduction]

Set whether to enable the shake reduction function.

[Auto focus]

Set the Auto focus.

- When "Face tracking" is selected, a face is recognized and focused automatically. Up to 3 faces can be detected.

[Shutter sound]

Set the shutter tone.

[Flicker tuning]

The flicker on the screen under a fluorescent light, etc. may be reduced.

Auto : Suppress the flicker automatically.

50Hz : Select this option in an area where the frequency of the power is 50Hz.

60Hz : Select this option in an area where the frequency of the power is 60Hz.

[Reset settings]

Restore the still image capture settings to default.

- * Not available for the Inner camera.


Note

<Continuous mode>

- This option is available when the image size is "CIF (352 x 288)" or smaller.

- When "Auto" is selected, the Outer camera captures at intervals of approximately 0.7 seconds, and the Inner camera at intervals of approximately 0.2 seconds.


- When "Continuous mode" is set, "Auto timer" is disabled.

- If you press  while capturing, you can end capturing and the Confirm save screen appears.

<Shoot with frame>

- This option is available when the image size is "CIF (352 x 288)" to "Sub-OCIF (128 x 96)" and "Wallpaper (800 x 480)" (Available only for the Outer camera).

<Auto focus>

- When "Manual" is selected, the focus adjustment bar appears on the Still image capture screen in horizontal capture mode. Move the bar with your finger touching the touch panel. When capturing in vertical capture mode, use  to display/adjust the focus adjustment bar.

Moving Picture Capture Screen Setting Menu

1 Moving picture capture screen (P227)

"Menu" "Preview"/"Others" Perform the following operations

[Select size]

Set the moving picture size to capture.

[Effect]

Add an effect when capturing moving pictures.

[White balance]

Set hue/tint for the image. When set according to the capturing conditions, a naturally colored moving picture can be produced.

[Video quality]

Set the image quality used when saving the moving picture.

[Size restriction]

Restrict the file size of a moving picture.

[Memory in use]

Set the save location for a moving picture.

[Auto Saving]

Set whether to save the moving picture automatically.

[Type]

Set whether video and sound are to be included in a moving picture.

[Common mode]

Set file size suitable for attaching to i-mode mail (up to 500KB).

- If set to "On", you can select image size from "QCIF (1.76 x 1.44)" or "Sub-QCIF (1.28 x 0.96)" and the image quality is set to "Super fine" and the Size restriction is set to "For mail short".

[Flicker tuning]

The flicker on the screen under a fluorescent light, etc. may be reduced.

Auto : Suppress the flicker automatically.

5.0Hz : Select this option in the location where the frequency of the power is 50Hz.

6.0Hz : Select this option in the location where the frequency of the power is 60Hz.

[Reset settings]

Restore the moving picture capture settings to default.

Note

<Flicker tuning>

- If you record the moving picture in the size of "QVGA (320 x 240)" in a room where 50Hz fluorescent light is used, flicker may not be reduced.

Bar code reader

Using Bar Code Reader

You can scan information embedded in a JAN code or QR code using the Outer camera. You can create i-mode mail or connect to the Internet using the scanned information. You can also save or play the scanned information, image or melody.

- UP to 5 pieces of scanned information can be saved.
- Scan the code when the entire code is displayed on the screen.
- Hold the camera parallel to the code.

■ JAN codes

JAN code is a bar code representing numbers using vertical bars in different thickness and spaces. 8-digit (JAN8) or 13-digit (JAN13) bar code can be scanned.

- The scanned result of the following JAN code is "4942857123456".



■ QR codes

QR code is one of the 2 dimensional codes that express text including alphanumeric characters, Kanji, Kana, or pictographs in the vertical and horizontal patterns. Some QR codes have an image or melody embedded, and some are split QR codes where multiple images contain 1 larger piece of information.

- The scanned result of the following QR code is "株式会社NTTドコモ (NTT DOCOMO, INC.)."



Scanning Codes

- When scanning bar cords, use the Outer camera and hold the FOMA terminal approximately 10cm away from the code to scan.

1 "LifeKit" "Bar code reader"



■ Key operations on the Scan screen

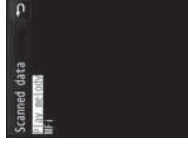
Operation	Description
[Scan]	Start Auto focus
[Mode]	Change Camera-mode
[List]	List the saved scanned data
[Light]	Light ON/OFF
[Back]	Exit Bar code reader

2 Display the code to scan within the screen

[Scan]

After the auto focusing, scan the code. When scanning completes, a tone sounds and the scanned data appears.

- When the bar code reader is activated, scanning starts automatically. When focused, scan the code automatically without pressing [Scan].
- If you can not scan the code with auto focus, press [Retry] to scan the code again.
- When Manner mode is activated, the tone does not sound.



3 Depending on the type of scanned data, performs the following operations

- Depending on the scanned data, the screen or operation may differ.
- Always save the scanned data if you want to use it later.
- Up to 16 split QR codes can be continuously scanned and combined. P237

- For phone number
Select the displayed phone number to open the Phone number entry screen with the scanned phone number already entered.
If "Add to phonebook", etc. appears, select it to save to the Phonebook.
- For mail address
Select the displayed mail address to create i-mode mail with the scanned mail address already entered.
If "Compose message", etc. appears, select it to create i-mode mail with the scanned mail address or subject already entered.
If "Add to phonebook", etc. appears, select it to save to the Phonebook.
- For URL
Select the displayed URL to access the URL.
If "Add bookmark", etc. appears, select it to save as Bookmark.
- For text
The scanned characters are displayed.
- For image
The scanned image is displayed.
- For melody
Press [Play] to play the scanned melody.
If you press [Stop] during a playback, the melody stops.
- For i- ppli
If "Start iappli", etc. appears, select it to launch.

Note

<Common functions>

- Bar codes other than JAN codes, QR codes, and 2 dimensional codes cannot be scanned.
 - Bar codes may not be correctly scanned because of scratch, smudge, damage, printing quality, or reflection of light.
 - Some codes may not be scanned depending on the type, size, or QR code version.
 - If trying to save more than 5 pieces of data, a confirmation asking whether to delete older data first appears. To save the new data, select "Yes" select data to delete select "Yes".
 - If Bar code reader cannot scan the code within approximately 30 seconds after being activated, a message indicating that scanning failed appears. If the Bar code reader cannot scan the code after a certain period of time, it automatically terminates.
- <Compose message>
- If the address has invalid characters, nothing is entered in the address.
- <Make call>
- Valid characters are numbers and symbols [#, *, +, -, , P, (, and)]; if the phone number contains characters other than these, the call cannot be made.
- <Start i- ppli>
- If "Barcode i- ppli To" (P283) is not set, you cannot start an i- ppli from scanned data.

Scanned Data Screen Sub Menu

- Displayed items vary depending on the type of scanned data.

1 Scanned data screen (P235) [Menu] Perform the following operations

[Copy]
Copy selected URL, phone number, or address on the scanned result screen.

[Play]
Play the scanned data.

[Save to list]
Save the scanned data in a list.


[Save to Databox]
Save the scanned image or melody to "Data Box".

[Add to phonebook]
Save the scanned name, phone number, URL, or mail address to phonebook.

[Add bookmark]
Save the scanned URL to "Bookmark".

[Retry]
Scan the code again.

Scanning split QR codes

- 1 Perform Steps 1 and 2 in "Scanning Codes" (P235)
 - 2 After the message "Scan next bar code" appears, scan the next code
 - 3 Repeat Step 2
- Press  [Retry] to readjust the Auto focus.

File name of the scanned data

The scanned data is automatically named using the year, month, date, hour, and minute. The file cannot be renamed.

Example: If taken at 10:10 on 2009/8/1

JAN code:




"P2009_0801_1010_X_JAN" (X is a sequential number)

QR code:

"P2009_0801_1010_X.QR" (X is a sequential number)

Using/Deleting Saved Data

1 Scan screen (P235) [List]

- To activate scan screen
Press  [Menu] "Scan".
- To delete 1 item of saved scanned data
Move the cursor to data to delete  [Menu]
"Delete one" "Yes".
- To delete all saved scanned data
Press  [Menu] "Delete all" enter the Terminal security code "Yes".

2 Select the scanned data

For further operations, refer to Step 3 in "Scanning Codes" (P235) depending on the type of data.



1 Seg

1 Seg	240
Before Using 1 Seg	242
Setting Channels	Channel settings 243
Watching 1 Seg	Activate 1 Seg 245
Using i- ppli Program Guide	Program guide 248
Setting Timer for Watching 1 Seg Program	TV timer list 248
Using Data Broadcasting	Data broadcasting 250
Using TVlink	TVlink 251
Setting 1 Seg	1 Seg settings 252

1Seg

1Seg is a digital terrestrial broadcasting service for mobile devices and provides data broadcasting as well as video and sound broadcasting. Use i-mode to acquire the detail information on TV programs, join panel shows, or enjoy TV shopping.

- For details about "1Seg" service, visit the web site below.
The Association for Promotion of Digital Broadcasting
PC: <http://www.dpa.or.jp/english/>
i-mode: <http://www.dpa.or.jp/1seg/k/> (Japanese only)

Using 1Seg

- 1Seg is a service provided by TV broadcasters (broadcast stations). Communication charge does not apply to receive video and sound. For viewing fee of NHK, contact NHK.
- The information displayed on a data broadcasting domain has 2 types: "data broadcasting" and "data broadcasting site". "Data broadcasting" is displayed on broadcast wave together with video and sound, and "data broadcasting site" is accessed by connecting to a site provided by TV broadcasters (broadcast stations) from data broadcasting information. And it may be connected to "i-mode site". Accessing to a site requires a separate i-mode subscription.
- Packet communication charges apply to view a "data broadcasting site" or "i-mode site". Some sites (fee-based i-mode sites) require an information fee for use.

About Signal

1Seg is one of the broadcasting services, and receives a signal (broadcast wave) different from FOMA service. Therefore, regardless of whether the FOMA terminal is in/out of service area, you cannot receive 1Seg broadcasting in place the signal cannot reach or during the hours the broadcasting is out of service.

Also, in the following places, the signal status may become weak or the signal may not be received even if the FOMA terminal is within a digital terrestrial broadcasting service area.

- Place that is far from the tower which sends the broadcast wave
- Place where the signal is interrupted due to the landscape or buildings such as mountain areas or behind a building
- Place where the signal is weak or does not reach such as a tunnel, basement, or recess of a building

To improve the reception status, fully extend the 1Seg antenna. Changing the direction of antenna, holding the FOMA terminal apart from or close to your body or moving to another place may also improve the reception status.

Display when Using 1Seg for the First Time

When 1Seg is activated for the first time after purchase, a confirmation of disclaimer appears. Confirm each term and press [OK]. After this, the confirmation does not appear.

About Broadcast Storage Area

Broadcast storage area is a storage area in the terminal specific for 1Seg. Information you entered following the data broadcasting instruction is stored on the broadcast storage area based on the TV broadcasters (broadcast stations) setting. The stored information may include personal data such as your answer results of quizzes, membership number, gender, age, and occupation. The saved information may be displayed on a data broadcasting site when viewing, or may be sent to the TV broadcasters (broadcast stations) without you re-entering it.

- To erase broadcast storage area P252
- When you replaced or removed the UIM, a confirmation asking whether to initialize the broadcast storage area appears. Select "Yes" to initialize the broadcast storage area. Selecting "No" disables services using the broadcast storage area.

Display when reading the broadcast storage area

If you use the information saved in the broadcast storage area while watching a program, a confirmation "Use saved information? It may include information used by the same broadcasting group" appears. Select "Yes" to disable the subsequent confirmation on reading the saved information performed while watching the same program. Select "Yes (permanently)" to disable the subsequent confirmation on any program.

Before Using 1 Seg

Procedures for Watching 1 Seg

Example: When watching 1 Seg for the first time

Step 1 : Channel settings P243

Save channel lists corresponding to your area.

Step 2 : Activate 1 Seg P245

Save channel lists corresponding to your area.

1 Seg Antenna

Fully extend the 1 Seg antenna when watching 1 Seg.

■ To extend the 1 Seg antenna

- ① Pinch the head of the 1 Seg antenna **1**, and pull it out in the direction of the arrow **2**
- ② Fully extend the 1 Seg antenna

- ③ Hold the lower part of the 1 Seg antenna to change direction
 - Forcibly trying to change the direction of the 1 Seg antenna could deform or damage it.

■ To put the 1 Seg antenna back

- ① Hold the lower part of the 1 Seg antenna and pull it down straight
 - Forcibly trying to put the 1 Seg antenna in could deform or damage it.
- ② Rotate the head of the 1 Seg antenna to fit the depression

Receiving a Call or Message while Watching 1Seg

While watching 1Seg, the FOMA terminal suspends 1Seg program when following events occur. After the other task is terminated, the FOMA terminal resumes the 1Seg program.

- The operations suspended with sound and video are the following:
 - Receiving a voice/video phone call
 - Receiving mail/SMS (when "Receiving display" is set to "Alarm mode")
 - Sounding an Alarm, or alarms set for Schedule event, To do task, or Booked program

Note

- If 1Seg is used for a long time while charging, the battery life may become shorter than estimated.
- Put the 1Seg antenna back in when 1Seg is not used.

Channel settings

Setting Channels

Configuration of Channel settings beforehand to save a channel list is required to watch 1Seg.

- Up to 10 channel list items can be saved. If you set a channel list for other areas where you visit, you can watch the local TV program there.
- Up to 62 channels can be saved in 1 channel list.

1 "1Seg" "Channel settings"

2 If there is no channel list saved

The New channel creation screen appears.

If there is more than 1 channel list is saved


3 Move the cursor to "Not registered"

 [Menu] "Add new"

3 Perform the following operations

[Select area]


Select an area from area list registered in the FOMA terminal.


Select a region to register Select a prefecture  [Select] "Yes"

[Auto channel set]

Automatically set channels which can be received in your area.

"Yes"  [Save] "Yes"

To cancel press  [Cancel] "Yes".

Press  [Retry] before saving to retry the setting.

Note

- "Select area" may not be configured properly depending on your area. In this case, perform "Auto channel set".
- Make sure to perform the setting of "Auto channel set" within a digital terrestrial broadcasting service area.

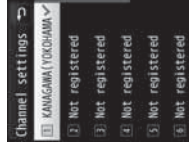
Selecting a Channel List to Use

When multiple channel lists are saved, switch channel lists to be used from those saved.

1 [MENU] "1 Seg" "Channel settings"

The channel list in use is marked.

- [Detail]: Display the detail screen of the selected channel list.



2 Select a channel list to use

Channel List Screen Sub Menu

1 Channel list screen (P244) Move the cursor to a channel list [MENU] [Menu] Perform the following operations

[Add new]

Add a channel to the selected channel list. P.243

[Detail]

Display the detail screen of the selected channel list.

[Rename]

Change name of the selected channel list.

[Delete]

Delete the selected channel list.

- Currently used channel list cannot be deleted.

[Delete all]

Delete the all channel lists.

Enter the Terminal security code "Yes"

Channel List Detail Screen Sub Menu

1 Channel list screen (P244) Move the cursor to a channel list [MENU] [Detail] [Menu]

- [Watch]: Display the selected channel.

2 Perform the following operations

[Replace remote no.]

Replace the remote controller number of the selected channel.

Select a channel to change Select a new remote controller number. "Yes"

- If a destination number has a channel saved, the channel is replaced with the target channel.

[Delete]

Delete the selected channel.

Activate 1Seg

Watching 1Seg

- Perform channel settings before watching 1Seg. P.243

1

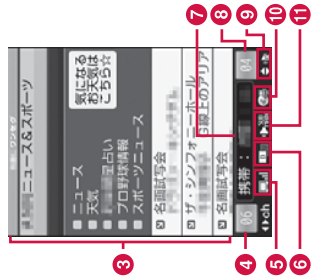
(for 1 + seconds)

- The confirmation of disclaimer is displayed only at the first time. Read through the agreement and press [OK].
- To terminate 1Seg, select "Yes".

1Seg Watch Screen Components



1Seg watch screen
(Vertical screen)



Data broadcasting
(Full screen)



1Seg watch screen
(Horizontal screen (Standard))

1 Video

- Touch here to display Volume adjustment and Channel selection icons.

2 Subtitles

3 Data broadcasting

4 Remote control no.

5 Strength of broadcast wave



Strong ← Weak

6 Operation mode

7 TV : Data broadcasting

8 Channel name and program name

9 Volume

10 : Mute

11 In Multiple sound broadcasting

Main/Sub sound display

: Main+Sub sound : Main sound

: Sub sound

■ Key operations on the 1Seg screen

Operation		Description
TV (Vertical)	TV (Horizontal)	Data broadcasting
		-
		Adjust volume
		Mute
		Select a channel
Dial key,		-
		Search receivable channels P246
-		Show/hide program name, etc.
		Switch vertical/horizontal (Standard)/horizontal (Full screen)
		Switch TV and data broadcasting
-		Select a data broadcasting item
		Switch normal screen/full screen of data broadcasting
		Display program guide
		Terminate 1Seg

* Turn to in Turn View Style mode.

Note

- You can activate 1 Seg from a link of 1 Seg information displayed in a site or mail (Media To, P196)
- Intermittent sound or image may be heard or seen due to broadcast wave receptions. Also, a block-shaped noise may be displayed or the image may not be displayed.
- The screen orientation automatically switches to horizontal by tilting the FOMA terminal to the left.
- Placing the position of the FOMA terminal in horizontal direction while data broadcasting is displayed, only video is displayed.

Searching Available Channels <Channel Search>

Search available channels in order of frequency and display them.

1 Seg watch screen (P245) (for 1 + seconds in vertical), (for 1 + seconds in horizontal)

Display available channels if any [Menu] select "Add to channel list" to add to the channel list.

- To cancel the channel search Press [Cancel]/ "Yes".

Note

- When "Tuning..." is displayed for a long time in an area where broadcast wave is weak, the channel search allows you to search available channels.
- When moving to other area, the terminal may receive a channel which is not saved in the Channel settings.

1Seg Watch Screen Sub Menu

1Seg watch screen (P245) [Menu] Perform the following operations

[Channel settings]

Display the Channel list screen. P.244

[TV/link]

Display a TVlink list.

[DBC]

Make data broadcasting setting.

Image display : Set Image display ON/OFF.

Effect sound : This option is not available.

Certificate info : Display certificate at SSL communication.

Reload : Reload and display image.

Back to DBC : Return to data broadcasting.

[Switch TV/DBC]

Switch TV and data broadcasting.

[Display settings]

Set the display of the screen.

TV disp. Mode : Set the display of the screen.

DBC disp. Mode : Set the display of the data broadcasting.

Subtitles

- Switch subtitle ON/OFF.
- Even if set to ON, subtitle may not be displayed depending on a program.

Backlight

- Set the backlight level of the display.

[Sound settings]

Set sound.

Mute(Unmute) : Mute/unmute the sound.

Main/Sub sound : Set main/sub sound.

Switch sound : Change the sound of multi sound broadcasting program.

[Program guide]

Display program guide. P.248

[Recom. channel mail]

You can create a mail with the channel information you are watching. If the destination FOMA terminal supports Media To function, the information can be selected to activate 1 Seg.

[Add to channel list]

Add the currently watching channel to the channel list. P.246

[Select service]

You can switch programs if these programs are in the same channel.

[Program info.]


Display the detail information about the program you are watching.

Program guide


Using i- ppli Program Guide

By using i- ppli Program guide, you can select a program from the program guide to start 1Seg or set timer for starting 1Seg.

1 "1Seg" "Program guide"

Press  [TV] to watch the program which is being broadcast on the selected channel.
For further operations, refer to "Gガイド番組表リモコン (G-GUIDE Program List Remote Controller)" (P283).

Note

- Pressing  on the 1Seg watch screen (in vertical) also displays program guide.
- You can set i- ppli Program guide in "Program guide key setting" in "Software set" P278

TV timer list

Setting Timer for Watching 1Seg Program

Setting Timer to Start a 1Seg Program

Set "Announce on" to notify you of a program start by alarm 1 minute before the program starts.

- You can set or view timer from Schedule (P353).
- Up to 20 entries can be set.




"1Seg" "TV timer list"



TV timer list screen

2 Perform the following operations

-  [New] Perform the following operations.

 (Set date)

Specify the booking date.

 (Set time)

Specify the start time of the booking program.

 (Channel)

Select a channel.

 Program title

Up to 120 full-pitch or 240 half-pitch characters can be entered.

(Announce on/o)

Set whether to notify by alarm 1 minute before the program start. If set to "Announce on", perform the following steps to select the alarm tone.

[List] on the field Select a type of the alarm tone
Music : Select a music data saved in "Music" of "Data Box". P270

Go to Step 3 in "Setting a Chaku-Uta Full® Song as a Ring Tone" (P266).

i-motion : Select a moving picture/i-motion saved in "i-motion" of "Data Box". P307

Melody : Select a melody saved in "Melody" of "Data Box". P314

(Set repeat)

Set repeat booking of a program that is broadcasted regularly. Select "None" for not to repeat.

If "Weekdays" is selected, perform the following steps to specify the day of the week.

[Done] [List] on the field Mark days of the week

You can set period if other than "None" is selected.

[List] on the field "Set expiration" Use to select the date setting field. Select expiration date

3 [Done]

Note

- You cannot book a 1Seg program that starts now or within 1 minute.
- You can book a 1Seg program from a link of 1Seg information displayed in a site or mail (Media To). P196
- If "Announce on/o " is set to "Announce o ", an alarm will not sound. And 1Seg will not be activated.

When the alarm reaches the booked time

If "Announce on" is set, you will be notified by alarm 1 minute before the starting time. The Alarm screen appears, the alarm tone sounds, and the illumination lights up.

Press [Watch] to start the 1Seg program. After started, select "Yes" to terminate 1Seg.

- Press [OFF] to stop the alarm (1Seg will not be activated at the specified time.).

When multiple timer are set for the same time

Press [Detail] on the Alarm screen select a program to watch.

Checking Booking Information

1 TV timer list screen (P248) Select a booked program to check

Booking program detail screen appears.

- To edit the booking information
Press [Edit]. P248
- To delete the booking
Press [Delete].
- To add a new booking
Press [New]. P248

TV Timer List/Detail Screen Sub Menu

1 TV timer list screen (P248)/detail screen [Menu] [Menu] Perform the following operations

[Add new]
Book a new 1 Seg program to watch.

[Edit]
Edit the selected timer. P248

[Delete]
Delete the selected booked program.
You can select followings on the TV timer list screen.
One : Delete the selected booked program.
Selected : Select and delete booked programs.
Mark booked programs to delete [Delete] "Yes"
• Press [Sel. all/Cir. all] to select/clear all.

All : Delete all booked programs.
"Yes" Enter the Terminal security code




Data broadcasting

Using Data Broadcasting

1Seg provides data broadcasting in addition to video and sound. You can use various information containing images or moving pictures such as a site connected with a program.

- You cannot watch data broadcasting in horizontal screen.

1 on 1Seg watch screen

-  appears and you can operate data broadcasting items.
- Press  to switch TV and data broadcasting.
- You can also switch TV and data broadcasting by touching video/data broadcasting display area.
- Press  [Displ] for 1+ seconds to switch full screen and normal screen of data broadcasting.

2 Select an item

- Some items connect to a data broadcasting site or an i-mode site.
- Select "Yes" or "Yes (permanently)" if a confirmation whether to establish i-mode connection appears. Selecting "Yes (permanently)" disables the subsequent confirmations on the same function, and the information of data broadcasting and data broadcasting site may automatically be updated. Note that packet communication charges may apply in such cases.

Note

- Even if you switch to data broadcasting from TV, the sound of 1 Seg streams.

TVlink


Using TVlink

Depending on a data broadcasting or data broadcasting site, a URL or memo information can be saved as TVlink. If saved, you can display the target information from a TVlink list.

Saving as a TVlink

- 1 Select an item that can be saved as a TVlink in data broadcasting "Yes"

Displaying Saved TVlink

- 1  "1 Seg" "TVlink"

The TVlink list screen appears.

- You can also display a TVlink list by pressing  [Menu] "TVlink" on 1 Seg watch screen.

- 2 Select a TVlink "Yes"

TVlink List Sub Menu

- 1 TVlink list screen  [Menu] Perform the following operations

[TVlink info]
Display the TVlink detail information.

[Delete]
Delete a selected TVlink.

[Delete all]
Delete all saved TVlinks.

Note

- The URL or memo information saved as a TVlink is available only from 1 Seg. Not available from i-mode or Full browser.

1 Seg settings

Setting 1 Seg

- 1 **[Menu]** "1 Seg" "1 Seg settings"
Perform the following operations

[Subtitles]
Show/hide subtitles.

[Backlight]
Set the backlight level of the Display.

[Set image display]
Set the display of the data broadcasting site.

[Set e ect sound]
This option is not available.

[Close setting]
Set whether to continue sound output even when the FOMA terminal is closed.

[Main/Sub sound]
Set Main/Sub sound.

[Reset permission display]
Set to display the hidden confirmation.

[Reset 1 Seg settings]
Restore the settings in "Subtitles", "Backlight", "Set image display", "Set e ect sound" and "Main/Sub sound" to their defaults.
Enter the Terminal security code "Yes"

[Erase storage area]
Delete the storage area.
Move the cursor to a broadcast station to delete the storage area **[Menu]** "Delete"/"Delete all"
• The Terminal security code is required to delete all.

[1 Seg settings status]
You can check 1 Seg settings.

Music

Precautions for Music Data

- In this manual, Chaku-Uta Full® songs, WMA (Windows Media Audio) files, and SD-Audio data (music data compatible with SD-Audio standard) are collectively referred to as "music data".
- This FOMA terminal can play WMA files, protected by copyright protection technology, Chaku-Uta Full® songs, and SD-Audio data.
- Before downloading music data from web sites, read the license agreement (license and prohibited activities, etc.) carefully.
- Information unique to your FOMA terminal is used to play WMA files, protected by copyright protection technology. If the information unique to your FOMA terminal is changed due to failure, repair, or changing model, WMA files saved before the change was made may not play.
- Music data saved in the FOMA terminal or on a microSD card can be played for personal use only. When playing music, do not violate a third party's intellectual property rights such as copyright, and other rights. Do not copy or move music data saved in the FOMA terminal or on a microSD card to other media, such as a PC.
- DOCOMO assumes no responsibility for handling CCCD (copy controlled CD) materials, or cases you cannot convert music data to SD-Audio data.
- Precautions for Using or Handling a microSD Card P317

Music & Video Channel	
Music & Video Channel	254
Setting Programs	254
Playing Programs	256
Operating the Music & Video Channel from Data Box	259
Music Player	
Playing Music	260
Music Player	261
Saving Music Data	261
Playing Music Data	MUSIC player 263
Using Playlist	267
Managing Music Data	270
Using Other Functions while Listening to Music	272
.....	Play in background

Music&Video Channel

Music&Video Channel is a service that automatically downloads set music programs of up to approximately 1 hour at night. Also, you can enjoy high-definition moving picture programs of up to 30 minutes. The programs are updated regularly. You can enjoy the programs at any time, such as while commuting.

Before Using Music&Video Channel

- Music&Video Channel is a fee-based service requiring a separate subscription. (The i-mode and Pake-hodai, Pake-hodai full, or Pake-hodai double contracts are required for the subscription. The usage fee may reach the upper limit if using Pake-hodai double, even if you use the service only several times.)
- In addition to the usage fee for the Music&Video Channel, some programs may require additional information fees.
- After subscribing to the Music&Video Channel, if you insert the UIM into a FOMA terminal that does not support the Music&Video Channel, the service becomes unavailable. However, service charges still apply unless you cancel the Music&Video Channel subscription.
- You cannot set or download programs while using the international roaming service. If you go overseas, deactivate the program download before leaving Japan. When you come back to Japan, activate the program download.
 - * Packet communication charges apply if setting or downloading programs during international roaming.
- You can use mail or access an i-mode site while listening to a Music&Video Channel program (Background playback).
- Multitask Combinations P445
- For details about Music&Video Channel, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

Setting Programs

Set programs are automatically downloaded at night.

- Up to 2 programs can be set.
- You need to register a site to My Menu that provides Music&Video Channel programs. P187

1 "MUSIC" "Music&Video Ch"



Music&Video Channel screen

2 "Set program"

- No programs are set by default. After programs are set, the program titles appear.

3 Follow on-screen instructions to set programs

- For details, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

Note

- In order to set programs with another UIM inserted, start with confirming the program setting information from Program setting. If checking the program setting information from programs that have not been moved from "Distributed program" folder may be deleted.
 - This is a fee-based service requiring a separate subscription. If you have not subscribed to the service, a message indicating that you have not subscribed to the Music&Video Channel appears.
 - Selecting "Program list" on the Music&Video Channel screen displays the list of all programs offered for the Music&Video Channel.
- Selecting "About this service" displays how to use the service and any special cautions. Also, you can subscribe to the service from here.

Viewing or Canceling Program Setting

1 Music&Video Channel screen (P254) "Set program"




2 Follow on-screen instructions

- For details, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".


Note

- Canceling programs does not remove the My Menu registration.

After Specifying Programs

-  appears on the Stand-by display 12 hours prior to the program download.
- Programs are automatically downloaded at the designated download time.
- Programs are downloaded automatically at night.  appears on the Stand-by display if the download has been successful, and  appears on the Stand-by display if the download has failed. Once the Music&Video Channel screen is displayed, the icon disappears.

Note

- If the download is interrupted because the FOMA terminal is out of service area or the communication is disconnected, the download resumes automatically after 3 minutes. The attempts will be made up to 5 times.
- If the programs are not downloaded at the download time because the FOMA terminal is not turned on, the FOMA terminal is out of service area, or the signal is weak, the programs will be downloaded again at the same time on the following night.
- You cannot download the program except when the battery is indicated as  (When you attempt to download the program, a message will appear to notify that you cannot start downloading because of lower battery level).
- It may take a while to download programs. Make sure that the battery level is sufficient and signal reception is strong when downloading.
- Programs cannot be automatically downloaded in the following cases. In each case, set the programs again on the Music&Video Channel screen.
 - If a different UIM is inserted after programs were set
 - If the UIM that programs were set with is inserted in another Music&Video Channel compatible FOMA terminal
 - If the memory in the FOMA terminal is cleared
- If the download is interrupted because the signal is weak etc., the programs will not be automatically downloaded again until next time. Download programs manually.
- Downloaded programs are temporarily stored in the "Distributed program" folder in "Music&Video Ch" or "Data Box". If the channel to which the downloaded programs belong is updated, the programs stored in the "Distributed program" folder are deleted and the programs can no longer be playable. The programs you want to keep should be moved to another folder. P259 However, some programs may not be moved.
- If you set new programs, cancel a program, or cancel the subscription to My Menu, Music&Video Channel, or i-mode, the programs that have not been moved from "Distributed program" folder are deleted.
- The ring tone does not sound and the terminal does not vibrate when the program download starts or completes. The illumination does not light/blink either.

Downloading Programs Manually

If the download fails, download remaining programs manually.

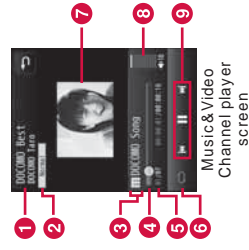
- 1 Music&Video Channel screen (P254) Select a program "Yes"
- appears to a program that was failed in downloading.

Note

- If you operate on the Music&Video Channel program list in Data Box, move the cursor to a program that failed in downloading select "Yes".
- Even if the download was interrupted, the program can be played up to the chapter downloaded before the interruption.
- Programs exceeding the playback count, playback period, or playback limit cannot be resumed downloading.
- Depending on the time, manual download may not be possible.

Playing Programs


- 1 Music&Video Channel screen (P254) Select a program



- 1 Chapter title/artist name
- 2 DOLBY setting
- Not displayed for moving picture programs.
- 3 Program title
- 4 Playback progress bar/elapsed time/total time
- Display the playback elapsed time using a bar.
- 5 Currently-playing chapter number/Total chapter numbers
- 6 Repeat setting
- OFF
- ON
- 7 Chapter image/moving picture or program image
- 8 Volume
- 9 Control key
- Display available navigation keys.

■ Key operations on the Music&Video Channel player screen

Operation	Description
	Pause/play
	Go to the beginning of the current program and pause
	Adjust the volume
	Play from the beginning of the current chapter or play previous/next chapter
	Rewind/fast forward while being held down
	Switch the Repeat setting
	Switch the DOLBY setting*
	If multiple images are saved, display the previous/next image*
	Show/hide the chapter/program image* (If both chapter image and program image are saved, those images can be switched.)
	Display the Chapter list
	Access sites


Operation	Description
	Quit the Music&Video Channel player

* Not available for moving picture programs.

Note

- Playback is paused in the following cases. The playback will resume automatically after the operation completes.
 - When a voice or videophone call arrives
 - When I-mode mail or SMS is received (If "Receiving display" is set to "Alarm mode")
 - When an alarm sounds
- A program with playback restrictions cannot be played after the playback count, playback limit, or playback period is exceeded. You can check the playback count, playback limit, or playback period in the Program information.
- Some programs cannot be played other than in a set period time. Broadcasting time follows the FOMA terminal time set with auto time adjustment.
- When you attempt to play a partially downloaded program, a confirmation asking whether to download the remaining data appears. Select "Yes" to start downloading. Select "Play" to play up to the downloaded chapters.
- When you play the program data overseas, the actual playback limit expiration date may be earlier or later than the displayed date.

Music&Video Channel Screen Sub Menu

Music&Video Channel screen (P254) Move to the cursor to a program  **[Menu]** Perform the following operations

[Move program]

Move the selected program from the "Distributed program" folder. P259

[Delete]

Delete the selected program.

[Program info.]

Display information about the selected program.

[Chapter list]

Display chapter list of the selected program. P258

[Connect to URL]

Access a site if the selected program contains a URL.


Note

<Delete>

- Deleting programs does not cancel the program setting. Programs are automatically updated until you access the Music&Video Channel site and cancel the setting.

Music&Video Channel Player Screen Sub Menu

Music&Video Channel screen (P256)

 **[Menu]** Perform the following operations

[BGM]*1

Play in background. P272

[Expand]*2

Display an enlarged moving picture.

[Chapter list]

Display a chapter list.

[Chapter info.]

Display information about the chapter in playback.

[Program info.]

Display information about the program in playback.

[Set repeat]

ON : Play program in playback repeatedly.
OFF : The program will not be repeated.

[DOLBY PRESETS]*1

Set sound quality for program playback. (Dolby Mobile support)
• If "Original" is selected, you can set ON/OFF for every 3 items.
However, settings on "Sound Space for Headphones" only functions with stereo earphone output but not function with the FOMA terminal speaker.

[Chapter Image]*1

Display the chapter image/program image. P 267

[Connect to URL]

Access a site if the program in playback contains a URL.

*1 Appear only for music programs.

*2 Appear only for moving picture programs.

Displaying Chapter List of Program

Select and play a chapter, or display the information.

Music&Video Channel player screen (P256)



- appears for the chapter in playback.
- : Play the selected chapter.
- : Display information about the selected chapter.

Program icons on the Music&Video Channel screen


The following icons which indicate a state of program download or the category are displayed at the Music&Video Channel screen or a Program list screen.

Icon	Description
	Downloaded program/Partially downloaded program
	• "✓" is added for a played program.
	• "O" is added for a program than can be played only at the set playback start time.
	• "⊗" is added for a program with playback count/playback limit/playback period or operation restriction at playback.
	Downloaded chapter/Chapter which failed to download
	Program which failed to update
	Program to be downloaded (Not downloaded)
	Downloading a program

Moving to Save Program Folder

Downloaded programs can be moved from "Distributed program" folder to another folder so that they will not be overwritten. Moved programs can be played from "Music&Video Ch" of "Data Box".

- To move a program, create a destination folder in the "Music&Video Ch" folder beforehand. P260
- Some programs cannot be moved.

1 Music&Video Channel screen (P254) Move to the cursor to a program  [Menu] "Move program"

2 Select a folder  [Move]

- Select a folder other than the "Distributed program" folder.


Note


- Downloaded programs cannot be copied.
- Partially downloaded programs cannot be moved.
- Programs can be moved only within the FOMA terminal. They cannot be moved to a microSD card.

Operating the Music&Video Channel from Data Box


You can play or move the distributed programs from "Music&Video Ch" of "Data Box", or edit the program titles.

Playing a Program from Data Box

1  "Data Box" "Music&Video Ch"

-  [New]: Create a new folder.



2 Move the cursor to a folder  [Open]



3 Move the cursor to a program  [Play]

Folder List Screen Sub Menu

1 Folder list screen (P259) Move the cursor to a folder **[MENU]** **[Menu]** Perform the following operations

[New folder]

- Create a new folder.
- You cannot create a sub folder in a user-defined folder.

[Rename]

Change the selected folder name.

[Delete]

Delete the selected folder.

[Memory info.]

Handset memory : Display the status of storage space, etc. in "Data Box".
External memory : Display the status of storage space, etc. of the microSD card.

Note

- The "Distributed program" folder cannot be renamed or deleted.

Program List Screen Sub Menu

1 Program list screen (P259) Move the cursor to a program **[MENU]** **[Menu]** Perform the following operations

- **[E]** **[Delete]**: Delete the selected program.

[Play]

Play the selected program.

[Move program]

Move the selected program from the "Distributed program" folder.

[Rename]

Change the title of the selected program.

[Delete]

This item : Delete a selected file.
Selected item : Select and delete files.
Mark files to delete **[E]** **[Done]** "Yes"
• Press **[MENU]** **[SelAll/CtrlAll]** to select/clear all.
All items : Delete all files in a folder.
"Yes" Enter the Terminal security code

[Program info.]

Display information about the selected program.

[Chapter list]

Open the chapter list. P258

[New folder]

This option is not available.

Playing Music

You can play music with the FOMA terminal in one of the following 2 ways:

- Playing music with MUSIC player
Play Chaku-Uta Full® songs downloaded from a site, WMA files or SD-Audio data saved to a microSD card using a PC.
- Playing as i-motion
Play audio-only i-motion downloaded using i-mode and saved in Data Box. P307

You can use mail or access an i-mode site while listening to music (Play in background). P272

Music Player

■ Available Chaku-Uta Full® file format

File Format	MP4
Bit rate	8 to 128kbps
Savable capacity (FOMA terminal)	Up to approx. 150MB
The number of playlists that can be created	Up to 10 songs

■ Available SD-Audio file format

File Format	MPEG-2 AAC
Bit rate (stereo)	16 to 72kbps
The number of savable songs	Up to 99 songs
The number of playlists that can be created	Up to 99 songs

■ Available WMA file format

File format	WMA (Windows Media Audio 9 Standard, Windows Media Audio 10 Professional)
Bit rate	8 to 192kbps
The number of savable songs	Up to 1,000 songs

Saving Music Data

Downloading a Chaku-Uta Full® Song

- Up to approximately 150MB of Chaku-Uta Full® songs of up to 5MB each can be saved.
- Downloaded Chaku-Uta Full® song is saved in the "i-mode" folder in "Music" of "Data Box" or a microSD card.

1 Access a site that provides Chaku-Uta Full® songs. Select a Chaku-Uta Full® song to download

After the download completes, a confirmation appears.

2 "Save" Select save location

Play : Play the downloaded Chaku-Uta Full® song.

File property : Display information about the downloaded

Chaku-Uta Full® song.

Back : Return to the web site without saving the

Chaku-Uta Full® song.

- In addition, select the destination when a microSD card is inserted on the terminal.

Saving WMA Files in microSD Card

The following items are required to play WMA files with the FOMA terminal:

- L-02B terminal
- FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 (optional)
- PC (Windows Vista, Windows XP Service Pack 2 and later (Japanese versions))
- Windows Media Player 10/11
- microSD card
- For Windows Vista, use Windows Media Player 11.

1 Insert microSD card into the FOMA terminal

- How to insert a microSD card P316

2 "Settings" "Others" "USB mode setting" "MTP mode"

3 Connect to a PC

- For details, refer to Step 2 and 3 in "Using the FOMA Terminal as a microSD Card Reader/Writer" (P326).

4 Start Windows Media Player 10/11 and save music data into a microSD card

- For operations of Windows Media Player 10/11, see Help for Windows Media Player 10/11.
- After music data is saved, remove FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 from the FOMA terminal and PC.

Napster® application

You can use Napster® application to save music data.

- Napster® application is available for download from the following web site (in Japanese only).
<http://www.napster.jp/>
- If you have any question on Napster® application, visit the following web site (in Japanese only).
<http://www.napster.jp/support/>

Note

- L-02B may not display or play some WMA files saved by another FOMA terminal into a microSD card.
- If a microSD card that WMA files are transferred to using another FOMA terminal, a PC may not recognize it even in MTP mode. In that case, it is recommended to delete "WM" folder and "WM_SYSTEM" folder on a microSD card using PC, etc., or format the microSD card with L-02B. Note that if you format microSD card, all data including music data is deleted.

Saving SD-Audio Data in microSD Card

The following items are required to play SD-Audio data with the FOMA terminal:

- L-02B terminal
- FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 (optional)
- PC (Windows Vista, Windows XP, Windows 2000 (Japanese versions))
- SD-Jukebox
- An audio CD that contains music you want to save
- microSD card

- SD-Jukebox can be purchased from the following URL:
<http://club.panasonic.co.jp/mall/sense/open/>
 (Japanese only)
 SD-Jukebox works under Windows Vista, Windows XP, and Windows 2000 (Japanese versions).
 For details about the operating environment, visit the following URL:
<http://panasonic.jp/support/software/sqjb/> (Japanese only)

- 1 Insert L-02B CD-ROM (bundled with your FOMA terminal) to a PC
- 2 Click "エンターテインメントツール (Entertainment tools)"
 Follow on-screen instructions to purchase "SD-Jukebox".
- 3 Install SD-Jukebox to a PC
 For installing SD-Jukebox, see the instruction manual for SD-Jukebox.
- 4 Insert microSD card into your FOMA terminal, then connect to the PC
 - How to insert a microSD card P318
 - Connecting to your PC P326
- 5 Start SD-Jukebox to save music data to microSD card
 - On how to operate SD-Jukebox, see Help for SD-Jukebox.
 - After music data is saved, remove the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 from the FOMA terminal and PC.

MUSIC player

Playing Music Data

You can continuously play all songs saved in the FOMA terminal and the microSD card, or only play songs specified by artist name, genre, or album title.

Example: To play music in "All songs"

1 "MUSIC" "MUSIC player"



Music screen

2 "All songs"

- Playlists : Display, create, or play a playlist. P267
 - Artist : Sort and display music data by artist.
 - Genre : Sort and display music data by genre.
 - Album : Sort and display music data by album.
 - Resume play : Play last played song/playlist (if a song is currently played, "Now playing" is displayed and select to display the play screen.)
- Music data saved in the FOMA terminal

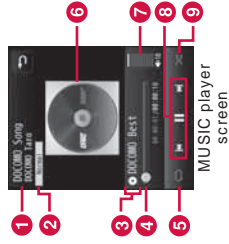


Music data list screen (song list)

- : Music data saved in a microSD card

3 Move the cursor to a music data [Play]

Play the selected music data in the displayed order in the music data list.



- 1 Song title, artist name
- 2 DOLBY setting
- 3 Album name
- 4 Elapsed time/playback progress bar/total time
- 5 Display the playback elapsed time using a bar.
- 5 Repeat setting

- None
- Current song
- Play all
- Jacket image/lyrics
- Volume
- Control key
- Display available navigation keys.
- Shu e
- Shu e O
- Shu e On

■ Key operations on the MUSIC player screen

Operation	Description
[Pause/Play]	Pause/play
[(1 + seconds)]	Go to the beginning of the current song and pause
[VOLUME]	Adjust the volume
[REPEAT]	Play from the beginning of the current song or play the previous/next song
[(Hold down)]	Rewind/fast forward while being held down
[SHUFFLE]	Switch the Shuffle setting
[REPEAT]	Switch the Repeat setting
[DOLBY]	Switch the DOLBY setting
[PREV/NEXT]	Display the previous/next image
[JACKET]	Show/hide jacket image/lyrics
[LIST]	Display the Music data list screen While the list screen is displayed, appears to the right of the song title in playback.
[QUIT]	Quit MUSIC player

Note

- Playback is paused in the following cases. The playback will resume automatically after the operation completes.
 - When a voice or videophone call arrives
 - When i-mode mail or SMS is received (If "Receiving display" is set to "Alarm mode")
 - When an alarm sounds
- Sounds effects such as the key tone do not sound during music data playback.
- Sorting conditions for artists, genre, and album is in accordance with the detailed information about the music data. "Unknown" is displayed, however, in the "Genre" field because SD-Audio does not support "Genre" information.
- When you play the music data overseas, the actual playback limit expiration date may be earlier or later than the displayed date.

Music Data List Screen Sub Menu

Music data list screen (P263) Move the cursor to a music data [MENU] [Menu] Perform the following operations

- [] [Play]: Play the selected music data.
- [] [Playlist]: Add the selected music data to a playlist. P270

[Play]

Play the selected music data.

[Add to playlist]

Add the selected music data to a playlist. P270

[Multiple choice]

Select and play multiple music data. Operations during playback are the same with for a playlist. P268

Mark music data to play [] [Play]

- Press [MENU] [Menu] to select "Play", "Add to playlist", "Sort", "Select all" or "Clear all". You can add marked music data to a playlist by selecting "Add to playlist".

[Search]*

Specify "Title", "Artist", "Album", "Genre", or "Year"² to search music data.

Select an item Enter the item [] [Search]

- All music data that match all specified conditions are displayed.

[Sort]

Set conditions and sort music data.

[File property]

View or edit information about the selected music data.

Move the cursor to an item [] [Edit] Edit the item

- Some items are not editable.
- WMA file/SD-Audio data information is not editable.

- *1 Music data in Artist/Genre/Album will not be displayed in the Music data list screen.
- *2 Cannot search in SD-Audio data by "Year".

MUSIC Player Screen Sub Menu

Music/SD-Audio player screen [MENU] [Menu] Perform the following operations

[Go to MUSIC]

Display the Music screen while playing music data. P263

[BGM]

Play music data in background. P272

[List]

Display the Music data list screen. P263

[File property]

View or edit information about the music data in playback.

Move the cursor to an item [] [Edit] Edit the item

- Some items are not editable.
- The properties of WMA files/SD-Audio data are not editable.

[Shuffle On/Shutdown]

Enable or disable shuffle play.

[Set repeat]
 None : The program will not be repeated.
 Current song : Play music data in playback repeatedly.
 Play all : Play all music data on the Music data list screen repeatedly.

[DOLBY PRESETS]
 Set sound quality for program playback (Dolby Mobile support)
 • If "DOLBY CUSTOM" is selected, you can set ON/OFF for every 3 items. However, settings on "Sound Space for Headphones" only functions with stereo earphone output but not function with the FOMA terminal speaker.

[Jacket image]
 Display the jacket image or save it to Data Box. P267


[Lyric]
 Display the lyrics or save it to Data Box. P267

[Set as tone]
 Set the music data in playback as a ring tone. P266

[Connect to URL]
 Access a site if the music data in playback contains a URL.

* Not available for WMA files/SD-Audio data.

Setting a Chaku-Uta Full® Song as a Ring Tone

- 1** MUSIC player screen (P264)  [Menu]
- 2** "Set as tone"
 Select a ring tone type
- 3** Select a range to set as the ring tone
 - Depending on a Chaku-Uta Full® song, some items cannot be selected.

[Full song ring tone]
 Set the entire Chaku-Uta Full® song in playback as a ring tone.

[Point ring tone]
 If the Chaku-Uta Full® song in playback has already a range specified, this option is available.


[Free point ring tone]
 Specify and set start and end points as a range for the ring tone.
 Use  to find a starting point  [Start] Use  to find an ending point  [End]

Note

- If selecting "Alarm tone", further select an alarm to set. (Only alarms set to "ON" in advance can be selected)
- Some Chaku-Uta Full® songs cannot be set as a ring tone.
- Music data on a microSD card cannot be set as a ring tone.

Viewing Images or Lyrics Contained in a Music Data

You can view and save jacket images, lyrics, chapter image etc. contained in music data.

- 1 MUSIC player screen (P264)  [Menu] "Jacket image"/"Lyric"/"Chapter image"

Perform the following operations

[Next image]

View the next image/lyrics.

[Prev. image]

View the previous image/lyrics.

[Full view]

View an image/lyrics in full screen.

[Display On/Off]

Show/hide jacket image/chapter image or lyrics.

[Save in Databox]

Save the displayed image/lyrics to "i-mode" folder in "My picture" of "Data Box".

• Not available for WMA files/SD-Audio data.

• Do not appear for "Chapter image".

Using Playlist

You can specify the order of music data to play in a playlist. You can play any songs in the order of your choice from all songs saved in the FOMA terminal and on the microSD card.

Creating a Playlist

Up to 10 of All songs playlist and up to 99 of SD-Audio playlist can be saved. Up to 99 music data for each playlist can be saved.

- 1  "MUSIC" "MUSIC player" "Playlists" Select an item

All songs playlist : Display playlists created on the FOMA terminal.

WMA playlist : Display WMA files playlists.

- Playlist transferred from PC. This playlist cannot be created or edited on the FOMA terminal.

SD-Audio playlist : Display SD-Audio data playlists.



Playlist list screen

- 2  [New] Enter a playlist name

• Up to 30 full-pitch or half-pitch characters can be entered.

- 3 Select a playlist  [Add] Select a folder

4 Mark music data to save to the playlist

 [Done]

- Press  [Menu] to select "Sort", "File property", "Select all", or "Clear all".

Playing a Playlist

1 Playlist list screen (P267) Select a playlist



Playlist music
data list screen

2 Move the cursor to a music data [Play]

Play the selected music data in the order of displayed in the music data list.

Playlist List Screen Sub Menu

1 Playlist list screen (P267) Move the cursor to a playlist [Menu] Perform the following operations

[Play]

Play the selected playlist.

[New playlist]

Create a playlist. P267

[Rename]

Change the playlist name.

[Copy playlist]

Copy the selected playlist and create a new playlist.


"Yes" Enter the name of a new playlist


[Delete playlist]

Delete the selected playlist.

[Multiple choice]

Select and delete playlists.

Mark a playlist to delete  [Delete] "Yes"

- Press  [Menu] to select "Delete", "Select all", or "Clear all".

* Not available for SD-Audio playlist.

Note

- WMA playlist list screen contains no sub menu items.
- <Rename/Delete playlist>
- These options are unavailable for "Quick playlist".

Playlist Music Data List Screen Sub Menu

- 1** Playlist music data list screen (P268) Move the cursor to a music data [Menu] Perform the following operations
- [Add]: Add the music data to the displayed playlist.

[Play]
Play the selected music data.

[Add songs]¹
Add music data to the displayed playlist.
Select a folder. Mark music data to add [Done]

- Press [Menu] to select "Sort", "File property", "Select all", or "Clear all".

[Multiple choice]
Select and play multiple music data. Operations during playback are the same with for a playlist.
Mark music data to play [Play]

- Press [Menu] to select "Play", "Delete from list"¹, "Sort", "Select all" or "Clear all".

[Move]¹
Change the order of the selected music data.

[Delete from list]¹
Delete the selected music data from the playlist.

[Search]

Specify "Title", "Artist", "Album", "Genre", or "Year"² to search music data.

- Move the cursor to an item. Enter the item [Search]
- Music data that match all specified conditions are displayed.
- On Search result screen, press [Menu] to select "Play", "Add to playlist"¹, "Multiple choice", "Save"³, "Sort" or "File property". Selecting "Save" deletes music data that were not found from the playlist.

[Sort]
Sort music data by the saved information.

[File property]
View or edit information about the selected music data.
Move the cursor to an item [Edit] Edit the item

- Some items are not editable.
- The properties of WMA files/SD-Audio data are not editable.

- *1 Not available for WMA playlist.
- *2 Cannot search in SD-Audio data by "Year".
- *3 Do not appear for WMA playlist/SD-Audio playlist.

Adding Music Data to a Playlist

- 1 "MUSIC" "MUSIC player" "All songs"
[MENU]
- 2 Move the cursor to a music data to save
[Enter] [Playlist] Select a playlist
The music data is added to the selected playlist.
 - [Enter] [New]: Create a new playlist with the selected music data.
 - To save multiple music data
Press [MENU] [Menu] "Multiple choice" mark music data to save [MENU] [Menu] "Add to playlist" select a playlist.

Saving Music Data to Quick Playlist

For the music data you often listen to, you can save them to "Quick playlist" by easy steps.

- To play the saved music data, select "Quick playlist" on the Playlist list screen.

- 1 Music data list screen (P263) Move the cursor to a music data to save [Enter] (for 1+ seconds)
 - In Turn View Style mode, touch a music data to save for 1+ seconds.

Managing Music Data

Music data are saved in the "Music" of "Data Box". Delete or move a Chaku-Uta Full® songs from Data Box.

- WMA files cannot be deleted or edited on the FOMA terminal. Use PC for the operations.
- SD-Audio data cannot be deleted using the FOMA terminal. Use SD-Jukebox to delete it.

- 1 [MENU] "Data Box" "Music"
- 2 Move the cursor to "i-mode"/"Movablecontents"/ a user-defined folder [Enter] [Open] Move the cursor to a Chaku-Uta Full® song [MENU] [Menu] Perform the following operations
 - [Enter] [Switch]: Switch between List view and Grid view.
 - [Enter] [Delete]: Delete the selected Chaku-Uta Full® song.
 - If "WMA" or "SD-Audio" folder is selected, the operation is the same as for music data playback. P263





[Files]

Play : Play the selected Chaku-Uta Full® song.
Rename : Change the selected Chaku-Uta Full® song name.
Reset name : Reset the display name of the selected file to "Title" - "Artist".
File property : View or edit information about the selected Chaku-Uta Full® song.
Move the cursor to an item [Enter] [Edit] Edit the item




- Some items are not editable.
- Move the cursor to the edited item and press [MENU] [Init.] "Yes" to undo the edit.

Jacket image : Save images contained in a Chaku-Uta Full® song. P267
Lyric : Save lyrics contained in a Chaku-Uta Full® song. P267

[Delete]

- One : Delete a selected Chaku-Uta Full® song.
Selected : Select and delete Chaku-Uta Full® songs.
Mark Chaku-Uta Full® songs to delete  [Done]
"Yes"
• Press  [SelAll/CirAll] to select/clear all.
All : Delete all Chaku-Uta Full® songs in a folder.
 [Done] "Yes" Enter the Terminal security code
• Press  [SelAll/CirAll] to select/clear all.

[Move]

- One : Move a selected Chaku-Uta Full® song.
Selected : Select a destination folder
Select and move Chaku-Uta Full® songs.
Select a destination folder Mark Chaku-Uta Full® songs to move  [Done]
• Press  [SelAll/CirAll] to select/clear all.
All : Move all Chaku-Uta Full® songs in a folder. Enter the Terminal security code
• Press  [SelAll/CirAll] to select/clear all.

[Copy]

This option is not available.

[Set as tone]

Set the selected Chaku-Uta Full® song as a ring tone. P.266

[Sort]

Set conditions and sort Chaku-Uta Full® songs.

[Memory info.]

Handset memory : Display the status of storage space, etc. in "Data Box".

External memory : Display the status of storage space, etc. of the microSD card.

[New folder]

Create a new folder.



[List view/Grid view]

Switch between List view and Grid view.

Note

- If the music data saved in a playlist is deleted or moved between the FOMA terminal and a microSD card, the music data is deleted from the playlist.
- Sub menu available when a folder is selected is the same as "My Picture Screen Sub Menu" (P.297).
- <New folder>
- You cannot create a sub folder in a user-defined folder. (Up to 2 levels of folder hierarchy can be created only in "Movable contents" folder.)



Icons for Chaku-Uta Full® songs in "Data Box"

Icon	Description
	Playback count is limited (Playable)/reached the playback count limit (Not playable)
	Not expired (Playable)/expired (Not playable)
	Files on the microSD card

Using Other Functions while Listening to Music

1 During a music playback, [MENU] [Menu] "BGM"




Display the Stand-by display during music playback.

 or  appears at the top of the screen and music information such as song/artist names appears on the Stand-by display.



Information such as song title, artist name

Note

- During the background playback, press  to adjust the volume.
- To return to the MUSIC player screen during background playback, press  (MUSIC player).
- To stop the background playback, press  "Yes".
- During background playback, i-motion set for the Stand-by display will not be played. The default Stand-by display is displayed instead.
- While music data on the microSD card is played in background, the other functions may not be able to access the microSD card. In this case, stop the background playback.

i- ppli

i- ppli.....	274
Downloading i- ppli from Sites	274
Starting i- ppli.....	275
Starting i- ppli Automatically	284
Starting i- ppli from a Site or Mail... Set i- ppli To	285
Setting i- ppli Stand-by Display	285
..... i- ppli Stand-by display	286
Viewing Various Information	287
Deleting i- ppli	287
Using Various i- ppli Functions.....	287

i- ppli

- "i- ppli" is software for i-mode compatible mobile phones.
- Downloading various software from i-mode sites allows updating stock price or weather information automatically, playing games without connecting to a network, or using the FOMA terminal more conveniently.
- Packet communication charges apply.
- When using overseas, packet communication charges differ from domestic charges. P.408
- For details about i- ppli, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

Downloading i- ppli from Sites

You can download software from a site and save it to the FOMA terminal.

- Up to 1MB of software can be downloaded.
- Up to 100 downloaded software can be saved. However, the savable number may be reduced by the software data size.
- i- ppli does not support touch operation.

1 While viewing a site Select a software "Yes"

- [Cancel]: Cancel downloading.
- When "Display SW info" is set to "Display"
Software information is displayed. Press [OK]
"Yes" to download the software.

2 Download complete "Yes"

The downloaded software starts.

- Depending on the software, after the software is downloaded, a screen to set operating condition may be displayed. The settings can be changed later from "Software set". P.277

Note

- During download, a confirmation may appear notifying you that the software will use the terminal data (stored data and serial number of the terminal/UIM). Select "Yes" to start downloading. Press [Detail] to check the details of the terminal data to be used. In this case, the terminal data is sent to the IP (Information provider) via the internet, and it could be intercepted by a third party. However, this action does not reveal your phone number, postal address, age, or gender to the IP or others.
- If you attempt to re-download software that has already been downloaded with a different UIM, a confirmation asking whether to overwrite the downloaded software appears. Select "Yes" to overwrite.
- If the maximum number of software which can be saved is reached or if there is not enough memory space, a confirmation for deletion of other i- ppli appears.
- If there is not enough memory space, you can select i- ppli to delete, checking the required memory space to store a new application.
- To delete i- ppli, select "Yes" mark software to delete [Delete] "Yes" to delete the marked software and to start downloading.
- For Osafu-Keitai compatible i- ppli, some i- ppli may not be downloaded depending on the IC card data capacity even if software storage space is available. Follow the confirmation screen and delete the software displayed on the screen to start download again. (Some software may not be the deletion target depending on the type of software to download.) Some software deletes the software itself after you start the software and delete data in the IC card.

- If the software download fails due to weak signal reception, the software may be saved partly. If you download again or select the party saved i- ppli on the Software list, the rest of the file will be downloaded together.
- Even if the software download fails due to weak signal reception after old software was deleted to increase the available space on the FOMA terminal, the old software cannot be restored.
- Some software that starts immediately after being downloaded cannot be saved.

Downloading a Mail-Connected i- ppli

- Note the followings if you download a mail-connected i- ppli.
- If you download a mail-connected i- ppli, a folder for the mail-connected i- ppli is automatically created in Inbox and Outbox. A 0created folder takes the downloaded mail-connected i- ppli name and it cannot be changed.
 - Up to 17 (100 including all other i- ppli) mail-connected i- ppli can be saved.
 - If you attempt to download a mail-connected i- ppli, which will use an existing folder for a mail-connected i- ppli saved in the FOMA terminal, the attempt will be denied.
 - If only a folder for a mail-connected i- ppli is left in the FOMA terminal, and you attempt to download a mail-connected i- ppli again which uses the same folder, the folder can be used. If the folder is not used, you can delete it and create a new folder. A mail-connected i- ppli cannot be downloaded if you do not create a folder for it.
 - The folder for the compatible mail-connected i- ppli cannot be deleted with the mail-connected i- ppli left in the FOMA terminal. The folder can be deleted when a mail-connected i- ppli is not in the folder. In this case, folders created in both Inbox and Outbox are deleted at a time.
 - When you delete a mail-connected i- ppli, you can select whether to delete the automatically created folder at once. However, if protected mails are in the folder, the folder cannot be deleted.

Display SW info




Viewing i- ppli Information at Download Time

Set whether to display software information when downloading the software.

-  "i- ppli" "i- ppli settings" "Display SW info" "Display"/"Not display"







Starting i- ppli



Stand-by display (for 1+ seconds)

-  [Switch]: Switch the view of the Software list screen.
-  [] /  []: Scroll to the screen to previous/next page.




Icons on the Software list screen

Icon	Description
	Standard i- ppli
	i- ppliDX
	Auto start set i- ppli
	i- ppli downloaded via SSL communication
	i- ppli set to Stand-by display
	Osafu-Keitai compatible i- ppli

Icon	Description
	The iC transfer service is used yet i-ppli is not downloaded. P290
	Partly saved i-ppli

2 Select a software

- If "Network set" of "Software set" is set to "Confirm every session", a confirmation whether to allow the communication appears. Select "Yes"/"No".
- To exit an i-ppli
Press  "Yes".

Starting software from other software

- Some software can start a specified i-ppli without returning to the Software list screen.
- If the software to be started is not saved in the FOMA terminal, you need to download it.
 - If the software to be started is not specified, follow on-screen instructions to select a software.





If a security error occurs

If you attempt to perform operations that are not permitted for the software, a security error is indicated and the error content is logged in "Security error history". P286

If a problem occurs with software

If a problem occurs with the software, you can check the contents using the Trace info. P286
To i-ppli creators
If software does not work as expected at creation process, you may use the Trace info for your reference.

Note

- Some software performs communication while running. You can change the settings in "Network set" of "Software set" not to automatically perform communication. P277
- If an incoming voice or videophone call arrives when the software is running, you can answer the call pausing the software. After the call is terminated, the previous screen returns.
- Even when the software is running, you can receive mail or MessageR/F. The software keeps running, and , , or , etc. appears at the top of the screen. To view the received mail or MessageR/F, terminate the software.
- Images used by an i-ppli or data you entered may be automatically sent to the server via the Internet.
 - * Images used by the i-ppli include: images captured with Camera that is started from a Camera-linked (connected) application, images obtained using infrared communication function of the i-ppli, images downloaded from a site or web site, and images the i-ppli obtained from Data Box.
- You cannot start software downloaded using a direct UIM.
- Depending on i-ppli, the tone may not sound.
- Depending on the software, the IP (Information provider) can access programs saved on your FOMA terminal and directly disable their use. In this case, the software cannot be run or updated, however, it can still be deleted, and the software information can still be viewed. To use the software again, the software needs to perform communication for the software suspend cancellation. Contact your IP.
- Depending on the software, the IP may send data to a software saved on your FOMA terminal.
- In the event that the IP disables/re-enables the software or sends data, your terminal performs communication and  blinks. No packet communication charges apply in this case.

Software List Screen Sub Menu

1 Software list screen (P275) Move the cursor to a software **[Menu]** Perform the following operations

[Set i- ppli To]
Set conditions to start the selected software. P285

[Auto start time]
Set whether to start the selected software automatically, and set the date and time to start if the auto start is specified. P284

[Software set]
Set the selected software settings. P277

[Software info]
Display the selected software information such as a name and version of the i- ppli. The displayed items differ depending on the software.

[Upgrade]
Upgrade the selected software.

[Delete]
Delete a software. P287

Note

<Upgrade>

- During an update, a confirmation may appear notifying you that the upgrading will use terminal data (stored data or serial number of the terminal/UM). Select "Yes" to start downloading. Press **[F3]** to check the details of the terminal data to be used. In this case, the terminal data is sent to the IP (Information provider) via the Internet, and it could be intercepted by a third party. However, this action does not reveal your phone number, postal address, age, or gender to the IP or others.

Setting i- ppli Operating Conditions

Set operating conditions for each software program. You can set a software to automatically perform communication while it is running or set separately whether to allow to browse icon information, Phonebook, etc.

- Some items may not be changed depending on the software.

1 Software list screen (P275) Move cursor to the software **[Menu]** "Software set" Perform the following operations

[Stand-by display]

Set the selected software as the Stand-by display. P285

[Network set]

Set whether to allow communications while software is running.

[Stand-by network set]

Set whether to allow communications while i- ppli is set as the Stand-by display.

<p>[Icon info] Set whether to allow software to use the icons of mail, MessageR/F, in/out of service area, battery level, or Manner mode.</p> <p>[View P. book/call records] Set whether to allow software to browse the Phonebook, redial, and call history when the software is started.</p> <p>[Change ring tone/image] Set whether to allow software to automatically change an image or melody set for a ring tone or the Stand-by display when the software is started.</p> <p>[Program guide key setting] Set whether to set as i- ppli Program guide that activates from 1Seg. • Only 1 i- ppli can be set.</p>	<p>[Icon info] Set whether to allow software to use the icons of mail, MessageR/F, in/out of service area, battery level, or Manner mode.</p> <p>[View P. book/call records] Set whether to allow software to browse the Phonebook, redial, and call history when the software is started.</p> <p>[Change ring tone/image] Set whether to allow software to automatically change an image or melody set for a ring tone or the Stand-by display when the software is started.</p> <p>[Program guide key setting] Set whether to set as i- ppli Program guide that activates from 1Seg. • Only 1 i- ppli can be set.</p>	<p>Note</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Depending on the settings, the software may not connect to the network, or icon info (unread mail or battery level, etc.) becomes unavailable. <Network set> When set to "No", the software may not start, or real-time information may not be provided. When set to "Yes", the software automatically connects to the network. While connected, packet communication charges apply. <Icon info> When set to "Yes", information about the status of the terminal as indicated by the presence of icons for unread mail, messages, battery level, Manner mode, within the service area, and out of service area may be sent to IP (Information provider) via the Internet in the same manner as the "Phone/Terminal and UJIM ID" is sent. The icon information could be intercepted by a third party. Software that needs icon data may not function if set to "No".
---	---	---

<p>Pre-installed i- ppli</p> <p>To use the deleted pre-installed i- ppli, visit site, "WOW LG" in iMenu for download. P133 • i- ppli does not support touch operation.</p>	<p>Mingle Mangle</p> <p>This is a game you set out 3 mingles (characters) of the same type in crosswise or lengthwise direction swapping adjacent mingles.</p> <p>1 Software list screen (P275) "Mingle Mangle"</p> <p>2 Press any key (Dial keys, , , , , , , , , , , ) Perform the following operations</p>	<p>[オリジナル (Original)] Play game by selecting a square of "7 x 7" or "8 x 8".</p> <p>[探索 (Exploration)] Save out mingles by clearing instructions set to each exploration course. If you clear, the information is automatically saved.</p> <p>[ランキング (Ranking)] Display the ranking.</p> <p>[セットアップ (Setup)] Set sound on/o or vibrator on/o .</p> <p>[ヘルプ (Help)] Display the description of the game and how to play.</p> <p>[終了 (Exit)] Terminate the i- ppli.</p>
---	--	---

Sudoku Cafe

Enter a number from 1 to 9 in an empty cell. However, the same number cannot be entered more than once for each vertical or horizontal row, or for a block of 3 x 3 cells framed with a thick line.

1 Software list screen (P275) "Sudoku Cafe"

The title screen of the game appears.

2 Press any key (Dial keys, , , , , ,)

The menu screen appears.

3 Perform the following operations

[チュートリアル (Tutorial)]

Learn how to play the game through practice.

[レコードモード (Record mode)]

Compete how fast you can solve a puzzle.

[カスタムモード (Custom mode)]

Create a new puzzle and play it.

[環境設定 (Environment settings)]

Choose which function to use, スキャン機能 (Scanning function) or ライン機能 (Line function), サウンド オン (ON)/ オフ (OFF), 振動 (Vibration) オン (ON)/ オフ (OFF), or set 背景設定 (Background).

[ランキング確認 (Ranking)]

Display the ranking.

[ヘルプ (Help)]

Display the description of the game and how to play.

[ゲーム終了 (Exit)]

Terminate the application.

マクドナルド トクするアプリ (McDonald's TOKUSURU KEITAI Application)



* Screenshot is an example and may differ from actual screen.

©2009 McDonald's

You can download the discount coupon "かざすクーポン" to be used at McDonald's. To use "かざすクーポン", subscribe to "トクするクーポンサイト" (Tokusuru Coupon Site), then select and set a coupon of your choice from the application and hold the terminal up to a scanning device placed at McDonald's.

- For information about "McDonald's TOKUSURU KEITAI application", visit the McDonald's official site, "マクドナルド トクするクーポンサイト". URL: [http://www.mcdonalds.jp/tokusuru](#)
- "かざすクーポン" may not be used at some McDonald's restaurants. Use "見せるクーポン" in an area where "かざすクーポン" cannot be used.
- Functions or service contents for "McDonald's TOKUSURU KEITAI application" may be changed.
- Packet communication charges apply.

■ To use "かざすクーポン"

Activate this application

Select a coupon and number to use

Press "決定" to complete setting for the coupon information

Order by holding the terminal on a scanning function in a restaurant.

楽オク出品アプリ2 (Rakuoku Exhibition Application 2)



* Screenshot is an example and may differ from actual screen.

"楽オク出品アプリ2 (Rakuoku Exhibition Application 2)" is a convenient application to enable you to easily exhibit your goods on Rakuoku at anytime and from anywhere. With the instruction guide, even a first-time exhibitor can use it easily. Using convenient functions such as capturing/editing pictures, saving records, you can exhibit your goods in shorter time than you do on a site.

- When using for the first time, you need to agree to "利用規約 (terms of service)".
- Packet communication charges apply to use this service.
- For details about Rakuoku, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".
- To exhibit your goods on Rakuoku, you need to subscribe to Rakuten membership and exhibitor membership.
- For information about Rakuoku, visit the i-mode site. i-mode site: "iMenu" "オーダーション"



QR code to access the site

いアプリバンキング (i-appli Banking)



* Screenshot is an example and may differ from actual screen.

いアプリバンキング (i-appli banking) is an i-appli for conveniently using mobile banking (check the balance or activity statement of your account, deposit or transfer money, etc.) on the FOMA terminal. By entering password you set when activating the i-appli, mobile banking of up to 2 financial institutions can be used. Making a payment for invoice or payment notice by the Pay-easy service is also possible.

- To use mobile banking by i-appli banking, you need to have an account of the financial institution and subscribe to the Internet banking service of the financial institution.
- Packet communication charges apply to use this service.
- For details about i-appli banking, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".
- For information about i-appli banking, visit the i-mode site. i-mode site: "iMenu" "メニューリスト" "モバイルバンキング" "いアプリバンキング"



QR code to access the site

モバイルSuica登録用アプリ (Mobile Suica Setup i- ppli)



* Screenshot is an example and may differ from actual screen.

"モバイルSuica登録用アプリ (Mobile Suica Setup i- ppli)" is an i- ppli provided by NTT DOCOMO. This application enables you to make necessary initial settings, before using Osafu-Keitai compatible service "Mobile Suica" provided by East Japan Railway Company. After making initial settings by this application, follow on-screen instructions to download the Mobile Suica application from the East Japan Railway Company site and sign up as a member.

- When using for the first time, you need to agree to "ご注意事項(必読)".
- Packet communication charges apply to use this service.
- This application can be deleted after initial settings are complete, but the set area in the IC card remains occupied. Reset all data in the IC card (hereafter referred to as the full format) to use the area.
- To perform the full format, visit the docomo Shop.
- If the full format is performed, all data in the IC card are deleted.

- To use the Mobile Suica service after performing the full format, make initial settings again by this application.
- For information about Mobile Suica, visit the i-mode site. i-mode site: "iMenu" "メニューリスト" "おサイケータイ" "モバイルSuica"
- "Mobile Suica" is a registered trademark of East Japan Railway Company.

モバイルGoogleマップ (Mobile Google Map)

Display a map and easily search area information, shop information, or user-created contents. In addition, switch to the aerial photo mode or see Street View images. Also, search transportations to the destination by searching the route and navigate to the destination.

■ Map screen



©2009 Google - Map data ©2009 ZENRIN

■ Key operations on the Map screen

Operation	Description
	Display the menu
	Search (shop or service information in the area, search location and display on the map)

Operation	Description
	Move a cursor
	Context menu (address of the present location, route to/from the location, Street View, save to favorites, search surrounding area)
	Zoom out
	Switch to map/aerial photo mode
	Zoom in
	Display the present location
	Save to favorites/display favorites

- When using for the first time, agree to the terms of service.
- Packet communication charges apply to use this service. Subscription to Pake-hodai/Pake-hodai full/Pake-hodai double is recommended.
- For details, refer to "ヘルプ (Help)" of the menu.

DCMXクレジットアプリ (DCMX Credit Appli)



* Screenshot is an example and may differ from actual screen.

"DCMX" is a credit service supporting "iD", provided by NTT DOCOMO. DCMX includes DCMX mini that provides up to 10,000 yen/month credit and DCMX/DCMX GOLD services that provide more credit and DCOMO points than DCMX mini.

You can use mobile phone credit of DCMX mini right now by simply sign-up from this application.

■ Application functions

Membership registration/Screening*1

Card information settings

Use

No need to charge. Enjoy shopping without signature*2 only by holding the terminal with card information settings on the scanning device at stores with the following iD mark.

Check

Check DCMX service contents, available balance*3, and usage from application.

Change

Make the model change setting or update the valid period from application.

*1 The online screening is conducted at the time of subscription for DCMX mini. For subscriptions other than DCMX mini, the terminal is connected to the i-mode subscription page.

*2 Under certain conditions, a security code may be required.

*3 Available only for DCMX mini.

• For details on service contents or subscription procedures, visit the i-mode site for DCMX.
i-mode site: "iMenu" "DCMX iD"



QR code to access the site

Note

- When activating this application for the first time, agree to "ご利用上の注意 (precautions for use)" before use.
- Packet communication charges apply for settings/operations.

iD 設定アプリ (iD Appli)

■ iD appli



* Screenshot is an example and may differ from actual screen.

"iD" is convenient electronic money using credit settlement system. Simply by holding Osafu-Keitai with the credit card information set or iD compatible card on the scanning device at stores, you can easily and conveniently do shopping.

You can register up to 2 types of credit card information on Osafu-Keitai, so use them according to privileges or stores. Depending on the card issuer, cashing is also supported.

- To use iD on Osafu-Keitai, besides subscribing to the iD compatible card issuer, it is necessary to make the settings on iD appli or Card application provided by a card issuer. Depending on the card, it is necessary to finish the settings on iD appli and then make the settings on Card application.
- The cost for iD service (annual fee, etc.) varies depending on the card issuer.
- For information about iD, visit the i-mode site for iD.

i-mode site: "iMenu" "メニューリスト" "iD"



QR code to access the site

Cautions on Osafu-Keitai compatible i-ppli
 DOCOMO assumes no responsibility for information set on the IC card.

Gガイド番組表リモコン (G-GUIDE Program List Remote Controller)



* Screenshot is an example and may differ from actual screen. An applicable channel to your location appears.

This is a convenient application which combines a TV program list and a Audio/Video remote controller, and is free of monthly usage charges.

You can easily obtain the program information on the digital or analogue terrestrial broadcasting, or BS digital broadcasting whenever, anywhere you want. You can check the titles, contents, as well as start/end time of the desired program. You can activate 1-Seg from the program list, and vice versa. Programming your DVD hard disc recorder to record your favorite program via the internet is available. (The recorder must support remote programming. And the initial setting has to be made to enable this application function.)

You can search your desired programs by keyword such as genre or your favorite actor/actress names or pick-up keyword on top of the main screen.

You can use this application as remote controllers for televisions, video players, or DVD players. (Not all devices are supported.)

- For the first time use, you need to configure the settings and agree to the license agreement.
- Packet communication charges apply.
- For overseas use, set "Set Date&Time" of the FOMA terminal to Japan time.
- For details about G-GUIDE Program List Remote Controller, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

■ Setting a timer for watching 1 Seg program

You can select a program to watch from the program list of this application and set a timer for watching the program. Setting a timer for watching a program:

Activate this application, select a program to set a timer for, and select "予約実行 (Set)" from "視聴予約 (Set timer)" of the menu. After the timer setting screen appears, follow on-screen instructions to set a timer.

■ Setting recording schedule function remotely

If your DVD recorder supports remote programming, you can use this application via the Internet to set the recorder timer remotely to record a TV program from the TV program time table of this application.

The initial setting is required to enable the remote programming function.

Making the initial setting:

- ① Setup your DVD recorder for the Internet connection (Refer to the instruction manual of your DVD recorder for the setting procedure).
- ② Activate this application, select "J 電 画 予 約 (Remote record schedule)" from the menu. Follow the displayed guidance to complete the initial setting.

Setting TV program recording schedule:

Select a program to be recorded from the TV program schedule, and select "J 電 画 予 約 (Remote record schedule)" from the menu. Your DVD recorder designated by the initial setting can be programmed via the Internet to schedule recording the selected program.

- Packet communication charges apply.

Starting i- ppli Automatically

- Date and Time have to be set in advance to start an i- ppli automatically. P.53

Auto start set

Setting Software Auto-start

You can set whether to start a software automatically.

- [MENU] "i- ppli" "i- ppli settings"
"Auto start set" "ON"/"OFF"

Auto start time

Setting Start Date/Time

Set the date and time when the software starts automatically. This option can be set for up to 3 software.

- 1 Software list screen (P.275) Move the cursor to a software [MENU] [Menu] "Auto start time"
Perform the following operations

[Time interval set]

Start a software automatically with set intervals.

[Start time set]

Mark this if you set the time when an i- ppli automatically start.

[Time]

Set the time and date for auto start.

[Repeat]

Select a repeating pattern for auto start.

1 Time : The software starts automatically only once at the set date and time.

Daily : The software starts automatically at the set time every day.

Weekly : The software starts automatically at the set time on the specified days of the week every week.



 [Done]
Mark days to start automatically every week

* Available when "Start time set" is marked.

2

 [Done]



Note

- The software will not automatically start in the following:
 - The FOMA terminal power is off
 - A call or communication is in progress
 - Other functions are running
 - Lock all (even while Terminal security code entry screen is displayed) is set
 - Omakase Lock is set
 - "i- ppli" in "Data access lock" is "ON" (even while Terminal security code entry screen is displayed)
 - The Auto start time is the same as the scheduled time for software update, an alarm, Schedule event, or To do alarm
 - The i- ppli was downloaded using another UIM
 - The i- ppli has "Network set" to "Confirm every session"
 - The same i- ppli has a set time interval to start within 10 minutes
- Software will not start at the set time if other software is running at that time. Also, the software may not start while other functions are running.
- If auto start fails,  appears on the Stand-by display. Selecting the icon displays the Auto start info (P286).  disappears after the Auto start info is viewed.

Set i- ppli To

Starting i- ppli from a Site or Mail

Set whether to start a software from a site, mail, infrared communication, bar code reader, or 1Seg data broadcasting sites. Also, you can make settings for when holding the FOMA terminal on the scanning device supporting the IC card functions.

- Software list screen (P275) Move the cursor to a software  [Menu] "Set i- ppli To"  [Done]
Mark items to allow to start a software


i- ppli Stand-by display

Setting i- ppli Stand-by Display

Set a software of the selected i- ppli as the Stand-by display.

- Software list screen (P275) Move the cursor to a software  [Menu] "Software set" "Stand-by display" "ON"

Note

- Only 1 i- ppli can be set as Stand-by display.
- Some i- ppli cannot be set as Stand-by display.
- While on i- ppli Stand-by display,  appears on top of the display
- Turning the FOMA terminal's power on while i- ppli Stand-by display is set, a confirmation whether to start the i- ppli Stand-by display appears. Selecting "No" releases the i- ppli Stand-by display.
- If an i- ppli that performs communication is set as Stand-by display, the i- ppli may not work correctly due to weak signal reception.
- While Lock all is activated or i- ppli is restricted its use in Data access lock, i- ppli Stand-by display is not displayed.
- When Stand-by i- ppli is set, the Receive results screen for SMS does not appear, and the ring tone and vibrator for SMS do not work.

Operating i- ppli Set as Stand-by Display as a Regular i- ppli


 on i- ppli Stand-by display
i- ppli starts and becomes available to perform.

i- ppli Stand-by display release

Releasing i- ppli Stand-by Display

i- ppli running  "Cancel" "Yes"
Selecting "End" returns to the i- ppli Stand-by display.

Note

- You can also release the i- ppli Stand-by display by following: Press  in Stand-by "i- ppli" "i- ppli settings" "End stand-by display" "Cancel" "Yes"

i- ppli info


Viewing Various Information

 "i- ppli" "i- ppli info" Perform the following operations

[Security error history]
Display the error history of the software that were terminated due to security errors.
• [Delete]: Delete the selected error history entry.

[Auto start info]
Check if software succeeded in auto start. You can view the information and the latest date and time when the software started for up to 3 software set for auto start.
Start : The software automatically started successfully
Start x : The software failed to start automatically
Start : The software has not started because the set time has not come

[Trace info]
Display trace information on a software.
• [Delete]: Delete trace information on a software.

[Standby error info]
Display error information of an i- ppli Stand-by display that did not terminate properly.
• [Delete]: Delete error information.

Note

- Untraced history or information will not be displayed.


Deleting i- ppli

Software list screen (P275) Move the cursor to a software  [Menu] Perform the following operations

[Delete]

This item : Delete the selected software.

Selected items : Select and delete software.

Mark software to delete  [Delete] "Yes"

All items : Delete all software.

Enter the Terminal security code "Yes"

Note

- When the i- ppli to delete is set for auto start or Stand-by display, a confirmation whether to delete the software appears. Select "Yes" to delete.
- Some OsaiFu-Keitai compatible i- ppli delete data on the IC card or require to delete data on IC card starting i- ppli before the deletion, etc.
- Some OsaiFu-Keitai compatible i- ppli cannot be deleted.

Using Various i- ppli Functions

You can connect to a site or use the FOMA terminal functions while an i- ppli is running.

- You need to download the supported i- ppli in advance.
- Some i- ppli may operate the functions differently, or may be unavailable to use some functions.

Using Camera

- When the camera is activated by i- ppli, captured images will not be saved in "My picture" of "Data Box"; however, they are saved and used as a component of the i- ppli.

Use i- ppli to capture an image with the camera

Using Bar Code Reader

- The camera can be used via an i- ppli to read a QR code and Japan Article Number code.
- The read result can be used and saved by the software.

Use i- ppli to read a code

Using Infrared Communication

Use i- ppli to perform infrared communication

Note

- You may not be able to exchange data with some devices even if they have the infrared communication capability.
- You can also start an i- ppli by receiving i- ppli activation data via infrared communication.
- When performing infrared communication, any connection with sites or mail transfer will be canceled.



Osaifu-Keitai

Osaifu-Keitai	290
Starting Osaifu-Keitai Compatible i- pppli	291
Locking IC Card Function	IC card lock 292

Osaifu-Keitai

Osaifu-Keitai is equipped with the IC card and enables you to pay by holding the FOMA terminal on the scanning device at shops, etc.

In addition, with this function, you can deposit electronic money and check your balance or view usage history using transmission. In order to use safely, security¹ is fully secure. For details about Osaifu-Keitai, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

- To use Osaifu-Keitai compatible services, you need to download Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-ppli from Osaifu-Keitai compatible sites² and make the setting.

*1 Omakase Lock (P122) and the IC card lock (P292) can be used.

*2 "iMenu" "メニューリスト (Menu List)" "おサイフケータイ (Osaifu-Keitai)"

- Data (including electronic money, points, etc.) saved in the IC card may be lost or altered due to the FOMA terminal malfunction (Note that you will be asked to delete data if you leave the FOMA terminal for repairs, etc.). For the service such as reissue, restoration, temporary storage, or transfer of data except for the transfer by IC transfer service, contact the provider of Osaifu-Keitai compatible service. Make sure to use a service that provides a backup service for important data.
- DOCOMO shall not be liable for any loss or alteration of data saved in the IC card, or damage related to Osaifu-Keitai service caused by any reason such as malfunction or model change.
- If the FOMA terminal is stolen or lost, immediately contact your provider of Osaifu-Keitai compatible service about handling the trouble.

iC Transfer Service

iC transfer service¹ enables you to transfer² data on the IC card of Osaifu-Keitai to new Osaifu-Keitai collectively³ when replacing Osaifu-Keitai such as model change or repairing. After transferring data on the IC card, you can easily use Osaifu-Keitai compatible services again just by downloading⁴ Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-ppli. Use the iC transfer service at your nearby docomo Shop, etc.

For details about the iC transfer service, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

*1 Both the transfer source and destination mobile phone must be the iC transfer service compatible FOMA terminals. Go to your nearby docomo Shop, etc. for using this service.

*2 This service does not "copy" but "transfer" data. Therefore, data on the IC card does not remain in the FOMA terminal of the replacing source. In some cases, the iC transfer service cannot be used. Use the backup service for Osaifu-Keitai compatible service.

*3 Some Osaifu-Keitai compatible services are not supported by the iC transfer service. Only the data on the IC card of the Osaifu-Keitai compatible service that is supported by the iC transfer service can be transferred.

*4 Packet communication charges apply for downloading i-ppli or various settings.

Starting Osaifu-Keitai Compatible i-ppli



- When starting or downloading Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-ppli for the first time, the UIM in use is registered as a owner of the IC card. After the second time, the IC card function cannot be used without inserting the UIM registered as the IC owner.
- If you use the IC card function with another UIM, insert the UIM that is compatible with the IC card and delete all Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-ppli to use the IC card function.

"Osaifu-Keitai" "IC card content"


List of Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-ppli appears. Select i-ppli to start.


- Software list screen P273

Note

- You can connect to i-mode and search for Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-ppli by performing  "Search by i-mode" "Yes".
- You can activate the DCMX credit appli by performing  "Osaifu-Keitai" "DCMX".

Using Osaifu-Keitai




Hold the  mark of the FOMA terminal on the scanning device to use as electronic money for payment or tra c ticket. This function can be used without starting the software.

- The sticker is attached at the back side of the Back cover to keep the performance of FeliCa function. Do not remove the sticker.
- Hold the  mark on the center of the scanning part.



Scanning part of
the scanning device

Note

- Do not subject the FOMA terminal to severe shocks when holding the  mark on the scanning device.
- If the mark held on the scanning device is not recognized, try moving the FOMA terminal around.
- You can use Osaifu-Keitai functions by holding  the mark on the scanning device even during a call or i-mode connection, or when the FOMA terminal is turned on (Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-ppii cannot be activated). However, when the battery pack is not inserted or the battery pack is not used for a long time even if it is inserted, or the FOMA terminal is left without charging after sounding the battery alarm, this function may be disabled. Charge the battery pack.
- When the  mark is held on the scanning device, Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-ppii may be activated.
- You can set the FOMA terminal to light or blink the illumination when the scanning device recognizes the FOMA terminal.
P110

IC card lock


Locking IC Card Function

This function allows you to prevent the IC card functions from being used by others.

1 Stand-by display (for 1 + seconds)

When the IC card lock is set,  appears on the Stand-by display.

Canceling the lock

Stand-by display  (for 1 + seconds) enter the Terminal security code.

IC card lock set

Locking IC Card Functions when Turning Power On/O



"Osaifu-Keitai" "IC card lock set"

Enter the Terminal security code Perform the following operations

[IC card lock(Power ON)]

Set whether to lock the IC card functions when the FOMA terminal is turned on.

[IC card lock(Power OFF)]

Set whether to lock the IC card functions when the FOMA terminal is turned off.

Note

- When removing the battery pack, the IC card function is disabled regardless of the IC card lock setting.
- While the IC card lock is activated, downloading, upgrading, or deleting operation may be unavailable depending on Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-ppii.

Data Management

Data Box.....	294	Exchanging Data via Infrared Communication	
Making Full Use of Images		Using Infrared Communication	327
Displaying Images	296	..... Infrared communication	328
Editing Still Images	302	Sending and Receiving Data One by One	
Creating Slideshows	305	..... Send/Receive via infrared communication	329
Making Full Use of Moving Pictures		Sending and Receiving All Data	330
Playing Moving Pictures/i-motion	307	..... Send/Receive all via infrared communication	
.....		Using Infrared Remote Control Function.....	330
Editing Moving Pictures/i-motion	312	Making Full Use of Document Viewer	
.....		Viewing a Document.....	330
Using a Playlist	313		
Making Full Use of Melody			
Playing a Melody.....	314		
..... Melody player			
Making Full Use of Memory Card			
microSD Cards.....	317		
Using a microSD Card	321		
Exchanging Personal Information between the			
FOMA Terminal and a microSD Card.....	322		
Managing a microSD Card.....	325		
Using the FOMA Terminal as a microSD Card			
Reader/Writer.....	326		

Data Box

Data Box contains the items and folders shown in the following tables. Data obtained from sites or i-mode mail are saved to folders by category.

- Up to 18 folders each can be added to My picture, Music, i-motion, Melody, and Kisekai Tool. Up to 10 folders can be added to Music&Video Channel.
- Data saved in My picture, Music, i-motion, and Melody (except for data in the "Decomail picto" folder) can be moved to other folders within the category. Data saved in the Music&Video Channel can be moved from the "Distributed program" folder to another folder within the category, or can be moved among the folders other than "Distributed program".
- Deco-mail pictograms obtained from sites or mail are directly saved to the "Decomail picto" folder.
- Only Deco-mail pictograms can be saved in the "Deco-mail picto" folder.

My picture	
i-mode	Still images, etc. obtained from sites or mails
Camera	Still images captured by the Camera
Decomail picture	Pre-installed pictures for Deco-mail, etc
Decomail picto	Deco-mail pictograms pre-installed or downloaded from sites or mail
Preinstalled	Pre-installed still images
Item	Still images that can be used for frames or stamps
Data transfer	Still images, etc. obtained via infrared communication
Slide show	User-defined slideshows, etc.

My picture	
microSD	Still images saved on the microSD card
	Camera images
	Other images
	Decomail picto
Still images captured by the Camera	
Still images, etc.	
Deco-mail pictograms that are copied from the FOMA terminal	
Connect to i-mode	
Search by i-mode	
Connect to i-mode	
Music	
i-mode	Chaku-Uta Full® songs downloaded from sites
Playlists	Playlists created with the FOMA terminal or created with Windows Media Player and forwarded from a PC
Movablescontents	Chaku-Uta Full® saved on the microSD card
Resume play	Playback of the last played music/playlist
WMA	WMA files saved on the microSD card
SD-Audio	SD-Audio data saved on the microSD card
Searcy by i-mode	Connect to i-mode
Music&Video Ch	
Distributed program	Music programs distributed from Music&Video Channel
i-motion	
i-mode	Moving pictures/i-motion downloaded from sites or mails
Camera	Moving pictures captured by the Video Camera
Preinstalled	Pre-installed moving pictures
Playlists	Playlists created with the FOMA terminal

i-motion		
Data transfer	Moving pictures, etc. obtained via infrared communication	
microSD	Moving pictures or i-motion saved on the microSD card	
	Movablescontents	Copyright protected moving pictures or i-motion moved from the FOMA terminal
	Audio	Sound-only i-motion
	Video	Moving pictures captured by the Video Camera
Searcy by i-mode	Connect to i-mode	
Melody		
i-mode	Melodies, etc. downloaded from sites or mails	
Preinstalled	Pre-installed melodies	
Data transfer	Melodies, etc. obtained via infrared communication	
microSD	Melody	Melodies saved on the microSD card
Searcy by i-mode	Connect to i-mode	
Kisekae Tool		
i-mode	Kisekae Tool acquired from sites	
Preinstalled	Pre-installed Kisekae Tool	
Searcy by i-mode	Connect to i-mode	
Motion Oekaki		

Di erences on display name, file name, and title

Still images, Flash movies, moving pictures/i-motion, and melodies saved in the FOMA terminal have multiple names.

Display name	Names that appear on list screens in Data Box or on the Display/playback screens
File name	Names that appear on a PC or other mobile phones
Title*	Names for management of L-02B (cannot be edited)

* Still images and Flash movies do not have titles.

Icons displayed on the file list screen

Icon	Description
	Files that can be sent, or moved/cannot be moved to a microSD card
	File restricted
	Files with the UIM security function activated
	Files on the microSD card
	Files banned from being redistributed
	File types (JPEG/GIF/Flash/MP4 (extension: mp4)/MP4 (extension: 3gp)/SMF/IMF/Others (unsupported files))

* Icons that appear on the screen vary depending on the list screen type.

Displaying Images

You can display still images you captured, or obtained from sites or i-mode mails.

Available file formats

File format*	JPEG, GIF
Pixels	JPEG, Progressive JPEG: Up to 2592 x 1944 dots GIF: Up to 800 x 600 dots
File size	Up to 5MB
File extension	jpg, gif

* Some files in a compatible format may not be displayed.

1 MENU "Data Box" "My picture"

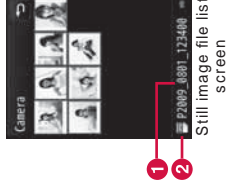
- [New]: Create a folder.



My picture screen

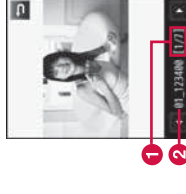
2 Move the cursor to a folder [Open]

- [Mail]: Display the Compose message screen with the selected file attached.
- [Delete]: Delete the selected file.
- [Switch]: Switch between List view and Grid view.
- Icons displayed on the list screen
 - P.295












- 1 Display name of the selected file
- 2 Type of the selected file

3 Move the cursor to a file [View]



- 1 Sequential number/number of saved files
 - Display the sequential number of the current file and the total number of saved files in the folder.
- 2 Display name of the file

■ Key operations on the Still image display screen

Operation	Description
	Display the previous/next file
 [Full]	Hide the soft keys and display a full image/restore to the original display size
 [Mail]	Send the displayed image via mail P138
	Enlarge the image/restore to the previous ratio
 [Zoom]	Use  [+] to enlarge the image and  [-] to restore to the previous ratio
	Move the display position when the image is enlarged <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The entire image and the displayed area appear at the edge of the screen.
 [Delete]	Delete the selected file

Note

- Some images that are not captured with L-02B may not be displayed on the Still image file list screen.

My Picture Screen Sub Menu

- My picture screen (P296) Move the cursor to a folder  [Menu] Perform the following operations





[Rename]

Change the name of the selected folder. Up to 30 full-pitch or half-pitch characters can be entered.

[New folder]

Create a new folder.
 • You cannot create a sub folder in the created folder.

[Delete]

One : Delete the selected folder.
 "Yes" Enter the Terminal security code
 Selected : Select and delete folders.
 Mark folders to delete  [Done] "Yes" Enter the Terminal security code
 • Press  [SelAll/CrAll] to select/clear all.
 All : Delete all user-defined folders
 [Done] "Yes" Enter the Terminal security code
 • Press  [SelAll/CrAll] to select/clear all.

[Grid view]

This option is not available.

[Sort]

Set conditions and sort files in a folder.

[Memory info.]

Handset memory : Display the status of storage space, etc. in "Data Box".

External memory : Display the status of storage space, etc. of the microSD card.

[Folder property]

Display the size of the selected folder and the number of files in the folder.

Still Image File List Screen Sub Menu

Still image file list screen (P296) Move the cursor to a file **[Menu]** **[Menu]** Perform the following operations

[Files]

View : Display the selected file.
Edit : Edit the selected file. P302
Rename : Change the display name of the selected file.
File property : Display the file name, size, and type, etc. of the selected file. P301

[Delete]

One : Delete the selected file.
Selected : Select and delete files.
Mark files to delete **[Done]** "Yes"
• Press **[SelAll/CtrAll]** to select/clear all.
All : Delete all files in the folder.
[x]**[Done]** "Yes" Enter the Terminal security code
• Press **[SelAll/CtrAll]** to select/clear all.

[Move]

One : Move the selected file.
Selected : Select a destination folder
Select and move files.
Select a destination folder Mark files to move **[Done]**
• Press **[SelAll/CtrAll]** to select/clear all.
All : Move all files in the folder. **[Done]** Enter the Terminal security code
• Press **[SelAll/CtrAll]** to select/clear all.

[Copy]

One : Copy the selected file.
Selected : Select a destination folder
Select and copy files.
Select a destination folder Mark files to copy **[Done]**
• Press **[SelAll/CtrAll]** to select/clear all.
All : Copy all files in the folder
Select a destination folder **[Done]** Enter the Terminal security code
• Press **[SelAll/CtrAll]** to select/clear all.

[Send via]

Mail : Create i-mode mail with the selected file attached. Go to Step 2 in "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" (P-138).
IrDA : Send a file via infrared communication.
Picasa : Upload the selected file to Picasa.

[Set as]

Set the selected file as the Stand-by display or incoming call screen.

[Sort]

Set conditions and sort files.

[Memory info.]

Handset memory : Display the status of storage space, etc. in "Data Box".

External memory : Display the status of storage space, etc. of the microSD card.

[New folder]

This option is not available.

[List view/Grid view]

Switch the file display format.

[Store in center]

Save files at the Data Center. P 132

* Not available for Flash movies.

Still Image Display Screen Sub Menu

1 Still image display screen (P296)  [Menu]
Perform the following operations

[Edit image]*

Edit the displayed file. P 302

[Delete]

Delete the displayed file.

[Edit title]

Edit the display name of the displayed file.

[File property]


Display the file name, size, and type, etc. of the selected file. P 301

[Send via]*

Mail : Create i-mode mail with the selected file attached. Go to Step 2 in "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" (P138).
IrDA : Send a file via infrared communication.
Picasa : Upload the selected file to Picasa.






[Full screen]

View the image in Full screen. In Full screen view, the following operations are available.

-  / : Return the full screen view to the original view.
- : Display the previous/next image.

[Zoom]*

Display an enlarged image. While zooming in, the following operations are available.

-  / : Enlarge the image
- : Return to the previous zoom ratio
- : Move the display position
- : Return the enlarged display to the original display
- The entire image and the displayed area appear at the edge of the screen.

[Set as]

Set the displayed file as the Stand-by display or incoming call screen.

[Store in center]

Save the displayed file at the Data Center.
Enter the Terminal security code "Yes"

[Motion Oekaki]

Edit the displayed file with Motion Oekaki™. P341

[View settings]

Set the image display format, zoom ratio, or interval between slideshow frames. P301

* Not available for Flash movies.

Note

<Picasa>

- The FOMA terminal connects to the Picasa site. Log in the site and upload files by mail attachment. The captured image is retained up to the compose message screen for uploading so make sure the receiver's address.
- A file of more than 2MB cannot be uploaded.
- For details, visit Picasa site (<http://picasa.google.co.jp/>) via PC, etc.




Viewing Flash Movies

You can view Flash movies downloaded from sites, etc.

- Available file formats

File format*	Flash
File size	Up to 100KB
File extension	swf








* Some files in a compatible file format may not be played.

-  "Data Box" "My picture"
- Move the cursor to a folder  [Open]
- Move the cursor to a file  [View]




- Sequential number/number of saved files
Display the sequential number of the current file and the total number of saved files in the folder.
- Display name of the file

- Key operations on the Flash movie playback screen

Operation	Description
	Display the previous/next file
 [Full]	Hide the soft keys and display a full image/restore to the original display size
 [Mail]	Send the displayed image by mail P138
 [Retry]	Play the Flash movie from the beginning
	Enlarge the image/restore to the previous ratio
	Move the display position when the image is enlarged
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The entire image and the displayed area appear at the edge of the screen.
 [Delete]	Delete the selected file



Flash Movie Playback Screen Sub Menu

Flash movie playback screen (P300)

 [Menu]

- The Flash movie playback screen sub menu is the same as "Still Image Display Screen Sub Menu" (P299). However, "Edit image", "Send via", and "Zoom" are not available.

Viewing Image Properties

- Still image display screen (P296)/Flash movie playback screen (P300)  [Menu] "File property"
 -  [Edit]: Edit properties.

■ Properties displayed on the File property screen



Item	Description
File name	Display the file name
File size	Display the file size
File type ^{*1}	Display the file format
Date & Time (Saved)	Display the saved date and time
Display size ^{*1}	Display the resolution
File restriction	Display whether the file is restricted
Source	Display the source
Move to the microSD ^{*2}	Display whether the file can be moved to a microSD card

*1 Not displayed for Flash movies.

*2 Data in a microSD card will be moved to the phone; display whether data can be moved to the phone.

Setting View of a Still Image

Set the image display format, zoom ratio, or interval between slideshow frames.

- Still image display screen (P296)/Flash movie playback screen (P300)  [Menu] "View settings"
 (P305)  [Menu] "View settings"
 Perform the following operations

[View type]

Normal : Display the image in its original size.

Fit to screen : Display the image enlarged to fit the screen.

[Zoom type]

Normal : Zoom in the image enlarged to fit the screen.

Same magnification : Zoom in the image displayed in its original size.

[SlideShow interval]

Set the interval between slideshow frames.

[Auto rotating]

Set whether to display the image in a direction when you captured it with this FOMA terminal.

 [Done]

Setting File Restriction

You can set the file restriction. The restricted file attached to mail cannot be sent or forwarded from the recipient's FOMA terminal.

- 1 Display a file to restrict  [Menu]
"File property"

The File property screen appears.

- 2 Move the cursor to the "File restriction" field  [Edit] "File restricted"

Note

- This option cannot be changed for a file downloaded from a site.

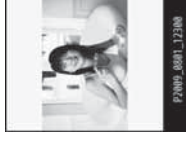
Edit image

Editing Still Images


You can edit still images. The edited still image is saved to the same folder as the source file.

- Only JPEG files can be edited. However, some files may not be edited.
- Editing a still image repeatedly may reduce the image quality or increase the file size.

- 1 Still image display screen (P294)  [Menu]
"Edit image"



Still image edit screen

- 2  [Menu] Perform the following operations

[Save]

Save the edited still image. Go to Step 5.

[Rotate]

Left : Rotate the image 90 degrees counterclockwise.

Right : Rotate the image 90 degrees clockwise.

180 : Rotate the image 180 degrees.

[Mirror]

Left/Right : Flip the image horizontally.

Up/Down : Flip the image vertically.

[Resize]

Change the image size. P301

[Crop]

Cut out a part of the image. P302

[Sketch]

Draw lines or characters.

- Press **[Menu]** to change "Pen/Eraser height" or "Pen color". Select "Eraser height" from "Pen/Eraser height" to erase a drawing where traced with a finger, etc.

[Insert]

Add a frame, stamp, or text.

- Frame : Add a frame to an image.
Move the cursor to a folder **[Open]** Select a frame
- After selecting a frame, press **[Menu]** to select "Change frame" or "Rotate".
- Stamp : Add a stamp to an image. P.304
Text : Add text to an image. P.305

[Retouch]

Change the brightness, contrast, or color tone of an image.

- Use **[<]** to switch to the item to retouch **[Select]**
- Adjust the item with **[<]**.
 - If selecting "Auto level" or "Auto enhance", the image is adjusted automatically.
 - If selecting "Color adjust" or "Level adjust", adjust each color with **[<]**.
 - Pressing **[List]** also enables you to select the item to retouch.

[E ect]

Set special e cts to an image.

- Use **[<]** to switch to the item to retouch **[Select]**
- Depending on items, adjust with **[<]**.
 - If selecting "Rotation" or "Spotlight", adjust each item with **[<]**.
 - Pressing **[List]** also enables you to select the item to set.

[Send via mail]

Create E-mode mail with the edited image attached.

[Undo]

Cancel the performed edit operation and restore the previous state.

3 **[OK]**

- Press **[Cancel]** to cancel editing.

4 **[Save]**

- Press **[Undo]** to return to the state before editing.

5 "New file" / "Original file"

- New file : Save the edited image as a new image.
Original file : Save the edited image over the source image.

Note

<Frame>

- Available frame size: CIF (352 x 288), Wallpaper (800 x 480), Wallpaper (400 x 240), QVGA (320 x 240), QCIF (176 x 144), and Sub-QCIF (128 x 96).
- Only the frame size that is same as the source image size can be set.

Changing Image Size

1 Still image edit screen (P.302) **[Menu]**

"Resize"

2 Select an image size









3 **[OK]**

Go to Step 4 in "Editing Still Images" (P.303).

Note

- The size of a source image with vertical or horizontal side smaller than 8 dots cannot be changed.
- If a size with different proportions than the source is selected, the original proportions will be retained for the resized image.










Cropping an Image

- 1 Still image edit screen (P302)  [Menu]
"Crop"
- 2 Select a cropping size Use  to move the frame to the area to be cropped  [Select]
 - When "User define" is selected Use  to move the cursor to start point  [Select] use  to move the cursor to end point  [Select] to set the area to crop.
- 3  [OK]
Go to Step 4 in "Editing Still Images" (P303).

Note

- The size of a source image with vertical or horizontal side smaller than 8 dots cannot be changed.

Adding a Stamp


- 1 Still image edit screen (P302)  [Menu]
"Insert" "Stamp"
- 2 Move the cursor to a folder Select a stamp Use  to move the stamp to the position  [OK]
 - To add another stamp Press  [Menu] "Change stamp" move the cursor to a folder  [Open] select a stamp use  to move the stamp to the position  [OK].
 - To rotate the stamp Press  [Menu] "Rotate" select from "Left"/"Right"/"180".
- 3  [Done]
Go to Step 4 in "Editing Still Images" (P303).

Note

- A stamp cannot be added to a source image with vertical or horizontal side smaller than 24 dots or larger than 640 x 480 dots.


Adding Text

Add text to an image. You can also change the font size or color, rotate the text, or add speech bubbles.

1 Still image edit screen (P302)  [Menu]

"Insert" "Text"

2 Enter the text to add

 [Menu] Perform the following operations

[Edit text]

Edit the pasted text.

[Font size]

Set the font size.

[Font color]

Change the added text color.


[Rotate]

Rotate the added text.


[Comic]

Add a speech bubble.

• Some speech bubbles cannot be set depending on the image size.

4 Use  to move the cursor to the position

 [OK]

5  [Done]

Go to Step 4 in "Editing Still Images" (P303).

Note



- Text cannot be added to a source image with vertical or horizontal side smaller than 2.4 dots or larger than 640 x 480 dots.

Slide show

Creating Slideshows

You can create slideshows with up to 20 frames using saved still images.

- Up to 30 slideshows can be created.
- Up to 480 x 800 dots of still images can be used for creating the slideshows.

1  "Data Box" "My picture" Move the cursor to "Slide show"  [Open]



2  [New] Enter the display name of the file

- 3**
- [Add] Move the cursor to a folder
 - [Open] Move the cursor to an image
 - [Menu] Perform the following operations
 - [View]: The selected image is displayed.
 - [Switch]: Switch between List view and Grid view.

[Select]

Add the selected file to the slideshow.

[View]

Display the selected file.

[File property]

Display the file name, size, and type, etc. of the selected file.
P301

[List view/Grid view]

Switch the file display format.

[Sort]

Set conditions and sort files.

[Memory info.]

Handset memory : Display the status of storage space, etc. in "Data Box".

External memory : Display the status of storage space, etc. of the microSD card.

[New folder]

This option is not available.

- 4**
- To delete the saved image

Move the cursor to an image to delete and press
[Delete] "Yes".

Displaying Slideshow

- 1** Slideshow list screen (P305) Move the cursor to a slideshow ■ [View]



- Key operations while viewing a slideshow

Operation	Description
	Play the previous/next slideshow
■ [Full]	Hide the soft keys and display a full slideshow/restore to the original display size

Slideshow List Screen Sub Menu

[Add images] Slideshow list screen (P305) Move the cursor to a slideshow [Menu] Perform the following operations

[Delete] Add images to the selected slideshow.

[Edit title] Delete the selected slideshow.

[Set as stand-by] Change the display name of the selected slideshow. Up to 30 full-pitch or half-pitch characters can be entered.

[View settings] Set the selected slideshow as the Stand-by display.

[File format*] Set the image display format, zoom ratio, or interval between slideshow frames. P299

Slideshow Display Screen Sub Menu

[Delete] Slideshow display screen (P306) [Menu] Perform the following operations

[Edit title] Delete the displayed slideshow.

[Set as stand-by] Change the display name of the displayed slideshow. Up to 30 full-pitch or half-pitch characters can be entered.

[Full screen]

View the slideshow in Full screen. (In Full screen view, the following operations are available.)

- : Return the full screen view to the original view.
- : Display the previous/next slideshow.

[Set as stand-by]

Set the displayed slideshow as the Stand-by display.

[View settings]

Set the image display format, zoom ratio, or interval between slideshow frames. P299

Moving picture/i-motion player

Playing Moving Pictures/i-motion

You can play moving pictures you captured, or i-motion obtained from sites or i-mode mails.

- Available file formats

File format*	MP4 (Mobile MP4)
Encoding method	MP4 file Video: MPEG-4, H.263, and H.264 Audio: AMR, AAC, HE-AAC, and Enhanced aacPlus
File extension	mp4, 3gp

* Some files in a compatible file format may not be played.

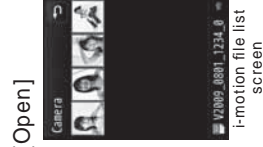
1 "Data Box" "i-motion"

- [New]: Create a folder.



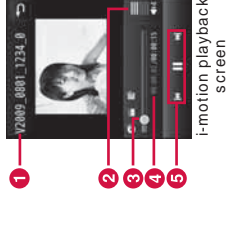
2 Move the cursor to a folder

- [Mail]: Display the Compose message screen with the selected file attached.
- [Delete]: Delete the selected file.
- [Switch]: Switch between List view and Grid view.
- Icons displayed on the list screen. P29.5



3 Move the cursor to a file

- [Mail]: Display the Compose message screen with the file in playback attached.



- 1 Display name of the file
 - 2 Volume
 - 3 Playback progress bar
Display the playback elapsed time.
 - 4 Elapsed time/total time
 - 5 Control keys
Display available navigation keys.
- Key operations on the i-motion playback screen

Operation	Description
[Pause/Play]	Pause/Play
[Stop]	Stop
[Previous]	Play the previous/next file
[Hold down]	While being pressed, rewind the video/sound
[Hold down]	While being pressed, fast forward the video/sound
[Volume]	Adjust the volume

When Link is set in ticker

After i-motion playback ends, a confirmation appears asking whether to use Phone To/AV Phone To/Web To/Mail To. To use the function, select an item and operate.

Note

- Some files may not be fast forwarded and rewind during playback.
- When you fast forward or rewind i-motion during playback, i-motion is paused.

i-motion Screen Sub Menu

i-motion screen (P308) Move the cursor to a folder [Menu]

- The i-motion screen sub menu is the same as "My Picture Screen Sub Menu" (P297).

i-motion File List Screen Sub Menu

i-motion file list screen (P308) Move the cursor to a file [Menu] Perform the following operations

[Files]

- Play : Play the selected file.
 - Rename : Change the display name of the selected file.
 - Reset name : Reset the display name of the selected file to its default title. If no title is set, "No title" is displayed.
- File property : Display the file name, size, and type, etc. of the selected file. P311

[Delete]

- One : Delete the selected file.
- Selected : Select and delete files.
 - Mark files to delete [Done] "Yes"
 - Press [SelAll/CirAll] to select/clear all.
- All : Delete all files in the folder.
 - [Done] "Yes" Enter the Terminal security code
 - Press [SelAll/CirAll] to select/clear all.

[Move]

- One : Move the selected file.
 - Select a destination folder
- Selected : Select and move files.
 - Select a destination folder Mark files to move [Done]
 - Press [SelAll/CirAll] to select/clear all.
- All : Move all files in the folder.
 - Select a destination folder [Done] Enter the Terminal security code
 - Press [SelAll/CirAll] to select/clear all.

[Copy]

- One : Copy the selected file.
 - Select a destination folder
- Selected : Select and copy files.
 - Select a destination folder Mark files to copy [Done]
 - Press [SelAll/CirAll] to select/clear all.
- All : Copy all files in the folder.
 - Select a destination folder [Done] Enter the Terminal security code
 - Press [SelAll/CirAll] to select/clear all.


i-motion Playback Screen Sub Menu

i-motion playback screen (P308) [Menu] Perform the following operations

[Send via mail]
Create i-mode mail with the selected file attached. Go to Step 2 in "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" (P138).

[Set as tone]
Set the file in playback as a ring tone, etc.

[Set as display]
Set the selected file as the Stand-by display or incoming call screen.

[Expand]*
Enlarge moving pictures/i-motion in the horizontal view.
• Press  to restore to the original display size.

[Screen setting]*
Normal Play : Set to play a file in the vertical view.
Full screen play (hor.) : Set to enlarge and play a file in the horizontal view.

[Chapter list]
Display the chapter list.

[Edit]
Edit the moving picture/i-motion in playback. P.312

[File property]
Display the file name, size, and type, etc. of the file in playback. P.311

* Cannot select after playback ends.

[Send via]

: Create i-mode mail with the selected file attached. Go to Step 2 in "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" (P138).
IrDA : Send a file via infrared communication.
YouTube : Upload the selected file to YouTube

[Set as tone]
Set the selected file as a ring tone, etc.

[Set as display]
Set the selected file as the Stand-by display or incoming call screen.

[Sort]
Set conditions and sort files.

[Memory info.]
Handset memory : Display the status of storage space, etc. in "Data Box".
External memory : Display the status of storage space, etc. of the microSD card.

[New folder]
This option is not available.

[List view/Grid view]
Switch the file display format.

Note

- <YouTube>
 - The FOMA terminal connects to the YouTube site. Upload files by mail attachment. The captured moving picture is retained up to the compose message screen for uploading so make sure the receiver's address.
 - A file of more than 2MB cannot be uploaded.
 - For details, visit YouTube site (<http://www.youtube.com/>) via PC, etc.

Note

- During the sub menu operation, the moving picture/i-motion is paused.
- <Set as tone/Set as display>
- The following moving pictures/i-motion cannot be set as a Chaku-motion or incoming call screen:
 - Files that were transferred to a PC or another FOMA terminal via infrared communication or DDCOMO keitai datalink and transferred back to the FOMA terminal
 - Files that were copied or moved from the microSD card to the FOMA terminal, including those copied or moved from the terminal to the microSD card and copied or moved back to the FOMA terminal (Except i-motion that supports contents migration)

Viewing Moving Pictures/i-motion Properties

i-motion playback screen (P308) [MENU] [Menu]

- [Edit]: Edit properties.

Properties displayed on the File detail screen

Item	Description
File name	Display the file name
File size	Display the file size
File type	Display the file format
Date & Time (Saved)*1	Display the saved date and time
Play time	Display the file playback time
Display size	Display the resolution
Video	Display the video format
Audio	Display the sound format <ul style="list-style-type: none">• HE-AAC and Enhanced aacPlus are displayed as AAC.
File restriction	Display whether the file is restricted P302
Ringtone	Display whether the file can be set as a ring tone
Receive display	Display whether the file can be set as the Stand-by display or incoming call screen
Title	Display the default title of the file
Creator	Display creator information
Copyright	Display copyright information
Description	Display the file description
Source	Display the source
Move to the microSD*2	Display whether the file can be moved to a microSD card

*1 Appear only for data in the FOMA terminal memory.

*2 Data in a microSD card will be moved to the phone; display whether data can be moved to the phone.

Edit moving pictures/i-motion

Editing Moving Pictures/i-motion


You can edit moving pictures/i-motion.

- The pre-installed files cannot be edited.
- Some files may not be edited.
- The ticker displayed on i-motion cannot be edited.

Clipping a Frame of a Moving Picture as a Still Image


You can clip a still image from a moving picture/i-motion. The clipped image is saved to the "Camera" folder in "My picture" of "Data Box".

- 1 i-motion playback screen (P308) Display the image to be clipped as a still image
 - Operations during i-motion playback P306

- 2  [Menu] "Edit" "Capture"

Clipping a Frame of a Moving Picture

You can clip a part of a moving picture/i-motion. The clipped moving picture/i-motion is saved to the same folder as the source file.

- 1 i-motion playback screen (P308)  [Menu] "Edit" "Clipping" Perform the following operations

[For mail short]

Clip the video from the selected start point to 500KB or smaller and save it. This option can be selected when the video size exceeds 500KB.

[For mail long]

Clip the video from the selected start point to 2MB or smaller and save it. This option can be selected when the video size exceeds 2MB.

[Bound]

Clip the video from the selected start point to the selected end point and save it.



Press  [Play] to play a moving picture/i-motion. At start point to clip,  [Start] At end point to clip,  [End]

Using a Playlist

The playback order of moving pictures/i-motion can be specified in a playlist. Select your favorite moving pictures/i-motion saved on the FOMA terminal and microSD card and play them in your favorite order.

Creating a Playlist

Up to 10 playlists can be saved. Up to 99 moving pictures/i-motion can be saved per playlist.

- 1  "Data Box" "i-motion" Move the cursor to "Playlists"  [Open]



- 2  [New] Enter a playlist name

• Up to 255 full-pitch/half-pitch characters can be entered.

- 3  [Add] Mark moving pictures/i-motion to save to a playlist  [Done]



Saved moving picture/i-motion list screen

- 4  [Done]

Playing a Playlist

- 1 Playlist list screen (P313) Move the cursor to a playlist to play  [Play]

Playlist List Screen Sub Menu

- 1 Playlist list screen (P313) Move the cursor to a playlist  [Menu] Perform the following operations

[Add i-motion to playlist]

Add moving pictures/i-motion to the selected playlist.
Mark moving pictures/i-motion to add to the playlist  [Done]

[Delete]

One : Delete the selected playlist.
Select : Select and delete playlists. [Left Arrow][Delete] "Yes"
Mark playlists to delete [Left Arrow][Delete] "Yes"
• Press [Menu][Menu] to select "Mark all" or "Unmark all".
All : Delete all playlists.

[Edit title]

Edit the selected playlist name.

Saved Moving Picture/i-motion List Screen Sub Menu

1 Playlist list screen (P313) Move the cursor to a playlist [Menu][Menu] "Add i-motion to playlist" [Menu][Menu] Perform the following operations

[Play]

Play from the selected moving picture/i-motion.

[Change order]

Change the order of the selected moving picture/i-motion. Select a moving picture/i-motion to move Select a destination "Yes"

[Delete]

One : Delete the selected moving picture/i-motion.
Select : Select and delete moving pictures/i-motion. [Left Arrow][Delete] "Yes"
Mark moving pictures/i-motion to delete [Left Arrow][Delete] "Yes"
• Press [Menu][Menu] to select "Mark all" or "Unmark all".
All : Delete all moving pictures/i-motion.

Melody player

Playing a Melody

You can play pre-installed melodies or melodies downloaded from sites.

■ Available file formats

File Format*	SMF, MFI
File extension	mid, mid

* Some files in a compatible file format may not be played.



1 [Menu] "Data Box" "Melody"

• [Left Arrow][Newj]: Create a folder.



Melody screen


2 Move the cursor to a folder [Open]

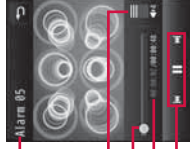
-  [Mail]: Display the Compose message screen with the selected file attached.
-  [Delete]: Delete the selected file.
- Icons displayed on the list screen P.295



Melody file list screen

3 Move the cursor to a file [Play]

-  [Mail]: Display the Compose message screen with the file in playback attached.



Melody playback screen

- 1 Display name of the file
- 2 Volume
- 3 Playback progress bar
Display the playback elapsed time.
- 4 Elapsed time/total time
- 5 Control keys
Display available navigation keys.

■ Key operations on the Melody playback screen

Operation	Description
 [Pause/Play]	Pause/Play
 [Stop]	Stop
	Play the previous/next file
	Adjust the volume

Melody Screen Sub Menu

1 Melody screen (P314) Move the cursor to a folder [Menu]

- The Melody screen sub menu is the same as the "My Picture Screen Sub Menu" (P297). However, "Grid view" is not available.

Melody File List Screen Sub Menu

1 Melody file list screen (P315) Move the cursor to a file [Menu] Perform the following operations

[Files]

- Play : Play the selected file.
- Rename : Change the display name of the selected file.
- Reset name : Reset the display name of the selected file to its default name.
- File property : Display the name, size, and type, etc. of the selected melody. P.317

[Delete]
 One : Delete the selected file.
 Selected : Select and delete files.
 Mark files to delete [Done] "Yes"
 • Press [SelAll/CirAll] to select/clear all.
 All : Delete all files in the folder.
[Done] "Yes" Enter the Terminal security code
 • Press [SelAll/CirAll] to select/clear all.

[Move]
 One : Move the selected file.
 Select a destination folder
 Selected : Select and move files.
 Select a destination folder Mark files to move
[Done]
 • Press [SelAll/CirAll] to select/clear all.
 All : Move all files in the folder.
 Select a destination folder [Done] Enter the
 Terminal security code
 • Press [SelAll/CirAll] to select/clear all.

[Copy]
 One : Copy the selected file.
 Select a destination folder
 Selected : Select and copy files.
 Select a destination folder Mark files to copy
[Done]
 • Press [SelAll/CirAll] to select/clear all.
 All : Copy all files in the folder.
 Select a destination folder [Done] Enter the
 Terminal security code
 • Press [SelAll/CirAll] to select/clear all.

[Send via]
 Mail : Create i-mode mail with the selected melody attached. Go to
 Step 2 in "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" (P138).
 IrDA : Send a file via infrared communication.

[Set as]
 Set the selected melody as a ring tone, etc.
[Sort]
 Set conditions and sort files.

[Memory info.]
 Handset memory : Display the status of storage space, etc. in
 "Data Box".
 External memory : Display the status of storage space, etc. of the
 microSD card.

[New folder]
 This option is not available.

Melody Playback Screen Sub Menu

Melody playback screen (P315) [Menu] [Menu]
 Perform the following operations

[Send via mail]
 Create i-mode mail with the melody in playback attached. Go to Step
 2 in "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" (P138).

[Set as tone]
 Set the melody in playback as a ring tone, etc.

[File property]
 Display the file name, size, and type, etc. of the melody in playback.
 P317

Note

- During the sub menu operation, the melody playback is paused.

Viewing Melody Properties

Melody playback screen (P315) MENU [Menu]
 "File property"
 • F R [Edit]: Edit properties.

■ Properties displayed on the File detail screen

Item	Description
File name	Display the file name
File size	Display the file size
File type	Display the file format
Date & Time (Saved)*1	Display the saved date and time
Play time	Display the file playback duration
File restriction	Display whether the file is restricted P302
Ringtone	Display whether the file can be set as a ring tone
Title	Display the default title of the file
Source	Display the source
Move to the microSD**2	Display whether the file can be moved to a microSD card

*1 Appear only for data in the FOMA terminal memory.

*2 Data in a microSD card will be moved to the phone; display whether data can be moved to the phone.

microSD Cards

You can save data on the FOMA terminal such as Phonebook entries, mail, or Bookmarks to a microSD card, or can load data on a microSD card to the FOMA terminal. Also, you can browse data on a microSD card from the FOMA terminal.

- L-02B supports a microSD card of up to 2GB and a microSDHC card of up to 8GB (commercially available) (as of June, 2009). For the latest information on operations of microSD cards, including manufacturers and capacity of cards, visit the following site (in Japanese only). A microSD card not listed at the site may not function.

- From i-mode "iMenu" "メニューリスト (Menu list)" "ケータイ電話メーカー" (Mobile Phone Manufacturers)" "WOW LG"
- From a PC <http://jp.lgmobile.com/>

Note that the information on the site shows results of compatibility checks and the results are not guaranteed.

- You can purchase microSD memory cards and microSD card adapters from electric appliance stores, etc.



QR code to access the site

Precautions on Using microSD Cards

- microSD cards formatted by another device such as a PC may not be usable on the FOMA terminal. Use microSD cards formatted by L-02B. Note that when formatting a microSD card, all data on the card is deleted. P323
- microSD cards may lose data or deform due to an accident or failure. It is recommended that you make a copy of important data and keep it in a separate place. DCCOMO is not responsible for loss or alteration of any data.
- It may take a while to communicate depending on the amount of data to transfer. Also, data may not be copied.
- Do not turn the FOMA terminal power off while data is being read or written.
- Do not unplug the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 (optional) while data is being read or written, or a microSD is being formatted. This may result in data loss.
- Never remove the microSD card while the card is being accessed such as when data on the card is being displayed or the storage capacity of the card is being checked.
- Do not attach labels or stickers on microSD cards. Even the thickness of labels may cause contact failure or data corruption.
- Do not touch the contacts with your hand or metal objects.
- Do not apply strong force, do not bend or drop, and do not let the card wet.
- Do not leave a removed microSD card within the reach of infants. Accidental swallowing or injury may result.
- When inserting/removing a microSD card, do not place your face close to the card because the card may eject when you suddenly release your fingers off it. Also, do not let small children touch the card. Injury may result.

Inserting/Removing a microSD Card

Before inserting/removing a microSD card, make sure to turn the FOMA terminal power off.

Inserting

- 1 Open the microSD card slot cover (1) and rotate in the direction of the arrow (2)

- 2 Slowly insert a microSD card with the metal contacts side up until it clicks

3 Close the microSD card slot cover

Note

- Insert a microSD card properly. If the card is not inserted properly, the card cannot be used.

Removing

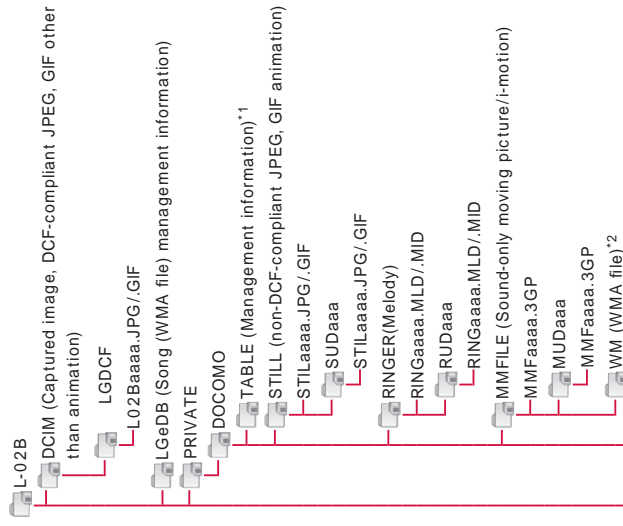
- 1 Follow Step 1 in "Inserting" to open the cover and softly push the microSD card in the direction of the arrow.
The microSD card pops out slightly.

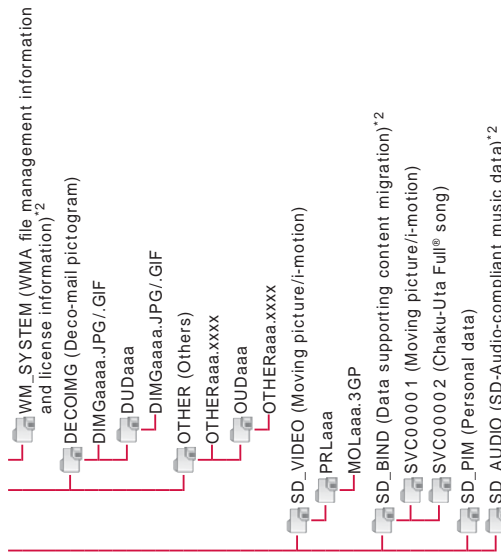
2 Remove the microSD card

Folder Structure on a microSD Card

When you move or copy files from the FOMA terminal to the microSD card, or save still images or moving pictures captured with Camera directly to the microSD card, a folder compatible with the file type is automatically created on the microSD card.

- When you write data to the microSD card from a PC, a folder structure and file name like the following are required:





xxxx : Extension (3- to 4-digit, half-pitch alphanumeric characters)
 : 3-digit, half-pitch numeric characters between 100 and 999
 (Use the same number for a folder name and file name saved in the folder.)

aaa : 3-digit, half-pitch numeric characters between 001 and 999
 aaaa : 4-digit, half-pitch numeric characters between 0001 and 0999

*1 The "TABLE" folder has sub folders that store additional information for "DCIM", "STILL", "RINGER", "MMFILE", "DECOIMG", "SD_VIDEO", and "OTHER".

*2 Data is encrypted and may not be viewed directly on a PC, etc. If you delete, edit, or add files under these folders, files may not work properly on L-02B.

- Number of savable files on a microSD card
 - The number of savable files on the microSD card varies depending on the capacity of the microSD card.
 - You can check available space on the microSD card by accessing "Memory info." or "Memory status". P325, P374

File	Folder	Number of savable items
Still image (DCF-compliant JPEG, GIF other than animation)	DCIM	Up to 900 folders/Up to 999 files per folder
Still image (non-DCF-compliant JPEG, GIF animation)	STILL	Up to 999 folders/Up to 999 files per folder
Melody	RINGER	Up to 999 folders/Up to 999 files per folder
Sound-only moving picture/i-motion	MMFILE	Up to 999 folders/Up to 999 files per folder
WMA file	WM	Up to 1,000 files
Deco-mail pictogram	DECOIMG	Up to 999 folders/Up to 999 files per folder
Moving picture/i-motion	SD_VIDEO	Up to 999 folders/Up to 999 files per folder
Personal data	SD_PIM	1 folder/65,535 files
Others	OTHER	Up to 999 folders/Up to 999 files per folder

Note

- In some cases, a microSD card used with this FOMA terminal cannot be used with other microSD-compatible FOMA terminals because the folder structure is different.
- Mails that contain Korean texts in a microSD card are not displayed correctly on the Korean-incompatible terminal.

- Depending on the PC in use, folder/file names may appear in lower case. Also, file extensions or certain folders (hidden folders), etc. may not appear.
- Do not delete or move folders on the microSD card using a PC. If you do so, the folders may no longer be readable by L-02B.

Note



- Some files may not be viewed/played.
- The folder/file list screen sub menu for a microSD card is the same as one for the FOMA terminal. However, the files cannot be set to the Stand-by display or ring tone, sent via infrared communication, and saved at the Data Center.

Using a microSD Card

You can move or copy files saved in Data Box on the FOMA terminal, such as still images, moving pictures or i-motion, to the microSD card, and you can view files saved from a PC to the microSD card on the FOMA terminal.

Viewing/Playing Files on a microSD Card






You can view/play files on the microSD card in the same way as ones on the FOMA terminal from "Data Box".

- 1  "Data Box" "My picture"/"Music"/"i-motion"/"Melody" Move the cursor to "microSD"  [Open]
 - "Displaying Images" P296
 - "Managing Music Data" P270
 - "Playing Moving Pictures/i-motion" P307
 - "Playing a Melody" P314

Copying/Moving Files between the FOMA Terminal and a microSD Card

You can copy or move files between the FOMA terminal and a microSD card by copying or moving files between the "microSD" folder and other folders in Data Box.

Example: To move a camera image saved on the FOMA terminal to a microSD card

- 1  "Data Box" "My picture"
- 2 Move the cursor to a folder  [Open]
 - Select a folder other than "microSD".
- 3 Move the cursor to a file  [Menu]
 - "Move" "One"
- 4 "External memory"
- 5 Move the cursor to the destination folder  [Open]  [Select]

Note

- Files which can be copied/moved are JPEG/GIF image files excluding pre-installed data, and moving pictures whose size is QCIF or smaller, and melodies.
- Chaku-Uta Full® songs, or i-motion downloaded from sites cannot be copied to a microSD card.
- Some files may not be copied/moved depending on file type or size.
- Flash movies saved on this FOMA terminal cannot be copied/moved to a microSD card.
- You can move transferable copyright protected i-motion or music data saved in the FOMA terminal to a "Movablecontents" folder in each "microSD" folder.

Copying Personal Information on the FOMA Terminal to a microSD Card

You can copy personal information saved on the FOMA terminal to a microSD card.

Copying Data One Piece at a Time

Example: To copy a Phonebook entry

- 1 Stand-by display  Select a Phonebook entry to copy  [Menu] "Copy" "to microSD"




Exchanging Personal Information between the FOMA Terminal and a microSD Card

You can copy personal information between the FOMA terminal and a microSD card, and you can back up your data in the FOMA terminal to a microSD card.

Personal information includes the following:

- Phonebook
- Schedule
- Text memo
- To do list
- Inbox
- Outbox
- Unsent message
- Bookmark

Selecting Data Type to Make Copy at a Time (Backup)

- 1  "LifeKit" "microSD" "PIM"
- 2  [Backup] Select a data type to copy
- 3 Enter the Terminal security code "Yes"  For Phonebook
A confirmation asking whether to copy data in "Own Number" appears.

Copying/Overwriting Personal Information on a microSD Card to the FOMA Terminal

You can copy/overwrite personal information saved on a microSD card to the FOMA terminal.

Copying Data One by One

1 [MENU] "LifeKit" "microSD" "PIM"

2 Select a data type

Data saved on the microSD card is displayed.



Personal data list screen
(Ex.: Phonebook)

■ Icons displayed on the Personal data list screen

Icon	Description
	Individual data (one piece of data) Phonebook/Schedule/Memo/To do list/ Inbox/Outbox/Unsent message/Bookmark
	Backup data (multiple data) Phonebook/Schedule/Memo/To do list/ Inbox/Outbox/Unsent message/Bookmark

3 Move the cursor to data [MENU] [Menu]

• [Select]: Display details about data.

4 "Copy to phone" "Yes"

■ For backup data

Select "Copy to phone" enter the Terminal security code "Yes".

Note

- In Step 3, you can select backup data. move the cursor to data. press [MENU] [Menu] to select "Copy to phone" or "Overwrite to phone". If you select "Copy to phone", you can further select "Selected data" or "All data".
- The maximum number of data that can be saved on the FOMA terminal can be displayed for individual data in backup data.

Personal Data List Screen Sub Menu

- 1 Personal data list screen (P323) Move the cursor to data [Menu] Perform the following operations

[Rename]*

Change the display name of the selected file.

[Copy to microSD]

Copy (backup) all data of the displayed data type from the FOMA terminal to a microSD card at a time.

Enter the Terminal security code "Yes"

- For Phonebook entries, a confirmation asking whether to copy saved data in "Own Number" appears.

[Copy to phone]*

Copy the selected data to the FOMA terminal.

- For backup data, select "Copy to phone" enter the Terminal security code "Yes".

[Overwrite to phone]

Overwrite the data on the FOMA terminal with the selected data. P324

[Multiple choice]*

Select and delete data.

Mark data to delete [Delete] "Yes"

- Press [Menu] to select "Delete", "Copy to phone", or "Select all" or "Clear all" from "Select/Clear".

[Delete]*

Delete the selected data.

[Memory info.]

Display the status of storage space, etc. of the microSD card.

- * Not displayed if there is no data on the microSD card.

Overwriting with Backup Data

You can overwrite the data on the FOMA terminal with data backed up in advance.

- Note that selecting "Overwrite to phone" deletes all saved data on the FOMA terminal and replaces it with the selected data from the microSD card. Make sure important data is not saved before selecting "Overwrite to phone".

- 1 Personal data list screen (P323) Move the cursor to backup data [Menu] "Overwrite to phone"

- 2 Enter the Terminal security code "Yes"


■ For Phonebook

A confirmation asking whether to copy data in "Own Number" appears.

Managing a microSD Card

Formatting a microSD Card

Format (initialize) a microSD card so that it can be used on the FOMA terminal.

- 1  "LifeKit" "microSD" "Reset microSD"
A message indicating all data will be deleted appears. Select whether you want to continue to format.

- 2 "Yes" Enter the Terminal security code

Note

- Use this FOMA terminal to format the card.
- Note that when formatting a microSD card, all data on the card is deleted.

Updating Data on a microSD Card

Update data on the microSD card if data cannot be displayed correctly on the FOMA terminal after changing, adding, or deleting data on the microSD card using another device.

- 1  "LifeKit" "microSD" "Data update"

- 2 Mark data types to update  [Done]

Note

- Updating data may take a while if a large amount of data is saved on the microSD card.
- If you use another device to save data on the microSD card, the data saved on the card may not be displayed correctly on the FOMA terminal due to insufficient available memory space for creating management information on the FOMA terminal.

Checking Usage Status on a microSD Card

- 1  "LifeKit" "microSD" "Memory info."


Note

- If the used space is not shown as "0KB" when no data is saved on the microSD card, format the card.
- The actual available space on a microSD card is smaller than the space printed on the card.
- Data may not be saved if there is not sufficient memory space on the microSD card. Delete unnecessary data or insert a microSD card with sufficient memory space to save data.

Using the FOMA Terminal as a microSD Card Reader/Writer

Connect this FOMA terminal with a microSD card inserted to a PC and read/write data on a microSD card.

- To use a microSD card, you need a microSD card separately.
- Only a PC with Windows Vista, XP, or Windows 2000 (Japanese versions) can be used to read/write data on a microSD card. Operation with other OS is not guaranteed.
- To use the FOMA terminal as a microSD card reader/writer, set up the USB mode. Before setting the USB mode, disconnect the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 (optional).

1  "Settings" "Others" "USB mode setting" "microSD mode"

2 Open the External Connector Terminal cover of the FOMA terminal **(1)** and insert the external connector of the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 with the front side (indicated by a mark, label, etc.) up until it clicks **(2)**

3 Connect the USB connector of the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 to a USB port on a PC **(3)**

USB connector
Release button
External connector
(label side up)

Release button

Note

- When removing a microSD card or the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 from a PC, be sure to perform the procedure on safe removal for hardware from the task tray of the PC. Removing the memory card or FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 without performing the proper steps may result in data loss.
- When switching USB mode setting, disconnect the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 first. When the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 is connected, the USB mode cannot be switched.
- If the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 is disconnected, the USB mode setting automatically returns to "Communication mode".

Important

Make sure that the FOMA terminal is correctly connected to a PC. If it is not connected correctly, data may not only fail to be exchanged but also be lost.

Infrared communication

Using Infrared Communication

You can exchange Phonebook entries, schedule events or bookmarks with a device supporting infrared communication.

■ Available data for transfer

Data type	Receiving capability		Sending capability		Number of savable items
	One	All items	One	All items	
Phonebook (Personal information)	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	Refer to P84
Schedule	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	Up to 200
To Do*1	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	Up to 50
Received mail	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	Up to 1,000
Sent mail	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	Up to 500
Unsent mail	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	Up to 500
Image file*2	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	Up to 2,000
Moving picture file*3	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	Up to 1,000
Melody*4	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	Up to 1,000
Bookmark*5	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	Up to 200*6
Memo	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	Up to 50

*1 If To Do tasks with alarm set are received prior to the set time, they may not be correctly saved.

*2 Up to 5MB of data per file can be sent/received.

*3 Up to 10MB of data per file can be sent/received.

*4 Up to 100KB of data per file can be sent/received.

*5 Sent/received bookmarks may not be filtered depending on the other party's terminal model.

*6 Up to 100 for i-mode and 100 for Full browser can be saved.

■ Save location of data received via infrared communication

Data type	Save location
Phonebook	Phonebook
Schedule	Schedule
To Do	To do list
Received mail	Inbox
Sent mail	Outbox
Unsent mail	Unsent message
Still image	"Data transfer" folder in "My picture" of "Data Box"
Moving picture	"Data transfer" folder in "i-motion" of "Data Box"
Melody	"Data transfer" folder in "Melody" of "Data Box"
Bookmark	"Bookmark" folder in "i-mode"
	"Bookmark" folder in "Full browser"
Memo	Text memo

Performing Infrared Communication

- Use infrared devices within a distance of approximately 20cm.
- Do not move the FOMA terminal until the data exchange completes.
- If you hold the FOMA terminal in your hand at infrared communication, be sure to hold it securely so that it is not shaken.

Infrared port

15 degrees

15 degrees

Within approx. 20cm

Cautions on Data Transfer

- Calls, i-mode, and data communication are not available during infrared communication because the FOMA terminal turns in the same status as out of service area.
- Data may not be transferred depending on the other party's FOMA terminal conditions. Depending on the other party's mobile phone model, the filter setting of received mail or bookmarks, or group setting of Phonebook entries may not be reflected, or the content of Deco-mail may not be saved correctly.
- Infrared communication with infrared devices other than L-02B may result in data not being received or displayed correctly.
- Communication may take a while depending on the amount of data to be transferred. Also, data may not be received.
- Infrared communication may not be performed successfully under direct sunlight or fluorescent light, or near another infrared device, due to the possible interference.

- Attachments to i-mode mail are also forwarded. However, some types of attachments may not be forwarded.
- If a message text contains pictographs or symbols, they may not be displayed correctly on a recipient mobile phone or PC which is incompatible with pictographs.
- Depending on the recipient terminal, mail subject may be received partially.
- Infrared communication is not available when Lock all, Data access lock is set, or when Self mode is activated.
- Mails in large size may not be sent correctly.
- When mail is forwarded, only downloaded attachments are forwarded.



Send/Receive via infrared communication

Sending and Receiving Data One by One

Sending a Piece of Data

- Set the receiving device to the infrared receiving mode before sending data.


Example: To send a Phonebook entry

Stand-by display  Move the cursor to a Phonebook entry  [Menu] "Send Ir data" "Focused data" "Yes"

Note

- A message appears if the destination device cannot be found. Check the distance and angle with the other party again.

Receiving a Piece of Data

- 1  "LifeKit" "Receive Ir data" "Receive"
"Yes"
- 2 Perform infrared transmission operations on the sending device
Infrared communication starts.
- 3 "Yes"

Send/Receive all via infrared communication

Sending and Receiving All Data



You can exchange all data with a PC or another FOMA terminal at a time.

- To exchange all data, an authentication password is used to identify the FOMA terminals of both sender and receiver correctly. An authentication password is any 4-digit number that you selected before infrared communication and should be entered both on the sending and receiving devices.

Sending All Data

- Set the receiving device to the infrared receiving mode before sending data.

Example: To send all Phonebook entries on the FOMA terminal

- 1 Stand-by display   [Menu] "Send Ir data" "all in phone"
 - If an image is set to a Phonebook entry, a warning indicating that it may take a while to send appears. Select "Yes" to send.


- 2 Enter the Terminal security code Enter the authentication password "Yes"
Infrared communication starts.

Note

- A message appears if the destination device cannot be found. Check the distance and angle with the other party again.
- Files in "My picture" cannot be sent at a time (one file can be sent at a time).

Receiving All Data

- Receiving all data overwrites over the data on the FOMA terminal and deletes all saved data including protected mails. Make sure that important data is not saved before sending or receiving all data.

- 1  "LifeKit" "Receive Ir data"
"Receive all" "Yes"
- 2 Enter the Terminal security code Enter the authentication password
- 3 Perform infrared transmission operations on the sending device
Infrared communication starts.
- 4 "Yes"

Using Infrared Remote Control Function

You can use the FOMA terminal as a remote controller of an infrared remote controlled device. An i-ppli can send remote control signals using infrared rays.

- To use the remote controller function, download software that supports the device. Key operations for remote control vary depending on the software.
- Some devices may not be controlled.
- Depending on the controlled device or ambient brightness, communication may not be possible.
- While Self mode is activated, the infrared remote controller cannot be used.

Infrared Remote Control Operations

Point the Infrared port of the FOMA terminal at the remote control sensor on a TV, etc. and operate the FOMA terminal within approximately 4m away from the device. Depending on the controlled device and ambient brightness, remote control may not be possible.

Within the range of
 ± 15 degrees

Within approx. 4 m

Infrared port

Viewing a Document

Display a document file saved on microSD card.

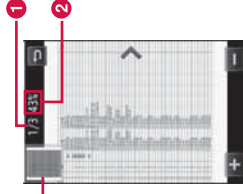
- Save document files in "OTHER" folder or "OUDxxx (xxx are half-pitch numbers from 0 to 9)" folder of a microSD card. P.319

Available file formats

File type*	Microsoft Word, Microsoft Excel, Microsoft PowerPoint, PDF
Extension	doc, xls, ppt, pdf

* Files for Word, 2007, Excel 2007, and PowerPoint 2007 cannot be displayed. Also, some files in a compatible file format may not be displayed.



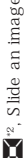
1. Press the **[MENU]** key. "Media" "Document viewer" Select a document



During zoom display, the entire document and the display area are shown.

1. Page number/total number of pages
2. Display magnification

■ Operation while viewing a document

Operation	Description
	Zoom/restore the previous zoom ratio
	Display previous/next page
	Move the display position

*1 Available only in normal view.

*2 Available only in enlarged view.

Note

- Tilting the FOMA terminal to the left automatically switches display to the horizontal view.



Convenient Functions

Using Google™ Service Menu.....	334	Using Text Memos.....	Text memo	370
Using Live Character Park.....	Live Character Park	Using Earphone/Microphone with Switch	Earphone/Microphone with Switch	371
Using Muvee Studio.....	Muvee Studio	Receiving a Call Automatically when an Earphone/ Microphone with Switch is Connected	Auto answer	373
Motion Oekaki™.....	341	Chiming Hour.....	Hour indication	373
Confirming if the FOMA Terminal is in a FOMA HIGH-SPEED Area.....	Check FOMA HIGH-SPEED area	Checking Status of Memory Usage	Memory status	374
M-Toy.....	343			
Touch Game.....	344			
Dictionary.....	345			
Multiaccess.....	Multiaccess			
Multitask.....	Multitask			
Ring Alarm at Specified Time.....	Alarm			
Managing Schedules.....	Schedule			
Managing To Do Tasks.....	To do list			
Managing Anniversaries.....	Remembering dates			
Saving Your Own Name and Image.....	Own Number			
Checking Call Duration/Charge.....	362			
Setting and Notifying Call Charge Upper Limit	Set call cost limit			
Using World Time.....	World time			
Using Stopwatch.....	Stopwatch			
Using Unit Converter.....	Unit converter			
Using the FOMA Terminal as Calculator	Calculator			
Using Sketch Memos.....	Sketch memo			

Using Google™ Service Menu

Using Google™ service menu lists i-mode search, Google Mobile service menu (Search, YouTube, Picasa, Gmail, Transit, News) and Setting menu so that you can easily access each menu.

- Packet communication charges apply. Note that high-capacity communication may take place and communication charge may be costly. For details about packet communication charges and billing plan, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

1 Press **[3]**/**[3]**

- The confirmation for use is displayed only at the first time. Read through the agreement and select "Agree and continue".
- If **[3]**/**[3]** is pressed on other than the Standby display, depending on the function in use, Google™ service menu is not available.



Google™ service menu

2 Perform the following operations

[Search]

Enter or set a keyword to display the result.

- The search mode can be selected from i-mode search or Google mobile search. The mode can be changed in "Setting".

[YouTube]

Access YouTube site.

[Picasa]

Access Picasa site.

[Map]

Start Mobile Google Map. P.281

[Gmail]

Access Gmail site.

[News]

Access Google News site.

[Transit]

Access Google Transit site.

[Setting]

Search bar : Set whether to display search bar on the Standby display.

Move the cursor to the "Search bar"

[Select] **[Done]**

• Press **[Select]** to switch ON/OFF.

Search By : Select a search mode from "i-mode search" or "Google mobile search".

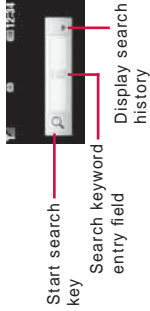
Reset search logs : Delete all search histories.

Using Google™ : Display the confirmation appears at the first time.

Search bar

Touch the Search keyword entry field to enter or set a keyword to display the result. Also, touch the search history display to display history, select a keyword and touch the Start search key to search.

- Search bar is available only by touch operation.



Note

- Depending on the status of contract or applicability of the Access Restriction Service (filtering service), you cannot access functions from Google™ service menu.
- If the Search bar is displayed on the Stand-by display, even if clock or calendar are set on Stand-by display setting they do not appear.

Live Character Park

Using Live Character Park

Display call log entries and the Recent msg log by characters visually. The third parties you exchange calls and mail are displayed on the Stand-by display as characters (Live Character) and animals gathers around the Live Character depending on the number of calls and mail. Also, when the Live Character, "Me" is displayed, a greeting message is displayed or the schedule of the day can be viewed.

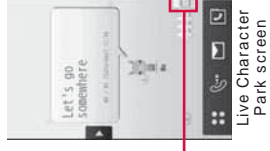
- The Live Character Park screen is described with the character type set to "Animal".
- The Live Character, "Me" P 338

Displaying Live Character Park Screen

- On the Live Character Park screen, only touch operation is available.

Stand-by display Touch

- Switch between Live Character Park screen and Stand-by display.



Display the Log screen. P 337

Note

- If any item of Display Call/Mail logs (P 126) is set to OFF, the Live Character Park screen does not appear.
- You can change the Live Character Park screen and Live Character type. P 338

Live Character

- The Live Character can be set to each entry saved in the Phonebook. P 86
- Random Live Character is displayed each time for the following entries:
 - Entries saved in the UIM Phonebook.
 - The Phonebook entries copied to the FOMA terminal due to model change, etc.
- Saving them to the FOMA Terminal Phonebook again (or editing their entries) displays the set Live Character.
- The other party that is not saved in the Phonebook is displayed with "? (question mark)".
- Up to 9 Live Characters can be displayed.
- Live Characters are reset at 4AM everyday. The Live Characters displayed before today disappear from the Live Character Park screen.

Live Character Park fun features!

- For seasonal events such as New Year or the Festival of the Weaver, or Christmas, etc. the background, etc. changes.
- Depending on the number of calls or mail of a day, animals gather around a Live Character.
- If there are missed calls or unread mail, Live Character notifies you by a speech bubble. (Example: For a missed call 📞)
- Occasionally 2 secret Live Characters appear.

Note

- For calls from anonymous callers, a Live Character is not displayed.
- The name saved on the Phonebook entry is displayed under Live Character. If the Phonebook is locked by "Data access lock", the phone number appears instead of the name. Also, you can set to require the Terminal security code to display the Live Character Park screen from the Stand-by display. P125
- If large amount of spam mail arrives and the Live Characters displayed consist mostly of the spam mail, prevent spam mail. For details, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

- The total number of missed calls/unread mail displayed on the Live Character Park screen is the total number for the Live Characters displayed on the screen. The total number may differ from the total number displayed on the Stand-by display.

Operating Live Character

Operate Live Character to make a call, send mail, or add entries to the Phonebook easily.

- Only touch operation is available.

Making a Call

1 Touch a Live Character of the other party to call

Touch

- You can make a call by sliding the Live Character, you once touched and selected, over 📞.
- If multiple Live Characters are selected, you cannot make a call.

Sending Mail

Select a Live Character and send mail. You can send mail to up to 5 people at a time. If more than 5 Live Characters are selected, you cannot send mail.

1 Touch Live Character of the other party to send mail

To select multiple people

- Slide the screen to display the area to select. The Live Characters within the area are selected. (Underneath of the selected Live Characters is colored.)
- If you touch background, all selections are cleared.

2

Touch

- You can send mail by sliding the Live Character, you once touched and selected, over 


Adding Entries to the Phonebook

1

 Touch Live Character of the other party to add

Touch

Go to Step 2 in "Adding Phonebook Entries from Redial/Received Calls etc." (P89)

- You can add to the Phonebook by sliding the Live Character, you once touched and selected, over 
- For already added Phonebook entries, you can edit the entry only.

Changing the Position of a Live Character

Move a Live Character to a position of your preference.

1

 Slide a Live Character

Deleting Live Character

1

 Touch and hold any of Live Characters for 1 + seconds

Turn to Live Character edit mode and  is displayed for each Live Character.

2

 Touch  of the Live Character to delete

- Touch background: Cancel edit mode.

Note

- Even if a Live Character is deleted, making/receiving calls or sending/receiving mail redisplay the Live Character.
- Even if Live Characters are deleted, the record of the Log screen (P337) remains.

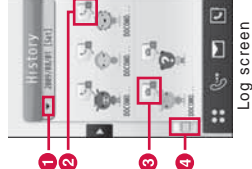
Displaying Logs

- Top 3 people with calls and mail each you exchanged the most are recorded in order of descending number of calls and mail.

1


 Touch  on the Live Character Park screen (P335)


- 1 Display the previous logs
When the date list appears, touch a date to view a record.
- 2 The log and the number of calls
- 3 The log and the number of mail
- 4 Close the Log screen



Note

- The logs of the last 30 days are recorded.
- If you exchanged calls/mail with more than 20 people a day, the older records are deleted. Therefore, the logs may not be recorded in correct order.
- Slide a Live Character displayed on log over a hot key enables the following operations.

 : Make a call

 : Send mail

 : Add to the Phonebook (The third party of unregistered phone number and mail can be added.)

"Me" Live Character

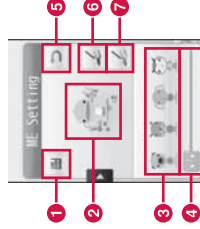
Your Live Character, "Me" appears when:

- The Live Character Park screen is displayed for the first time after purchasing this FOMA terminal without exchanging any calls and mail
- All displayed Live Characters are deleted
- Between when the Live Character Park screen is reset and mail and calls are exchanged

Changing your Live Character

If you touch Live Character, "Me" for 1 + seconds, you can make settings of your Live Character.

- To select a character type, set in "Setting Live Character Park Theme" P338
- Only touch operation is available.
- Available to change only when the Live Character, "Me" is displayed.



- 1 Save changes of the Live Character
 - 2 Selected Live Character
 - 3 Live Character list
 - 4 Scroll bar
 - 5 Slide to scroll the Live Character list display.
 - 6 Cancel changes of the Live Character
 - 6 Change color to the one displayed on the Live Character list
 - 7 Restore the changed color of Live Character.
- Change color
- Change the color of the clothes (or hair) of the selected Live Character in random order each time this item is touched.

Viewing Schedule Events

If scheduled event is saved and the Live Character, "Me" is displayed, the content of the event can be viewed.

1 A message and are displayed

2 Touch

A schedule event is displayed.

- You can touch  /  to view other schedule events.

3 Touch

Exit the schedule event display.

Setting Live Character Park Theme

Set the Live Character Park screen and a character type.

1 "Settings" "Display" "Live Character Park theme" Perform the following operations

[WallPaper]

Select the Stand-by display theme from "Zoo", "Park", or "Image".

- If "Image" is selected, select an image saved in "My picture" of "Data Box". In this case, background according to the seasonal events is not displayed. P296

[Live Character]

Select a Live Character character type from "Animal" or "Human".


If changing this setting, all Live Characters displayed on the Live Character Park are switched.

2 [Done]

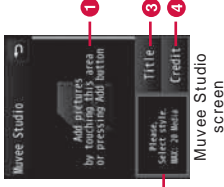
Using Muvee Studio

Use prepared muvee style (view switch effect) and music to create a slideshow with your favorite still images and moving pictures easily.


- A created slideshow is saved as a moving picture/i-motion (.3gp format) in "Camera" folder of "i-motion" of "Data Box".

-  "Media" "Muvee Studio"


1 File display area
Display the added images and moving pictures, and the set title and credit.
- 2 Muvee style**
Display the selected muvee style.
- 3 Title**
Display title set in "Set title".
P340
- 4 Credit**
Display a message set in "Set credit".
P340




-  [Menu] "Select muvee style" Select a muvee style

-  [Add] "Image"/"Video" Select a folder

- Use  to move the cursor to a file to add

 [Select] Repeat the operation to select a file  [Done]

-  [Menu] "Select", and use  [SelAll/CtrlAll] to select/clear all (Select files to add for up to the maximum number set for a muvee style).

-  [Preview]

-  [Save]

Note

- BGM, the number of savable files, and view switch method are set for each muvee style in advance. You can change BGM.
- If the muvee style is selected or changed and the number of the saved files exceeds the maximum number of the savable files, menu appears. Select "Change style" and change the muvee style to adjust with the number of files or select "Reduce image" and delete files to adjust with the selected muvee style.

Deleting an added file

Use  to move the cursor to a file to delete and press  [Delete].

Changing the order of files

Touch and hold a file for 1 + seconds to enlarge an image and slide it to a position of your preference. You can also perform the operation from the Muvee Studio screen sub menu (P339).

Muvee Studio Screen Sub Menu

- 1 Muvee Studio screen (P339)  [Menu] Perform the following operations

[Play order]

Select muvee play order from "Sequential" or "Random".

[Change Order]

Change the order of images.

Select an image to move  "Change Order" from Menu Use  to select the destination location  [Change]

[Save Location]

Select muvee save location from "Handset memory" or "External memory" (microSD card).

[Duration]

Select playback time duration from "Long" or "Short".

[Delete]

Select and delete a file.

Select a file to delete  [Done] "Yes"/"No"
• Press  [Sel/All/ClrAll] to select/clear all.

[Select muvee style]

Select a muvee style.

[Select muvee music]

Change BGM.

[Set title]

Set title displayed in opening.

[Set credit]

Set a streaming message played in ending.

Motion Oekaki™

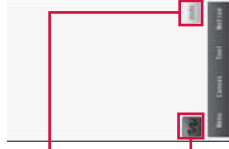
You can draw pictures, add stamps, or write texts on a still image. Also, you can create Flash movies by adding motion to the drawing.

- The microSD card is required to use Motion Oekaki™.
 - Saved as a Flash movie (SWF format) in "OTHER" folder of microSD card.
- To review the data, select "Motion Oekaki" in "Data Box".
- A file larger than 1 00KB cannot be created (saved).

1

MENU "Media" "Motion Oekaki"

Cancel the previous operation. Up to the last 20 operations can be canceled.



Selected tool

Canvas screen

2 Perform the following operations for drawing

- Only touch operation is available.

[Canvas]

Image canvas

- : Use an image as canvas to draw on.
- Select an image saved in "My picture" of "Data box".
- A large image is automatically resized maintaining the aspect ratio.

- Images of 480 800 cannot be resized.
- If horizontal size exceeds 480 pixels or vertical size exceeds 800 pixels, either the exceeding size is resized to 480 pixels in horizontal, or 800 pixels in vertical width.

Color canvas

- : Draw pictures on colored canvas.

[Tool]

(Pen)

: Slide your finger to draw lines and figures. Slide like you draw diagonal line to draw a figure.

- If you touch the selected tool, the type of pen can be changed.
- Lines and figures cannot be moved.

(Free line)

: Draw a free line.

(Curved line)

: Draw an arc between start point and end point.

(Linear line)

: Draw a linear line.

(Circle)

: Draw a circle.

(Box)

: Draw a box.

(Stamp)

: Touch and add a stamp.

Select a stamp Touch the canvas

to select another stamp.

Touching the selected tool displays a stamp list
















to select another stamp.




Touch a stamp added on the canvas to display a

frame to move the stamp by sliding. If motion is



added to a stamp, the stamp can not be moved.

Up to 20 stamps can be added.

-  (Text) : Write text.
- New : Write new text.
 "New" Enter text "OK"
 • Up to 8 full-pitch characters or 16 half-pitch characters can be entered.
 • After entering text, you can go on to edit the text.
- Edit : Edit text.
 "Edit" Touch text to edit Edit "OK"
 "KEY PAD" : Change text.
 "Text size" : Touch  (reduce) /  (Enlarge), or slide  of the size bar.
 "Text color" : Select a color.
 • Touch text to display a frame and slide to move the text.
-  (Size) : Change the text size.*
 Touch  (reduce) /  (Enlarge), or slide  of the size bar.
-  (Color) : Change the text color.*
 Select a color
 * Appear if  (Text) is selected.
-  (Thickness) : Change pen thickness.
 Select a kind of thickness
-  (Color) : Change the color of pen or fill color.
 "Outline color"/"Fill color" Select a color
 • If the selected tool is free line, curved line, or linear line, "Fill color" is not available.
-  (Delete) : Delete text, figures, or lines drawn on canvas.
 Touch text or stamp/Slide to enclose lines and figures within a frame  (Delete) "OK"
 • Slide like you draw a diagonal line to select all lines and figures enclosed within a frame. Text or stamp included in the enclosed within a frame are not deleted.
 • Use "Select all" to select all texts and stamps. To delete the lines and figures with motion added, select "Select all".
 • Use  to cancel deletion and return to canvas.

- [Motion]**
 Add motion to the drawing.
 Touch a stamp/Slide to enclose lines and figures "OK"
 "Preset motion"/"Motion line"
 Preset motion : Select a preset motion type.
 Select a preset motion type Confirm the preview "OK"
 • If you select a stamp or a figure with motion added and select , the motion is set to "None".
 Draw a trace line. Along with the line, the selected stamp and figures move.
 Motion line : Draw a trace line. Along with the line, the selected stamp and figures move.
 Draw a line "Preview" Confirm the preview "OK"
 • Touch "Retry" to re-draw a line.
 • If you select a stamp or a figure with motion added and select "O", the motion is set to "None".
- Text cannot be added motion.
 • Up to 5 motions can be added for a canvas.
 • Use  to cancel the motion and return to canvas.
 • If a stamp with motion added is selected, a tag (Ex.: ) is displayed. The tag changes depending on a motion type.
 • If motion is added to a stamp or a figure with motion already added, the newly added motion is applied.

3 "Menu" "Preview" "OK"

- Preview motion image.
 • "Send": Attach image to mail.
 • "Save": Save image.
 If saved while  is displayed, the drawing order is also saved. If  is displayed, the drawing order is not saved.
 Touch operation switches ON and OFF.

4

"Menu" "Save" "Yes"

- Saved as a Flash movie (SWF format) in "OTHER" folder of microSD card.

Note

- The file created with Motion Oekaki™ is saved as a Flash movie. You can send the file to terminals that support receiving Flash movies. (The Flash movies created by other than Motion Oekaki™ cannot be attached to mail.)
 - The image sent by mail can be viewed only with models that support Decome-Anime and some models of 905i series or later.
- For the intended models, go to LG Mobile web site (<http://jp.lgmobile.com/>) from a PC. (Japanese only)
- You can display Motion Oekaki™ files saved on a microSD card by performing ^[MENU] "Data box" "Motion Oekaki". For the sub menu operations, refer to the case with still images. However the some items are not available.

<Canvas >

- To reset the drawing on canvas, select "Menu" "Reset" "Yes".

Check FOMA HIGH-SPEED area

Confirming if the FOMA Terminal is in a FOMA HIGH-SPEED Area

Note

- Depending on the condition (weather, signal strength, or network congestion, etc.) when you are using the FOMA terminal, even if you use the FOMA terminal at same place, same time, the diagnostic result may differ or the result that the terminal is out of service area may be displayed.

M-Toy

You can enjoy 5 games by tilting or shaking the FOMA terminal.

- On the M-Toy screen, only touch operation is available.

1 ^[MENU] "Media" "M-Toy" Select a game Touch the screen Follow on-screen instructions

- ^[MENU] is displayed when the game starts. You can change the environment of sound or vibration, or terminate the game, etc.

■ Kind of games and how to play

Title	How to play
FISHING	Make a cast and fish up when catching fish.
DART	Throw 3 darts and compete for gaining scores.
HOMERUN DERBY	When pitched, swing a bat at a right timing and compete for the number of home-runs.
TOWER	Drop a circus man from a balloon to make another circus man below to carry it on its shoulder to build a tower. Pile up in a balanced manner not to fall apart the tower.
APPLE TREE	Drop apples from apple trees. Play with others by rotation and the one who dropped a rotten apple (in blue purple) loses this game.

WARNING

You play these games by tilting or shaking the FOMA terminal. Shaking the FOMA terminal too much may hit people or object, causing accident or malfunction. Make sure that you grip firmly the FOMA terminal, do not shake it more than needs and make sure the safety of your surroundings while playing.

Touch Game

Enjoy 2 games you can play using the touch panel.

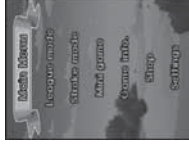
Touch Golf

You can enjoy golf games such in League mode, Stroke mode, or Mimi game.

1  "Media" "Touch game" "Touch Golf"

2 Touch the screen "Empty" Select a character

- "Help" provides how to play or screen instructions.

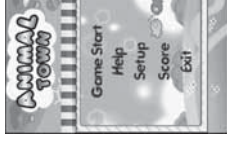


Animal Town

You can enjoy this game using touch and slide operations. You can challenge a bonus game depending on your score.

1  "Media" "Touch game" "Animal Town" Touch the screen

- "Help" provides instructions on how to play.




2 "Game Start" Select a game

Dictionary

Using Dictionary

Japanese, English-Japanese, and Japanese-English dictionaries are available.

 "Media" "Dictionary"

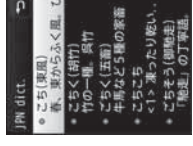


2 "JPN dict.," "ENG-JPN dict.," "JPN-ENG dict.,"

- "Search history": Display search history.
- "Dictionary info.": Display company information providing dictionaries.

3 Enter word to search

-  [Input]: Input another word.
-  [Page]/ [Page]: Display a list page by page.



Search result list screen
(Ex.: JPN dict.)

4 Use to select a word

The Search result detail screen is displayed.

- For English-Japanese dictionary, press  [Pron.] to listen to the pronunciation.
- To add to a wordbook, press  [Store].

Search Result List/Detail Screen Sub Menu

1 Search result list screen (P.345)/detail screen **[Menu]** Perform the following operations

[Range select]

Select a part of search result to copy or search in another dictionary.
Select start point of a range Select end point "Copy"/"Srch other dict"

[Srch other dict]

Change to another dictionary and search.

[Search history]

Display search history.

[Help]

Display description on dictionaries.

* Not displayed on the Search result list screen.

Using Workbook

Searched words can be added (P.345) up to 200 to a workbook of each dictionary. Using a workbook, you can carry out memory training.

- If a word is not added to a workbook, you cannot select workbook.

Viewing Workbook

1 **[Menu]** "Media" "Dictionary" "Workbook" "JPN dict. /"ENG-JPN dict. /" JPN-ENG dict."

- To mark words

Only marked words can be the target to be at the questioning of memory training.

Use **[←]** to move the cursor to a word **[E=]**[Unmark/Mark]



Workbook list screen

2 Select words

The Workbook detail screen is displayed.

- Use **[Mark/Unmark]** to unmark or mark.

Wordbook List Screen Sub Menu



1 Wordbook list screen (P346) [Menu]

Perform the following operations

[Sort]

Chronologi. : Sort by the newest word entry.
Chronologi. : Sort by the oldest word entry.
Word name : Sort by alphabetical order or the Japanese syllabary order.
Word name : Sort by alphabetical reverse order or the Japanese syllabary reverse order.

[Delete]

One : Delete a selected word.
Selected : Select and delete multiple words.
Mark words to delete  [Delete] "Yes"
• Press  [Sel/All/CirAll] to select/clear all.
All : Delete all words.

[Mark]

Mark all : Mark all words.
Unmark all : Unmark all words.

[Srch other dict]

Change to another dictionary and search.

[Search history]

Display search history.

[Help]

Display description on dictionaries.

Note

- The wordbook detail screen sub menu is the same as "Search Result List/Detail Screen Sub Menu" (P346) except "Delete".


Memory Training

Use wordbook for self-grading memory training.



1 Dictionary screen (P345) "Wordbook" "Memory training" "JPN dict."/"ENG-JPN dict."/"JPN-ENG dict."

- "Help": Display operation description.
- To change the questioning method "Settings" set each item.

2 [Answer]

-  [Skip]: Skip a question.

3 Check the answer [NG] / [Next] / [OK]

- Repeat Steps 2 and 3 until the training finishes.
- Press  [Menu] to mark words on the Wordbook list screen (P346). Also, press  [OK] to unmark words on the Wordbook list screen.

Multiaccess

Multiaccess

Multiaccess is a function that allows you to use 3 lines (voice call, packet communication, and SMS) concurrently.

Communication type	Available line
Voice call	1 line
i-mode, i-ppli, i-mode mail, and packet communication via a PC	1 line
SMS	1 line

Note

- Multiaccess combinations P444
- During Multiaccess, communication charges apply to each communication.
- During a videophone call, Multiaccess is disabled except for receiving SMS.


Making a Voice Call during Packet Communication

By launching the New task screen (P349), a voice call can be made during packet communication such as i-mode.


Example: To make a voice call during i-mode communication

- 1 i-mode screen (P183)  (for 1 + seconds) "Dialing"

The Phone number entry screen appears.

- 2 Enter a phone number 

Note

- To return to the i-mode communication screen from the Voice call screen, press  and select "i-mode".

Receiving a Voice Call during Packet Communication

A voice call can be received during packet communication such as i-mode.


Example: To receive a voice call during i-mode communication

- 1 A call arrives

The Incoming call screen appears.



Note

- To return to the i-mode communication screen from the Voice call screen, press  and select "i-mode".

Using Other Communications during a Voice Call

During a voice call, you can perform operations such as sending/receiving mail or connecting to i-mode.

Sending Mails

- 1 Voice call screen  (for 1 + seconds) "Mail"

- 2 Create and send a mail

Note

- Creating and sending a mail P138, P176


Receiving Mails

An icon (P34) notifying of incoming mail appears at the top of the screen.




Voice call screen

Connecting to i-mode

Voice call screen  (for 1 + seconds)
"i-mode" "iMenu"

Note

- To return to the Voice call screen, press  "Yes".

Multitask


Multitask

This FOMA terminal provides Multitask function that allows you to start and operate multiple applications concurrently.

Task manager

Launching a New Function

To launch a new function while another function is running, display the New task screen (Task manager).

T While using an application  (for 1 + seconds)

- Unavailable functions are grayed out.



2 Select an application to run

- Available applications vary depending on the currently running application and its operating status.

[Dialing]

The Phone number entry screen appears. P 56

[Mail]

The Mail menu screen appears. P 137

[i-mode]

The i-mode menu screen appears. P 182

[i-ppli]

The Software list screen appears. P 275

[1Seg]

The 1Seg view screen appears. P 245

[Search phonebook]

The Search phonebook screen appears. P 92

[Music]

The Music screen appears. P 263

[Music&Video Ch]

Display the Music&Video Channel screen. P 254

[Camera]

The Still image capture screen appears. P 222

[Kisekae Tool]

Display the Kisekae Tool screen.

[Schedule]

The Calendar screen appears. P 353

[To do list]

The To do list screen appears. P 358

[Text memo]

The Text memo list screen appears. P 370

[Calculator]

The Calculator screen appears. P 367

[Own number]

The Own number screen appears. P 54

Note

- Pressing  in Stand-by while running a function also displays the New task screen.
- Multitask combinations P 445

Switching/Viewing Applications

To switch or view applications, display the Task list screen.

1 While running an application

- Select "New task" on the Task list screen to display the New task screen (P 349) that allows you to launch another application.

Select "Stand-by screen" to display the Stand-by display. The running applications are listed



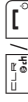
Task list screen

2 Select a function

The screen for the selected application appears.

Terminating an Application

Terminate the currently displayed application and display the previously displayed application.



While running an application

- Display the application to terminate first.
- Repeat these steps to terminate all applications.

Alarm

Ringing Alarm at Specified Time

The FOMA terminal can be used as an alarm clock. Up to 10 alarms can be registered.

"LifeKit" "Alarm"

- Press to set the selected alarm ON/OFF.



Alarm list screen

Icons displayed on the Alarm list screen

Icon	Description
	Alarm set to "ON".
	Alarms with "Set repeat" set

2 Move the cursor to an alarm to edit Perform the following operations

(ON/OFF list)

Set whether to enable the alarm.

(Set time)

Set the time the alarm sounds.

(Set repeat)

Select a repetition type.

- If you select "Except holiday", the alarm does not sound on Sundays and holidays set in "Set holiday" (P356).
- If "Weekdays" is selected, perform the following operations to specify the days of the week for the alarm to sound:

[List] on field Mark days of a week [Done]

(Select type)

Select an alarm tone.

Music : Select a Chaku-Uta Full® song saved in "Music" of "Data Box". P270
Go to Step 3 in "Setting a Chaku-Uta Full® Song as a Ring Tone" (P266).

i-motion : Select a moving picture/-motion saved in "i-motion" of "Data Box". P307

Melody : Select a melody saved in "Melody" of "Data Box". P314

(Memo)

Up to 7 full-pitch or 15 half-pitch characters can be entered. The entered text is displayed on the Alarm screen that appears when the alarm sounds.

(Turbo Alarm)

Set whether to enable the Turbo alarm that increases its volume levels up to the maximum volume by phase and vibrates the terminal.

[Snooze interval]
Select a snooze interval. To deactivate Snooze, select "OFF".

3 [Done]

Alarm List Screen Sub Menu

1 Alarm list screen (P351) [Menu]
Perform the following operations

[Edit]

Edit the selected alarm setting. P351

[Turn ON/Turn OFF]

Set the selected alarm "ON"/"OFF".

[Multiple choice]

Select alarms and set whether to enable them.

Mark alarms [ON/OFF]

- Press [Sel. all/Clr. all] to select/clear all.

When an "Alarm" or "Schedule"/"To do" alarm reaches the specified time

Each function performs as follows.

Alarm

The Alarm screen appears, the alarm tone sounds and the illumination lights up.

- [OFF]: Cancel the alarm. If the snooze is set, it is also canceled.
- [Snooze]: Stop the alarm temporarily. When the snooze interval time is up, the alarm starts sounding again.
- [Cancel]: Cancel the alarm. If the snooze is set, it continues.
- If you leave the FOMA terminal for approximately 1 minute without any operations, alarm tone stops. If the snooze is set, the alarm tone repeatedly sounds 12 times at approximately 5-minute intervals. (5 minutes regardless of the setting of the snooze interval time)

Schedule

The Schedule alarm screen appears, the alarm tone sounds and the illumination lights up.

- To stop the alarm, press [OFF] and then [OFF] on the Schedule detail screen. (Perform the same when Snooze is set)
- To sound the alarm tone again, select [Snooze] select a snooze interval.
- If you leave the FOMA terminal for approximately 1 minute without any operations, alarm tone stops. Then, the alarm tone repeatedly sounds 12 times at approximately 5-minute interval.
- If you press [Cancel] or close the FOMA terminal, the alarm tone will stop temporarily. Then, the alarm tone repeatedly sounds at approximately 5-minute interval.

To do

The To do alarm screen appears, the alarm tone sounds, and the illumination lights up.

- To stop the alarm, press [OFF] and then [OFF] on the To do detail screen.
- If you leave the FOMA terminal for approximately 1 minute without any operations, alarm tone stops. Then, the alarm tone repeatedly sounds 12 times at approximately 5-minute interval.
- If you press [Cancel] or close the FOMA terminal, the alarm tone will stop temporarily. Then, the alarm tone repeatedly sounds at approximately 5-minute interval.

When the Alarm and Schedule/To do alarms are set at the same time

The priority order for the alarms is Alarm Schedule alarm To do alarm.

Schedule


Managing Schedules

Registering Schedule Events

You can register schedule events such as a meeting or appointment. Up to 200 schedule events can be saved.

Stand-by display  **Move the cursor to the day to save in Schedule**  **[New]**

"General"** Perform the following operations
* If the 1Seg channel setting is not made, you do not perform the operation to select "General".

- Select "1Seg Booking" to set time for starting 1Seg. P248
- When the cursor is on the date and time setting field, you can cancel creating a schedule event by pressing  **[Cancel]** "Yes".


Subject

Up to 25 full-pitch or 50 half-pitch characters can be entered. Up to 2 subjects are displayed at the bottom of the Monthly view screen. Subject is required to register a schedule event. The subject is also displayed on the Alarm screen that appears when the alarm sounds.

(Time)

Set the date and time to start/end the schedule event.

All day : Register the schedule event for a whole day without specifying time.

Set time : After setting, use  to move the cursor to the date and time field and enter the start and end date and time of the schedule event.

- The end time cannot be set earlier than the start time.

Details

Up to 300 full-pitch or 600 half-pitch characters can be entered.

Place

Up to 25 full-pitch or 50 half-pitch characters can be entered.

(Set alarm)

Set whether to notify of the set starting date and time by alarm. If you set other than "No alarm", perform the following operations to select an alarm tone.

 **[List]** on the  field Select a type of the alarm tone
Music : Select a Chaku-Uta Full® song saved in "Music" of "Data Box". P270



Go to Step 3 in "Setting a Chaku-Uta Full® Song as a Ring Tone" (P266).




i-motion : Select a moving picture/i-motion saved in "i-motion" of "Data Box". P307

Melody : Select a melody saved in "Melody" of "Data Box". P314

(Set repeat)

You can set a regular event repeatedly. Perform the following operations to set the expiration.

 **[List]** on  field "Set expiration" Move the cursor to the Expire date field to set expire date
If "Weekdays" is selected, perform the following steps to specify the day of the week.

 **[List]** on  field Mark days of a week  **[Done]**

(Category)

Select a category of the schedule event. Icons vary depending on the selected category.

1 (Secret)

This option appears when "Secret mode" (P 127) is set to "ON". If you save the created schedule event as secret data, select "ON".

2 Done

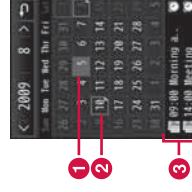
Note

- <Set alarm>
 - The image displayed when an alarm is notified does not display the date when the alarm is set.
- <Set repeat>
 - When a schedule event is set start/end time that straddle a day, repeat "Daily" cannot be set.
- <Secret>
 - The schedule event is also saved as secret data when "Secret mode" (P 127) is set to "Secret data only".
 - The schedule saved as secret data is displayed when "Secret mode" is set to "ON" or "Secret data only".
 - At the set time of a schedule saved as secret data while "Secret mode" is set to "OFF", the alarm tone sounds, however, the description of the event does not appear, and "Secret" appears on the Alarm screen.

Viewing Scheduled Events

You can view scheduled events from the Calendar screen.

1 Stand-by display

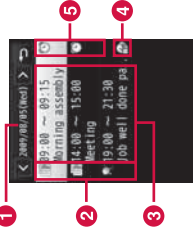


Calendar screen
(Monthly view)

- Highlighted date
 - The date when an event is scheduled
 - An event scheduled on the highlighted day
- Up to 2 events are displayed. Scheduled events with the start time passed are not displayed.
- : Switch the view to yearly.
 - : Switch the view to monthly.
 - : Return to the current date.
 - Numbers in blue indicate Saturdays, and in red indicates Sundays and holidays.
 - You can switch the Calendar screen between Monthly and Weekly view. P 355

2 Select a day to view

- [Left Arrow]/[Right Arrow]: Switch to the previous/next day.



- 1 Date
- 2 "Category" icon
- 3 Start time to end time, subject
- 4 Event scheduled in an area at other than Japan time
Appears for an event scheduled while "Local time zone" (P53) is set to other than "GMT+9:00".
- 5 Alarm icon
Appears when the alarm is set.

3 Select the event to view

The Schedule detail screen appears.

- [Left Arrow]/[Mail]: Send the displayed schedule as an attachment of i-mode mail.

Note

- National holidays are based on "国民の祝日に関する法律及び老人福祉法の一部を改正する法律(平成17年法律第43号までのもの)" (the Public Holiday Law and Welfare Law for the Aged, as amended (Law No. 43, 2005)). "Spring Equinox Day and Autumnal Equinox Day are released in an official gazette on February 1st and may not be exact (as of June, 2009).

Switching the Calendar screen

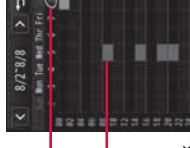
The Calendar screen can be viewed on monthly basis or weekly basis.

Perform the following operations to switch views temporarily.

[Menu]/[Menu] on the Calendar screen "Weekly view"/"Monthly view"

Perform the following operations to switch the default display.

[Menu]/[Menu] on the Calendar screen "Settings" [List] on Default view field "Month view"/"Week view" [Done]



An "All day" schedule event is set for the day

Set time for the schedule event

- [Left Arrow]/[Next]: Display weekly schedules of the previous week or next week.

Calendar Screen Sub Menu

1 Monthly view (P.354)/Weekly view (P.355)

[Menu] [Menu] Perform the following operations

[Add new]

Register a new schedule event. P.353

[Set holiday/Clear holiday]

Set or clear a selected day as a holiday. Up to 100 days including holidays can be set.

To set a day as a holiday, move the cursor to the "Holiday" field [F5] [Edit] edit holiday name move the cursor to the Set repeat field and select an item from the following [F5] [Done].

On the day : Set the highlighted date as a holiday.

Weekly : Set day of the highlighted date as a weekly holiday.

Monthly : Set the highlighted date as a monthly holiday.

Annually : Set the highlighted date as an annual holiday.

Duration(2-31) : Set a specified period after the highlighted day between 2 to 31 days as holidays. Set the period of days in the "Duration(2-31)" field.

If you select "Weekly", "Monthly", or "Annually", perform the following operations to set the expiration of repeat.

[F5] [Select] on [F5] field "Set expiration" Move the

cursor to the Expire date field to set expire date

To cancel holiday setting, select "Clear holiday" "Yes". For a holiday set as "Weekly", "Monthly", "Annually", or "Duration(2-31)", select "Yes" on the confirmation of repeat deletion.

[Weekly view/Monthly view]

Switch the calendar view between weekly and monthly. P.355

[Go to date]

The Calendar screen for the specified day appears. Use [F5] to move the cursor to the position in the "Enter date you want to go to" field, and use dial keys to enter the date and time.

[Delete]

Previous entries : Delete all events scheduled prior to today.

Delete all : Delete all scheduled events.

[Send all via IrDA]

Send all scheduled events via infrared communication. P.329

[Memory info.]

The status of scheduled events and holidays is displayed.

[Reset holiday]

Delete the holidays set in "Set holiday".

[Settings]

Set the calendar display format. After setting, press [F5] [Done].

Default view

: Set display format of the calendar which appears when activating the Schedule.

Monthly view type

: Select a start day of the week from Sunday or Monday.

Schedule List Screen/Detail Screen Sub Menu

T Schedule list screen (P355)/detail screen
[Menu] [Menu] Perform the following operations

[Add new]

Register a new schedule event. P353


[Send via]^{*1}

Send the selected schedule event as an attachment of i-mode mail or via infrared communication.

[Edit]^{*2}

Edit the selected schedule event. P353



[Go to date]^{*3}

The schedule list for the specified day appears. Use  to move the cursor to the position in the "Enter date you want to go to" field, and use dial keys to enter the date and time.

[Delete]

Delete the selected schedule event and holiday.

- On the Schedule list screen, you can select and delete multiple schedule events.

Mark schedule events to delete  [Delete] "Yes"
• Press  [Sel.all/Clr. all] to select/clear all.

[Copy to microSD]^{*1}

Copy the selected schedule events to a microSD card.

*1 Not available when the default holidays or settings in "Set holiday" is selected.

*2 Not available if a holiday set as the default is selected.

*3 Not displayed on the Schedule detail screen.

To do list

Managing To Do Tasks

Registering To Do Tasks

Up to 50 tasks can be registered.

 "LifeKit" "To do list"  [New]

Perform the following operations

- When the cursor is in Set Date&Time field, you can cancel creating a To do task by pressing  [Cancel] "Yes".

(Category)

Select the category of the task. Icons vary depending on the selected category.

Subject

Up to 200 full-pitch or 400 half-pitch characters can be entered. Subject is displayed on the To do list screen. Subject is required to register the task. The subject is also displayed on the Alarm screen that appears when the alarm sounds.

Details

Up to 20 full-pitch or 40 half-pitch characters can be entered.

(Set Date&Time)

Set the due date of the To do task.

(Priority)

Select a priority of the task. Icons vary depending on the selected priority.

(Status)

Select the task status. Icons vary depending on the selected status. When "Completed" is selected, you can move the cursor to Completion date field to edit the date and time of completion.

- When "Completed" is selected, the due date and the subject are crossed out, and the task is listed below tasks with status other than "Completed" on the To do list screen.

(Set alarm)

Set whether to notify of the due date and time with an alarm tone. If you set other than "No alarm", perform the following operations to select an alarm tone.

 [Select] on the  field Select a type of the alarm tone
Music : Select a Chaku-Uta Full® song saved in "Music" of "Data Box". P270

Go to Step 3 in "Setting a Chaku-Uta Full® Song as a Ring Tone" (P266).

i-motion : Select a moving picture/i-motion saved in "i-motion" of "Data Box". P307

Melody : Select a melody saved in "Melody" of "Data Box". P314

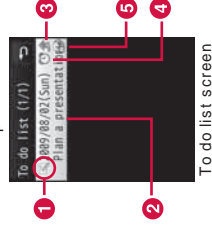
2 [Done]

Viewing To Do Tasks

You can view the registered tasks in list.

1 "LifeKit" "To do list"

- Registered tasks are listed in the order of High Low No priority. When two or more tasks have the same priority level, the task with earlier due date is listed first.
- When due dates are the same, the one with earlier registered date is listed first.
- For tasks with "Status" set to "Completed", the due date and the subject are crossed out and the task appears below tasks with status other than "Completed".



1 "Status" icon

2 Due date and subject

3 Priority


4 High/Low/No priority

5 Tasks with the alarm set

Task registered in an area at other than Japan time
Appears for a task registered while "Local time zone" (P53) is set to other than "GMT+9:00".

2 Select a task to view

The To do detail screen appears.

-  [Mail]: Send the displayed To do task as an attachment of i-mode mail.

To Do List Screen/Detail Screen Sub Menu



1 To do list screen (P358)/detail screen [Menu] Perform the following operations

[Add new]
Create a new task. P357

[Send via]
Send the selected tasks as an attachment of i-mode mail or via infrared communication. You can also send all tasks via infrared communication.

[Edit]
Edit the selected task. P357

[Change status]
Change "Status" of the selected task. P358

[Delete]
Delete the selected To do task.
• On the To do list screen, you can select and delete multiple To do tasks.
Mark To do tasks to delete  [Delete] "Yes"
• Press  [Sel. all/Clr. all] to select/clear all.

[Copy to microSD]
Copy the selected tasks to a microSD card.

[View calendar]
Display the current date of the calendar.

Remembering dates

Managing Anniversaries

You can use Date counter to find the remaining days until an important event quickly. Also, use Date search to search the date when specified days from a certain day elapsed.


Date counter



Registering in Date Counter

The remaining days of up to 30 important events can be saved.

1  "LifeKit" "Others" "Remembering dates" "Date counter"  [Add]
Performs the following operations

 (Set date)
Set the date of an event.

 Memo
Up to 40 full-pitch or 80 half-pitch characters can be entered. Memo is displayed on the Date counter list screen. Memo is required to register to the Date counter.

 (Category)
Select the event category. Icons vary depending on the selected category. Press  [List] to select a category and an icon from the icon list screen.

2  [Done]

Viewing on Date Counter

You can view the remaining days before the registered event.

- 1  "LifeKit" "Others" "Remembering dates" "Date counter"



1 Counter

Display with - : Display the elapsed days from the set date to today.

Display with + : Display the remaining days from today to the set date.

2 Select an event to find the days

The Event detail screen appears.

-  [Edit]: Edit the event.
-  [Delete]: Delete the event.

Date Counter List/Detail Screen Sub Menu

- 1 Date counter list screen (P360)/detail screen  [Menu] Perform the following operations

[Add new]

Save a new event. P359

[Edit]


Edit the selected event. P359


[Delete]

Delete the selected event.

- On the Date counter list screen, you can select and delete multiple events.


Mark events to delete


 [Delete] "Yes"

- Press  [Sel. all/Clr. all] to select/clear all.

Using Date Search

You can check the date after specified days passed from a specified date. For example, you can easily find the date 100 days after today. You can check the date up to 9,999 days after a specified date.

- 1  "LifeKit" "Others" "Remembering dates" "Date search" Perform the following operations

-  [Reset]: Reset the set value.

[From]

Specify the date to start searching from.

[After]

Enter the number of days after the date specified on "From" using dial keys. For example, to find the date 100 days after "From", enter "100".

[Result]
Display the date after the specified days passed.

Own Number

Saving Your Own Name and Image

You can register your personal information to the FOMA terminal.

1 **[Menu]** "Own Number" **[Detail]** Enter the Terminal security code



Own number
detail screen

2 **[Menu]** "Edit"
The Edit own number screen appears.

3 **Enter the information** **[Done]**
For steps to register, refer to Step 2 in "Adding Entries to the FOMA Terminal Phonebook" (P84). You cannot set secret data.
• The pre-installed own number cannot be changed or deleted.

Note

- Even if you change a mail address using i-mode, the address saved to this function is not updated automatically.

Own Number Detail Screen Sub Menu

1 Own number detail screen (P361) **[Menu]**
Perform the following operations

[Mail/URL]
Create a mail using the saved mail address or connect to the site using saved URL.

Compose mail : Create i-mode mail addressed to other than own number or own mail address.

Attach to mail : Create i-mode mail with own number information attached.

Compose SMS : Create an SMS message addressed to other than own number.

Connect to URL : Connect to the site using saved URL.

[Edit]
Edit the Own number detail screen. P361

[Send Ir data]
Send the information on the Own number detail screen via infrared communication. P328

[Copy]
Copy item : Select and copy items from the Own number detail screen.

to microSD : Copy information from the Own number detail screen to a microSD card.

[Customize call]
Change the saved number other than the own number and make a call to the new number.

[Reset]
Delete all registered personal information.

Checking Call Duration/Charge

You can check the last and accumulated call duration and costs of voice and videophone calls.

- Voice call duration and digital communication duration (videophone call duration) are displayed as the call duration. The call duration includes both incoming and outgoing calls.
- Call cost includes only outgoing calls. However, if calls were made to toll free numbers or the directory assistance service (104), "0 YEN" or "+*.*.*.* YEN" is displayed.
- Call costs are stored on the UIM. When a different UIM is used, the accumulated call costs stored on the UIM are displayed (accumulation started in December, 2004).
- You can reset the displayed call duration and call cost.
- The displayed call duration and cost are approximate values and may be different from actual ones. Note that call cost does not include the consumption tax.


Note

- The duration/cost for i-mode communication and packet communication are not included. For checking i-mode usage charges, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".
- The cost for sending Chaku-moji is not included.

Call duration

Checking Call Duration

You can check the duration of the previous and accumulated duration of voice and videophone calls.

 "Phonebook" "Call duration"

[Last voice call]

Display the duration of the last voice call.

[Last video call]

Display the duration of the last videophone call.

[Total voice calls]

Display the total duration of voice calls after the last reset.


[Total video calls]

Display the total duration of videophone calls after the last reset.

Note

- The displayed Call duration returns to 0 (zero) seconds and starts counting when the duration exceeds 99 hours 59 minutes and 59 seconds.
- The ringing and dialing durations are not counted.

Resetting individual items of "Call duration"

Move the cursor to the item to reset  [Reset] enter the Terminal security code "Yes".

Resetting all items of "Call duration"


You can reset all items at once.

 [Menu] "Reset all" Enter the Terminal security code "Yes"

Check call costs

Checking Call Costs

Call cost includes only outgoing calls.

- 1  "Phonebook" "Call costs" "Check call costs"

[Last voice call cost]

Display the last call cost.

[Last video call cost]

Display the last videophone call cost.

[Total calls cost]

Display the total calls costs after the last reset.


[Reset date&time]


Display the last reset date and time.

Note

- International call costs using WORLD CALL are counted. Call costs when using other international telephone services are not counted.

Resetting Total Calls Cost


- 1  "Phonebook" "Call costs" "Check call costs"

- 2  [Reset] Enter the PIN2 code "Yes"

Set call cost limit

Setting and Notifying Call Charge Upper Limit

Set the limit of total call cost so that you will be notified when the cost reached the limit.

- 1  "Phonebook" "Call costs" "Set call cost limit"

- 2 Enter the Terminal security code Perform the following operations

[Set limit]

Set whether to limit total calls cost.

[Call cost limit]*

Set the limit of the total calls cost.

[Notification]*

Select how to notify that the total calls cost has reached its limit.

OFF : You will not be notified.

Sound+Icon : You will be notified with the call cost icon and the call cost tone.

Icon : You will be notified with the call cost icon.

* Set "Set limit" to "ON" to make this setting available.

When the limit is exceeded

 (call cost icon) appears on the Stand-by display. When "Notification" is set to "Sound+Icon", the call cost tone sounds when you finish the call that exceeds the limit.



Hiding the displayed call cost icon


 "Phonebook" "Call costs" "Delete call cost icon" enter the Terminal security code.

World time

Using World Time

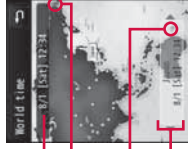
You can view the date and time in major cities around the world stored in the FOMA terminal.

- 1  "LifeKit" "Others" "World time"
•  [Search]: Display the city names in list and select. You can also use dial keys to enter a city name and search.


- 2 Use  to move to the destination region


 [Zoom in]

- 1 Date and time of Home (own country)
- 2 Time difference from Home
- 3 Daylight saving indicator
Appear if daylight saving is set.
- 4 The selected city name, date, and time




World time setting screen

- 3 Use  to move to the destination city

 [Set]

World Time Setting Screen Sub Menu

- 1 World time setting screen (P364)  [Menu]
Perform the following operations

[Search city]

Display the cities in list and select. You can also use dial keys to enter a city name and search.

[Daylight Saving ON/Daylight Saving OFF]

Set/cancel the Daylight savings time.





Note

- If the display language of the FOMA terminal is set to Korean, this option is not available.

Stopwatch

Using Stopwatch

You can use the FOMA terminal as a stopwatch.

- 1  "LifeKit" "Others" "Stopwatch"
•  [Start/Stop/Resume]: Start/stop/resume measurement.
•  [Reset]: Clear the measurement result.
•  [Lap]: Displayed during the measurement. Each time you press this, up to 20 lap times can be displayed.

Unit converter

Using Unit Converter

You can convert the units for measuring currency, surface, length, weight, temperature, volume, or velocity.

Converting Currency Units

This function is useful in occasions such as exchanging from YEN to USD.


Setting Exchange Rate

Before converting, set the exchange rate.

- 1  "LifeKit" "Others" "Unit converter" "Currency"




World time setting screen

- 2 Move the cursor to the unit field  [Rate]

• "YEN", "USD", "EURO", and "Currency1 to 3" are registered by default.

3 Perform the following operations




[(Currency name field)]

Press  [Select] to change the currency. Up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters can be entered.

- "YEN" in the top row cannot be changed.

[(Exchange rate field)]


Set the exchange rate. Up to 10 digits (including the decimal point) can be entered. Up to 2 digits after the decimal point can be entered. For example, to exchange between USD and YEN (example: one US dollar is 120 yen), set 120 to "YEN" and 1 to "USD".

-  [] /  [] : Enter the decimal point.
-  [] : Delete from the last entered digit.

4 [Done]

Converting Currencies

Convert the one currency to another based on the rates set for those 2 currencies.

- 1 Select two currencies from the Currency unit fields in the Currency exchange screen (P365)
-  [List]: The Currency list screen is displayed.

- 2 Enter the amount in the Value entry field of the benchmark currency

The converted amount is displayed in the other Value entry field. You can enter/convert in either Value entry field.

- Available maximum number of digit is as follows.
 - Whole number only: 10 digits
 - Decimal number only: 10 digits (8 digits after decimal point)
 - Including whole and decimal numbers: 9 digits (excluding decimal point)

- If the number after conversion exceeds the following, no more digit can be entered.
 - Whole number only: 10 digits
 - Decimal number only: 8 digits (6 digits after decimal point)
 - Including whole and decimal numbers: 14 digits (excluding decimal point)
 - Exceeding 2,147,483,647
- If the currency in the Currency unit field is changed after the amount was entered, the new amount will be displayed in the lower Value entry field using the amount in the upper Value entry field as the benchmark.
 - : Enter the decimal point.
 - : Clear from the last entered number.
 - : Clear all entered numbers.

Converting Area Units

Convert one defined area unit to another type of defined area unit.

- : "LifeKit" "Others" "Unit converter" "Surface"
- Select two units in the Surface unit fields.
 - : The unit list screen is displayed.
- Enter the value in the Value entry field of the benchmark surface

The converted value is displayed in the other Value entry field. You can enter/convert in either Value entry field.

- The description of the values entry is the same as in "Converting Currencies", P365

Converting Temperature Units

You can convert temperature between Fahrenheit and Celsius.

- : "LifeKit" "Others" "Unit converter" "Temperature" Enter the temperature in the Value entry field of either "Celsius ()" or "Fahrenheit(°F)"

The converted temperature is displayed in the other Value entry field. You can enter/convert in both Value entry fields.

- From - 40 to 309, or up to 10 digits (including - (minus) and the decimal point) can be entered.
- : Enter - (minus) before the value.
- : Enter the decimal point.
- : Clear from the last entered digit.
- : Clear all entered numbers.

Converting Length, Weight, Volume, and Velocity

- : "LifeKit" "Others" "Unit converter" "Length"/"Weight"/"Volume"/"Velocity"

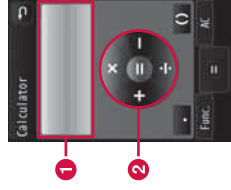
Perform further operations as the same in "Converting Area Units" (P366).

Calculator


Using the FOMA Terminal as Calculator

You can use the Calculator to perform arithmetic operations or functional computations.





1 "LifeKit" "Others" "Calculator"



Calculator screen

- 1 Calculation display
- 2 Arithmetic operation (+, -, x, ÷ (/), =)
Use  and  for operation.

2 Calculate

- : Enter the decimal point.
- : Enter () (parentheses).
- : Delete from the last entered digit.
- [AC]: Clear all entered numbers and calculated results.

Calculator Screen Sub Menu

1 Calculator screen (P367) [Func.] Perform the following operations

[+/-]

Switch the operators, +/ - of the entered number.

[sin]

Used for the trigonometric function.

[cos]

Used for the trigonometric function.

[tan]

Used for the trigonometric function.

[log]

Used for the logarithmic function.

[ln]

Used for the natural logarithm.

Calculate the natural logarithm of the specified positive value (logarithm with the base of e).

[exp]

Used for the exponential function.

[sqrt]

Used to calculate the square root of a number.

[deg]

Set the unit of angle to "degree".

[rad]

Set the unit of angle to "radian".

Radian expresses an angle using the constant number of (180 degrees equal to π radians). One radian (360 degrees/2 π) is approximately 57.29578 degrees. One degree (2 π /360 degrees) is approximately 0.01745 radians (π =3.141592653).

Sketch memo

Using Sketch Memos

Using the display as canvas, you can make a drawing with fingers, etc. and save it.

Creating Sketch Memos

Create and save a sketch memo. Up to 10 sketch memos can be saved.

1 [MENU] "LifeKit" "Sketch memo" [New]



2 Perform the following operations

- For the following, only touch operation is available.

[Pencil] (Draw)]

Draw lines using a finger, etc.

[Eraser] (Erase)]

Erase a drawing where traced with a finger, etc. Touch and hold with a finger, etc. for 1 + seconds to erase all drawings.

[Settings] (Set)]

Set pen width or pen colors. After the settings, touch "Set".

Pen height : Set pen width.

Eraser height : Set eraser width.

Pen color : Set pen color.

Background color : Set background color.

[Save] (Save)]

Save a sketch memo.

[Cancel] (Cancel)]

Cancel a currently creating sketch memo.

Viewing Sketch Memos

You can list and view saved sketch memos.

1 [MENU]

"LifeKit" "Sketch memo"



2 Move the cursor to a sketch memo to view

[View] (View)]

The Sketch memo detail screen appears.

- [Edit] (Edit): Edit the selected sketch memo.
- Use [Previous/Next] to display the previous or next sketch memo.

Sketch Memo List/Detail Screen Sub Menu

Sketch memo list screen (P368)/Sketch memo detail screen (P368) Perform the following operations

[View]^{*1}

Display the detail screen of the selected sketch memo.

[Add new]^{*1}

Save a new sketch memo. P368

[Set as]

Set the selected sketch memo to a screen respectively. The set image is saved in "Camera" folder of "My picture" in "Data Box".

Stand-by display : Set as the Stand-by display.

Voice call display : Set as the Incoming voice call screen.

Video call display : Set as the Videophone call incoming call screen.

Mail sending image : Set as the Mail sending screen.

Mail receiving image : Set as the Mail receiving screen.

Mail complete image : Set as the Mail receive results screen.

Wake-up display : Set as the Wake-up screen.


[Save to Databox]


Save the selected sketch memo to Data Box.

• On the Sketch memo list screen, you can select and save multiple sketch memos.

One : Save the selected sketch memo.

Selected : Save multiple sketch memos.

Mark sketch memos to save  [Save] "Yes"

• Press  [Sel. all/Cir. all] to select/clear all.

All : Save all sketch memos.

[Edit]

Edit the selected sketch memo. P368

[Rename]

Edit the selected sketch memo title. Up to 15 full-pitch or 30 half-pitch characters can be entered.

[Delete]


Delete the selected sketch memo.

• On the Sketch memo list screen, you can select and delete multiple sketch memos.

One : Delete a selected sketch memo.

Selected : Delete multiple sketch memos.

Mark sketch memos to delete  [Delete] "Yes"

• Press  [Sel. all/Cir. all] to select/clear all.

All : Delete all sketch memos.

[View timestamp/Hide timestamp]^{*2}

Show/hide the date and time.

[Send via mail]

Create mail with the selected sketch memo attached.

*1 Not displayed on the detail screen.



*2 Not displayed on the list screen.

Text memo

Using Text Memos

Creating Text Memos

Create and save a text memo. Up to 50 text memos can be saved.

- 1  "LifeKit" "Text memo"  [New]

[?] Category]

Select a type (category) of text memo. Icons vary depending on the selected category.


[Subject]

Enter a text memo. Up to 50 full-pitch or 100 half-pitch characters can be entered. The subject is required to save a memo.

- 2  [Done]

Viewing a Text Memo

You can list and view saved memos.



- 1  "LifeKit" "Text memo"



Text memo list screen

- 2 Select a text memo to view

The Text memo detail screen appears.

-  [Edit]: Edit the selected text memo.
-  [Mail]: The Compose message screen with "Category" and the contents of "Subject" already entered in the message text appears.

Text Memo List/Detail Screen Sub Menu

Text memo list screen (P370)/detail screen [Menu] [Menu] Perform the following operations

[Add new]

Save a new text memo. P370

[Send via]

Send the selected text memo as i-mode mail or via infrared communication. You can also send all memos via infrared communication.

[Edit]

Edit the selected text memo. P370

[Delete]

Delete the selected text memo.

- On the Text memo list screen, you can select and delete multiple sketch memos.

Mark text memos to delete [Delete] "Yes"

- Press [Sel. all/Clr. all] to select/clear all.

[Copy to microSD]

Copy the selected text memo to the microSD card.

- * Not displayed on the detail screen.

Earphone/Microphone with Switch

Using Earphone/Microphone with Switch

You can connect the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch (optional) to the FOMA terminal to make and receive calls.

- To connect the Flat-plug Stereo Earphone Set (optional) or Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch (optional) to the FOMA terminal, use the Earphone Plug Adapter for External connector terminal (optional). P29

Setting Switch Actions

Specify the phone number to call using the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch via a memory number of the Phonebook in the FOMA terminal.

- The phone number saved as "Phone number 1" in the FOMA terminal Phonebook will be specified.

1 [Menu] "Settings" "Call/VT/Dialing" "Headset" Perform the following operations

[Switch call]

Select "ON" to make calls by pressing the switch of the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch.

[Memory number]

If the Phonebook search screen appears select the other party.

- * Set "Switch call" to "ON" to make this setting available.

Making a Call Using Switch

Press the switch of the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch to make a voice call to the number assigned to the memory number of the Phonebook set under Headset (P374).

- 1 Press the switch of the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch once
- 2 To end the call, press the switch of the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch for 1 + seconds

Receiving a Call Using Switch

- 1 A call arrives Press the switch of the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch Answer the call.


- When a videophone call arrives, the camera image is sent to the other party.

- 2 To end the call, press the switch of the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch for 1 + seconds

Answering Another Call during a Call

If you subscribe to Call waiting and activated the service, you can answer the second call during a voice call by pressing the switch of the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch.

- 1 A call arrives Press the switch of the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch
The active voice call is placed on hold and you can answer the incoming call. The 3-way connecting screen appears.
 - To reject an incoming call without answering Press the switch of the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch for 2 + seconds.

- 2 To end the call, press 

- While the 3-way connecting screen is displayed, you cannot terminate the call by pressing the switch of the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch.

- To switch to the held voice call while connecting 3-way Press the switch of the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch for 2 + seconds.


Note

- When using the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch, a call will not be terminated or placed on hold by closing the FOMA terminal during the call regardless of the setting of "Close setting" (P74).

Auto answer

Receiving a Call Automatically when an Earphone/Microphone with Switch is Connected

You can set to answer a call automatically after the set ring time has elapsed with the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch (optional) connected.

- 1  "Settings" "Call/VT/Dialing" "Incoming call" "Auto answer" Perform the following operations

[Auto answer]

Selecting "ON" to answer calls automatically using the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch.

[Delayed time]

Enter the time before answering the call automatically.

- * Set "Auto answer" to "ON" to make this setting available.

Note

- If you set "Delayed time" shorter than the Ring time of the Voice mail or Call forwarding service, or the Response time of the Record message, this function takes precedence.

Hour indication

Chiming Hour

Set whether to sound the indication tone on the hour every hour.

- 1  "Settings" "Date&Time" "Hour indication" Perform the following operations

[Set sound]

Specify the indication tone.

- Press /[List] to display the Indication tone list screen. Press /[Play] to sound the selected indication tone.

[Time]

Set the time to sound the indication tone.

- * Set "Set sound" to other than "OFF" to make this setting available.

2 /[Done]

Note

- For the notification volume at the setting confirmation, "Popup tone" is used, and for the notification volume at chiming hour "Alarm/Schedule" is used. P 1 0 1

Checking Status of Memory Usage

You can check the status of memory usage and the free space of the FOMA terminal. If a microSD card is inserted, you can also check the status of the microSD card memory usage.

1  "Settings" "Others" "Memory status"

2 Select a memory to check

Data box memory : Display data saved in "Data Box".

Personal info. : Display the number and data saved in the Phonebook, Schedule, Holiday, Memo, To do, and Date counter.

UIM memory : Display the number and the amount of data saved on the UIM.

microSD : Display the memory status of the microSD card.

Character Entry

Entering Characters	376
Character Input Method	377
Configuring Character Input Settings	Input setting 383
Editing/Saving Common Phrases	Edit Common phrases 384
Copying/Cutting/Pasting Text	385
Entering Characters Using Kuten Code	Kuten code 386
Saving Often-used Words	User dictionary 387
Saving Keywords for Deco-mail Pictograms	Picto. D dictionary 388
Resetting Learning Dictionary	Reset learnt info 388
Using Downloaded Dictionary	Download dictionary 389
Creating a Learning Dictionary	Learning Dictionary 389

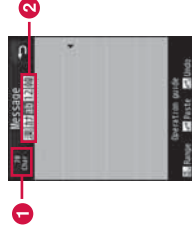
For details about Kuten code list, see "Kuten Code List" (PDF format) contained in the bundled CD-ROM or available at the DOCOMO's web site.
Adobe® Reader® is required to open "Kuten Code List" in PDF format. If the program is not installed on your PC, install Adobe® Reader® contained in the bundled CD-ROM.
For details about using the program, see "Adobe Reader Help".

Entering Characters

Various operations require entering characters, such as registering to the Phonebook or creating a message. Learn how to enter characters to fully use the FOMA terminal.

Character Entry Screen

The Character entry screen displays the current input mode and operation guide.



- 1 Available number of characters
Indicate the remaining number of characters or bytes that
can be entered further.
- 2 Input mode field
Display input mode.



Switching Input Modes

Switch input modes for entering various types of characters. In some input modes, you can switch between full-pitch and half-pitch characters.

- Depending on the input screen, input mode switching may not be available.

1 Character entry screen (P376) [Mode]

2 [Change]

Each time you press  [Change], the input mode switches. Pressing  [To full/To half] switches between full-pitch and half-pitch (excluding Hiragana or Kanji input mode and Korean input mode).

- You can also switch the input mode by pressing  [Mode] and then press  or switch between full-pitch and half-pitch characters by pressing .

漢力 (加) : Hiragana and Kanji input mode

a/A¹(ab/AB¹) : Katakana input mode

1 (12) : Alphabetic input mode

韓² : Numeric input mode

*1 Press  [Upper/Lower] to switch between upper and lower case.

*2 Appear when SMS input character is set to "JP/KR(70Chara)".

Character Input Method

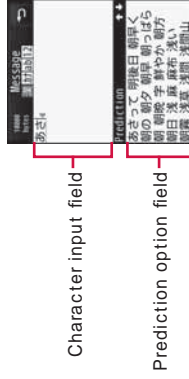
In the Hiragana and Kanji input mode, you can enter characters using the Prediction input function that predicts conversion options from the characters being entered, and the Next phrase prediction function that predicts the next phrase. You can turn the Prediction input function on or off in "Prediction" in "Input setting" (P383).

- For characters that can be entered with keys, refer to "List of Characters Assigned to Dial Keys" (P443).

Entering Characters with the FOMA Terminal Opened

Example: To enter characters in the Hiragana and Kanji input mode

1 Enter characters on the Character entry screen (P376)



Conversion options predicted by the Prediction input function appear.

- If the Prediction is set to "OFF", prediction options will not appear.
 - When characters are entered in the Hiragana and Kanji, Katakana, or Alphanumeric input mode, and after fixed period of time, the cursor moves to the right automatically (Auto cursor function). The Auto cursor function can be disabled, or can change the time before the cursor moves. P383
- The cursor also moves when pressing

- [Set]: Fix the entered characters. In the Hiragana and Kanji input mode, press this key to fix the characters without converting them.
- [KanaA1]: Display conversion options in combination of Katakana and alphanumeric characters.
- [Conv]: Display conversion options without using the Prediction input function. Press this key when conversion option to look for is not displayed as prediction options.

Example of entering text

Entering "ドコモ (DOCOMO)"

Enter "ドコモ (DOCOMO)" in Hiragana and Kanji mode
 "ド (DO)": Press 5 times once
 "コ (KO)": Press 5 times

"モ (MO)": Press 5 times
 Use D to move the cursor to prediction options

Use to move the cursor to "ドコモ (DOCOMO)"
 [Select]*

* On character entry screen other than the Message text entry screen for i-mode mail, "Set" is displayed.

Operations other than character entry

Operation	Description
	Switch between upper and lower case or add a voiced/semi-voiced symbol. * The key is not available for characters that cannot be switched or added, or in the Numeric input mode.
/	Insert line feeds after characters are converted/ fixed. Only is available in the Numeric input mode.
	Display the characters assigned to a key in the reverse order by pressing this key before characters are fixed.
(1+ seconds)	Restore the converted or fixed characters to the previous state.
(1+ seconds)	Erase a character in front of the cursor.
(1+ seconds)	Erase all converted or fixed characters after the cursor. When the cursor is at the end of text, all characters will be erased.

Operation	Description
(1 + seconds)	Select text range in which decoration or copy or paste is applied.
	Paste the copied or cut data to the position after the cursor.
Copy*	Copy the selected text.
Cut*	Cut the selected text.
Store word*	Save the selected text to dictionary. For further operations, refer to Step 2 in "Saving Often-used Words" (P387).
Decoration*	<Start> Apply decoration to the selected text. For further operations, refer to "Specifying a Decoration before Entering Characters" (P143). <None> Delete the decoration applied to the selected text.

* Appear when text is selected by dragging the range at message entry of mail.

2 Use to move the cursor to the Prediction option field

- [KanaA1]: Display conversion options in combination of katakana and alphanumeric characters.
- [Conv]: Display conversion options without using the Prediction input function. Press this key when conversion option to look for is not displayed as prediction options.

3 Select the characters to convert

The conversion of the entered characters is fixed. Conversion options, if applicable, predicted by the Next phrase prediction function appear in the Prediction option field. If desired characters are displayed, perform Steps 2 and 3 to select and enter the characters.

- Press to cancel conversion and resume entering characters.

Converting characters without Prediction function

Perform the following steps if desired characters are not displayed as prediction options or if Prediction is set to "OFF":

- 1 Enter characters on the Character entry screen (P376)
- 2 [Conv.]

Conversion options for the area where the cursor is pointed (conversion area) will appear.

- To change the highlighted area, use to move the cursor.



- 3 Use to move the cursor to the conversion option area
 - 4 Select the characters to convert
- The conversion of the entered characters is fixed. As each phrase is converted, the next phrase will be highlighted.

Entering Characters in Turn View Style Mode

1 Enter characters on the Character entry screen (P376)



Character input field

Prediction option preview field

Touch the Prediction option preview field to display conversion options predicted by the Prediction input function.

- If the Prediction is set to "OFF", prediction options will not appear.
- When characters are entered in the Hiragana and Kanji, Katakana, or Alphabetic input mode, and after fixed period of time, the cursor moves to the right automatically (Auto cursor function). The Auto cursor function can be disabled, or can change the time to fix the entered characters. P383
- Also, touch to move the cursor.
- "Set": Fix the entered characters. In the Hiragana and Kanji input mode, press this key to fix the characters without converting them.

- [KanaA1]: Display conversion options in combination of Katakana and alphanumeric characters.
- [Conv.]: Display conversion options without using the Prediction input function. Press this key when conversion option to look for is not displayed as prediction options.

Example of entering text

Entering "ドコモ (DOCOMO)"
 Enter "ドコモ (DOCOMO)" in Hiragana and Kanji mode
 "ド (DO)": Touch "た TA" 5 times
 "こ (KO)": Touch "か KA" 5 times
 "モ (MO)": Touch "ま MA" 5 times

Touch the Prediction option preview field
 Touch "ドコモ (DOCOMO)" Touch "Select"
 * On character entry screen other than the Message text entry screen for I-mode mail, "Set" is displayed.

- Operations other than character entry
 For "Copy", "Cut", "Store word", "Decoration Start", "Decoration None", refer to "Operations other than character entry" of "Entering Characters with the FOMA Terminal Opened" (P377).

Operation	Description
	Touch this key before characters are fixed, and the characters assigned to a key are displayed in reverse order.
	Touch after text entry is fixed, to paste the copied/cut data after the cursor. Also, if touched for 1 + seconds right after being pasted, the pasting is undone.
	Insert line feeds after characters are converted/fixed.
"CLR"	Erase a character after the cursor.
"CLR" (1 + seconds)	Erase all converted/fixed characters after the cursor. When the cursor is at the end of text, all characters will be erased.

2 Touch the Prediction option preview field

- [KanaA1]: Display conversion options in combination of Katakana and alphanumeric characters.
- [Conv.]: Display conversion options without using the Prediction input function. Press this key when conversion option to look for is not displayed as prediction options.

3 Select the characters to convert



- The conversion of the entered characters is fixed.
- Touch to cancel conversion and resume entering characters.

Converting characters without Prediction function

Perform the following steps if desired characters are not displayed as prediction options or if Prediction is set to "OFF":

- 1 Enter characters on the Character entry screen (P376)
- 2 "Conv"

The area where the cursor is pointed (conversion area) will be converted.

• To change the highlighted area, use  /  to move the cursor.


- 3 Move the cursor to characters to convert "Select"

The conversion of the entered characters is fixed. If text is converted by phrase, the next phrase will be highlighted.



Character Entry Screen Sub Menu

- Displayed items vary depending on the options or entered characters on the Character entry screen.
- Refer to "Message Text Entry Screen Sub Menu" (P140) for information on the items displayed on the Message text entry screen of i-mode mail.

- 1 Character entry screen (P376)   Perform the following operations

[Common phrases]

Select and enter a saved common phrase.

Input : Select and enter a saved common phrase.

Edit : You can create and save a common phrase, or edit a saved common phrase. P384

[Edit character]

Copy/cut characters by specifying a range, and paste them. P385

[Edit user dict.]

Register a word. P385

[Quote]

Phonebook : Quote an entry from Phonebook.

Own number : Quote your phone number. The Terminal security code is required to quote.

Bar code : Bar code reader starts and an information scanned is quoted.

[Input setting]

Auto cursor : Set whether to automatically fix the entered characters and move the cursor. P383

Operation guide : Set whether to display the operation guide.

Prediction : Activate or deactivate the Prediction input function. P383

[Special input]

Space : Enter a space before the cursor.

Changing line : Enter a linefeed before the cursor.

Kuten code : Enter a character using the Kuten code. P386

[Cancel]

Discard all entered characters.

Entering Common Phrases

You can enter text using common phrases saved in the FOMA terminal.

- "Original" and "Password" are empty by default.



1 Character entry screen (P376) [Menu] [Menu]

"Common phrases" "Input"

2 Select a category Select a common phrase

The common phrase is entered.

Note

- Common phrases can be edited/registered. P384
- Press mail address or  [http://] that appears at URL direct entry to enter a common phrase saved in Common phrases, "Internet". Press  [http://] to switch common phrases to be entered.
- The Terminal security code entry is required for password entry.

Entering Pictographs/Symbols/Emoticons

1 Character entry screen (P376)








Pictograph list screen


2 Use [Change] to select an input mode

- 絵 : Pictograph input mode
- 記 : Symbol input mode
- 顔 : Emoticon input mode

3 Switch input modes

- Pictograph input mode : Use  [Picto./Picto. D] to switch between pictograph and Picto. D (Deco-mail pictogram).
- Symbol input mode : Use  [FullSymb/HalfSymb] to switch between full-pitch and half-pitch characters.
- Emoticon input mode : Use  [Category] to select a category from the displayed category list.
-  [Page/] : Display the Pictograph list screen/the Symbol list screen in order of screen number. For the Emoticon list screen, switch categories.
 -  [Page/] : Display the Pictograph list screen/the Symbol list screen in reverse order of screen number. For the Emoticon list screen, switch categories.




4 Select a desired pictograph/symbol/emoticon

- The selected character will be entered.
- If you proceed to press  [Select] in the input option area, the selected character will be entered in series.
 - If a pictograph/symbol is selected by direct touch on the Pictograph list screen/the Symbol list screen, the pictographs/symbols around the touched pictograph/symbol are enlarged. Touch and select the pictograph/symbol to enter.

Note

- Depending on the current input screen, some characters may not be entered or mode/type may not be switched.



Editing emoticons

- 1  [Settings] "Others" "Character input" "Edit emoticon"
- 2 The Edit emoticon screen appears.
Select a category Move the cursor to an emoticon to edit  [Edit]
- 3 The Character entry screen appears with the selected emoticon entered.
Change the emoticon  [Set]
The new emoticon is saved overwriting the existing one.
The sub menu during Emoticon edit is the same one during Common phrase edit. P-385

Entering in Korean

This FOMA terminal allows you to enter text in Korean exclusively in SMS.

- To enter in Korean, set the input mode of SMS message to "JP/KR(70Chara)". P178

- 1 SMS message text entry screen  [Mode]
Use  [Change] to move the cursor to "韓"



2 Enter text

- Combine consonants and vowels when entering text.

Edit Common phrases

Editing/Saving Common Phrases

Save frequently used greetings or phrases as common phrases to enter them quickly.

Saving Common Phrases

Up to 10 newly defined common phrases can be saved in "Original" and up to 10 passwords used for the Internet in "Password".

- 1 Character entry screen (P376)
"Common phrases" "Edit"

The common phrase categories are listed.



Edit common phrase list screen

- 2 "Original"/"Password" number to add a phrase

- Up to 64 full-pitch or 128 half-pitch characters can be entered.



Edit common phrase screen

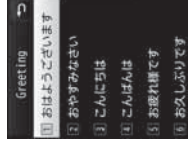
- 3 Enter text to save

The common phrase is saved and available to view in the Display all screen.

Editing Pre-installed Common Phrases

You can edit a pre-installed common phrase.

- 1 Character entry screen (P376)
"Common phrases" "Edit" Select a common phrase category



"Greeting" Common phrase list screen


2 Move the cursor to a phrase [Edit]

The Common phrase edit screen appears with the selected common phrase entered.

3 Edit the common phrase [Set]

The common phrase is saved and available to view in the Display all screen.

Note

- You can also edit common phrases saved in a user-defined folder.
- You can also save or edit a common phrase by performing the following steps:
 -  "Settings" "Others" "Character input" "Edit common phrase"
- For saving/changing password, the Terminal security code is required.

Common Phrase Edit Screen Sub Menu

[Menu] Edit common phrase list screen (P384)

Perform the following operations

[Reset all]

Restore all common phrases to their defaults.

[Cancel]

Terminate editing a common phrase.

Common Phrase List/Display All Screen Sub Menu

[Menu] Common phrase list/Display all screen (P384)

Perform the following operations

[Delete one]

Delete the selected common phrase.

[Reset 1 item]^{*1}

Restore the selected common phrase to its default.

[Category reset]^{*2}

Restore all common phrases in the category to their defaults.

[Cancel]

Terminate editing a common phrase.

*1 A common phrase in "Password" cannot be selected.

*2 Not displayed in the sub menu of the Display all screen.


Copying/Cutting/Pasting Text




You can copy/cut characters and paste them to other locations or on other screens. Copied/cut characters can be pasted any number of times until the FOMA terminal is turned off or another copy/cut is performed.

1 Character entry screen (P376) [Menu]

"Edit character" "Copy"/"Cut"

2 Use to move the cursor to start point

 [Select]

-  [SelAll]: Select the entire message.
-  [Top]: The cursor moves to the top of the message text.
-  [End]: The cursor moves to the end of the message text.

3 Use to move the cursor to end point

 [Select]

4 Open the character entry destination screen Use to move the cursor to pasting position

5 [Menu] "Edit character" "Paste"

- To undo a cut or paste operation, press  [Menu] "Edit character" "Undo".

Note

- You can also copy/cut and paste characters by performing the following operation:
• Press **[Menu]** (for 1 + seconds). Use **[Left]** to move the cursor to start point **[Select]**. Use **[Right]** to move the cursor to end point **[Select]** "Copy"/Cut". Open the character entry destination screen. Use **[Left]** to move the cursor to pasting position **[OK]**.
- Pressing **[Undo]** (for 1 + seconds) also undo a cut or paste operation.
- If copied or cut text contains more characters than the allowable number of characters, the excess characters are truncated when pasted.
- Characters can be pasted only if copied or cut text can be entered in the destination screen. For example, Hiragana or Kanji characters cannot be pasted in the mail address field (half-pitch alphanumeric characters).
- Line feeds in a copied text are replaced with half-pitch spaces if the text is pasted to an input screen that does not allow line feeds.
- When pasting in the Deco-mail message after copying or cutting, the decoration information will also be pasted (except for some decoration information).

Kuten code

Entering Characters Using Kuten Code

You can enter a 4-digit Kuten code to enter a letter, numeric character, or symbol, etc.

- For the Kuten code list table, refer to "Kuten Code List" on the bundled CD-ROM in PDF format.

- Character entry screen (P376)
"Special input" "Kuten code"
[Menu] **[Menu]**



Kuten Code entry screen

- Enter the Kuten code (4-digit number) for the character **[Select]**

The associated character is entered.

- If you proceed to press **[Select]**, the selected characters will be entered in serial.

Saving Often-used Words

You can save up to 100 words that is not listed as conversion options, or words with diacritics along with the readings. Saved words will be displayed as conversion options when the readings are entered.

1 Character entry screen (P376) [MENU] [Menu] "Edit user dict."

- [OK] [Select]: Edit the saved word.



Stored word list screen

2 [Add] Perform the following operations

[Reading]

Enter the reading of the saved word to find. Up to 20 full-pitch Hiragana characters only can be entered.

- Space cannot be saved.

[Word]

Enter a word to save. Up to 20 full-pitch or 40 half-pitch characters can be entered. On the Character entry screen, after the characters set as "Reading" are entered, the saved word appears as a conversion option.

- The line feed cannot be saved.

3 [Store]

The word is saved to the dictionary.

Note

- You can also save a word by performing the following operation: [MENU] "Settings" "Others" "Character input" "User dictionary"
- You can save already entered characters to a dictionary. [MENU] [Menu] (for 1+ seconds) use [OK] to move the cursor to start point [OK] [Select] use [OK] to move the cursor to end point [OK] [Select] "Store word" for further operations, refer to Step 2 in "Saving Often-used Words" (P387).
- Korean cannot be saved to the dictionary.

Deleting Words

You can delete one word or all words saved on "User dictionary".

Example: To delete one word

1 Move the cursor to a word to delete on the Stored word list screen (P387)

2 [MENU] [Menu] "Delete one" "Yes"

The selected word will be deleted.

- To delete all words



On the Stored word list screen, press [MENU] [Menu] "Delete all" "Yes".

Saving Keywords for Deco-mail Pictograms


Save keywords for each Deco-mail pictogram so that you can enter your intended Deco-mail pictograms quickly. Up to 5 keywords for a Deco-mail pictogram can be saved.

- 1  "Settings" "Others" "Character input" "Picto. D dictionary" Select a Deco-mail pictogram

- 2 Select a Keyword store field Enter a keyword

-  [DelAll]: Delete all saved keywords.
-  [Delete]: Delete the selected keyword.

Note


- When creating a message text and relevant keyword is entered, "Picto. D" appears on a soft key. Press  [Picto. D] to display Deco-mail pictograms with forward match to the keyword in list where you can select and enter your intended Deco-mail pictogram.
- The Deco-mail pictograms acquired via download or mail attachment are saved with a keyword, "おたらしいでめえもじ" that you can later edit/add.

Resetting Learning Dictionary

Restore the learned data regarding character entry saved in the FOMA terminal to its default.

- 1  "Settings" "Others" "Character input" "Reset learnt info" "Yes"/"No"

Learnt data

Learnt data consists of recorded characters, which were entered and converted by selecting from conversion options, or fixed by pressing  [Set] without conversion. The next time you enter the same first character, the learned word appears as the first conversion option.

Download dictionary

Using Downloaded Dictionary

You can enable dictionaries downloaded from i-mode sites, etc. and use them for character conversion. Up to 5 dictionaries can be enabled.


- Up to 10 dictionaries can be stored in the FOMA handset.

1  "Settings" "Others" "Character input" "Download dictionary"



Downloaded dictionary screen

2 Move the cursor to a dictionary to enable

 [ON]


Each checked dictionary is enabled.


- To disable a dictionary

Move the cursor to an available dictionary and press  [OFF].

Download Dictionary Screen Sub Menu

1 Downloaded dictionary screen (P389)

 [MENU] Perform the following operations

-  [View]: Display details of the dictionary.

 [Delete one]

Delete the selected dictionary.

 [Delete all]

Delete all listed dictionaries.

Learning Dictionary

Creating a Learning Dictionary

Automatically create a learning dictionary that will be displayed as prediction options at character entry using content of sent mail. Copy sent mail, in advance, from the model you used before.

1  "Settings" "Others" "Character input" "Create Learn. dic."

The Guidance screen appears.

2  [OK]



Network Services

Available Network Services

The following DOCOMO network services are available for the FOMA terminal.

Service name	Subscription	Monthly charge	Service name	Subscription	Monthly charge
Voice Mail Service	Required	Charged	Dual Network Service	Required	Charged
Call Waiting	Required	Charged	English Guidance	Not required	Free
Call Forwarding Service	Required	Free	OFFICEED	Required	Charged
Nuisance Call Blocking Service	Not required	Free	Public mode (Drive mode)*	Not required	Free
Caller ID Notification Service*	Not required	Free	Public mode (Power OFF)*	Not required	Free
Caller ID Request Service	Not required	Free	Melody Call**	Required	Charged

- Caller ID Notification Service P 54
Public mode P 76, P 77
Melody Call P 102
- You cannot use network services while you are out of service area or where there is no signal reception.
- For subscription or inquiries, contact "General Inquiries" at the back of this manual.
- "OFFICEED" is a fee-based service requiring a separate subscription. For details, visit the DOCOMO's web site for corporations (<http://www.docomo.biz/d/2.12/>). (Japanese only)
- This manual describes an overview of network services using menus on the FOMA terminal. For details, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Network Services]".

Voice Mail Service	392
Call Waiting	394
Call Forwarding Service	396
Nuisance Call Blocking Service	397
Caller ID Request Service	398
Dual Network Service	398
English Guidance	399
Service Numbers	399
Setting In-call Arrival Act	400
Selecting Actions for an Incoming Call	400
Setting Remote Control	401
Multi Number	401
OFFICEED	403
Saving and Using Services	403
Additional service (USSD Registration)	404
Saving Additional Guidance	404

Voice Mail Service

When your FOMA terminal is out of service area or turned off, or you cannot answer a call, this service automatically responds with reply message to incoming voice/videophone calls and records messages.

- The message can be recorded up to 3 minutes per message, up to 20 messages each for voice and videophone calls, and retained for up to 72 hours.
- When a message is recorded,  (with the number of received messages) appears on the Stand-by display. In Stand-by,  use  to select  to play a recorded voice message by making a call to the Voice mail service center.
- When Record message (P77) is activated concurrently, set the ringing time of the Voice mail service shorter than the Response time of Record message to use the Voice mail service first.
- If you do not answer an incoming voice or videophone call when the Voice mail service is activated, the call is recorded as a Missed call in Received calls and  appears (with the number of the Missed calls).

Basic Flow of Voice Mail Service

Step 1: Activate the Voice mail service


Step 2: A call arrives*

Step 3: Caller records a message

Step 4: Play the message

- * If you are in a hurry and want to record a message without listening to the response message of the Voice mail service, press "#" while you hear the message to switch to the recording mode.

Note

- In Step 2, when you are in a service area and the FOMA terminal is turned on, a ring tone sounds until the set ring time elapses. If an incoming call is not answered while a ring tone is sounding, the call is connected to the Voice mail service center. The ring time can be changed.
- In Step 3, when a message is recorded,  appears (with the number of recorded messages) on the Stand-by display, and a missed call is recorded in Received calls. However, if you set the ring time to zero, missed calls are not recorded in Received calls.
- Even when the Voice mail service is deactivated, you can forward an incoming voice call to the Voice mail center manually using the sub menu. P 73

Using Voice Mail Service

1  "Settings" "NW Services" "Voice mail" Perform the following operations


[Activate]

Activate the Voice mail service.

"Yes" "Yes" Enter the ringing time with dial keys
 [Done]

[Set ring time]

Set time to connect to the Voice mail service center after call arrival.

"Yes" Use dial keys to enter the ringing time  [Done]

[Deactivate]

Deactivate the Voice mail service.

[Check setting]

Check the current setting status of the Voice mail service.

Press  [MENU] to activate/deactivate the Voice mail service, or set a ring time, etc.

[Play messages]

Make a call to the Voice mail service center and play the recorded voice mail message.

"Play(voice call)"/"Play(voicephone)" "Yes"

[Voice mail setting]

Make a call to the Voice mail service center and change settings according to the voice guidance.

"Setting(voice call)"/"Setting(voicephone)" "Yes"

[Check messages]

Check whether new messages are recorded.

[Notify missed call]


When a call arrives while the FOMA terminal is turned on or out of service area, an SMS is sent to notify you of missed calls after the FOMA terminal is turned on or in a service area.

Activate : Activate the Notify missed call service.

Deactivate : Deactivate the Notify missed call service.

Check setting : Check the setting status of the Notify missed call.

[Del. voice mail icon]

Delete  displayed in the icon display area.

[Tone/Vibration message notification]

Set whether to notify you of a new recorded message with illumination and a ring tone.

[Voice mail setting for videophone]

Set whether to activate voice mail for videophone calls.

Note

- Even when you activate "SMS—拒否 (Reject All SMS)", the notification will be received.

Call waiting

Call Waiting

When another call arrives during a call, in-call arrival tone sounds to notify you of the call arrival. You can place the active call on hold and answer another call. You can also place the active call on hold to make another call.

- To use Call waiting, set "Arrival call act" (P400) to "Answer" in advance. If this option is set to other item, an incoming voice call during active voice call cannot be answered even if Call waiting is activated.
- Call waiting is not available when:
 - Dialing a number or ringing the other party
 - A voice call arrives during a videophone call
 - A videophone call arrives during a voice call

Using Call Waiting

 "Settings" "NW Services" "Call waiting" Perform the following operations

[Activate]

Activate Call waiting.

[Deactivate]


Deactivate Call waiting.

[Check setting]





Check whether Call waiting is activated or deactivated.

Holding the Active Call to Answer Another Call

When a call arrives during a voice call, in-call arrival tone sounds from the earpiece and the incoming call screen appears.

1 A call arrives 

The active voice call is placed on hold and you can answer the incoming call. A message "Connecting 3-way" appears (3-way connecting screen).

-  [Switch]: Switch between the active call and the held call.
-  [Spk ON/Spk OFF]: Switch Hands-free ON and OFF.
-  /  [End]: End the active call.

Note

- If you deactivate Call waiting, you cannot answer a call even when you hear in-call arrival tone during a call with "Set in-call arrival act" activated.

Holding the Active Call to Make a New Call

You can place the active voice call on hold and make a new voice call.

1 Voice call screen (P57)  [Menu] "New call" Enter a phone number 

The new call becomes active. The previous call is placed on hold and the 3-way connecting screen appears.

- To switch to a held call, press  [Switch].
- To end the held call, switch to the held call by performing the above step and press .


Terminating the Active Call to Answer Another Call

You can end the active voice call and answer an incoming voice call. This is available even when Call waiting is activated.

- 1 A call arrives  [Menu] "End active call"
The Voice call termination screen appears, and the incoming voice call screen for the new call appears.
 - To end the held call and answer the incoming call
Press  [Menu] "End" "End held call".
 - When connecting 3-way, the active call is placed on hold, and you can answer the incoming call.

2 or [Answer]

In-Call Arrival Screen Sub Menu

- 1 When a call arrives during a call,  [Menu]
Perform the following operations

[Voice mail]¹

Connect an incoming call to the Voice mail service center.

[Call rejection]

Reject an incoming call and hang up.

[Call forwarding]²

Forward an incoming call to the specified number.

[End active call]

Terminate the active call and a new call is arriving.


[Mute/Unmute]

Set the active call to mute/unmute.

*1 Not available unless you subscribe to the Voice mail service.

*2 Not available unless you subscribe to the Call forwarding service or you have specified a forwarding number.

3-way Connecting Screen Sub Menu

- 1 3-way connecting screen  [Menu]
Perform the following operations

[Switch]

Switch between the active call and held call.

[End]

Select and end a call.

End active call : Terminate the active call. The held call automatically becomes active.

End held call : Terminate the held call.

End all calls : Terminate all calls.

[Mute/Unmute]

Set the active call to mute/unmute.

[Send my info]

Create i-mode mail with Own number entered in the message text.
P 138

[Search phonebook]


Search for a Phonebook entry. P 92

* Not available when the Phonebook is accessed. To use this function, terminate applicable functions from the Task list screen.
P 350

Call forwarding

Call Forwarding Service

When your FOMA terminal is out of service area, turned off, or a call was not answered within the set ring time, this service forwards a voice/video/voice call.

- Videophone calls are forwarded only to a videophone call capable destination complying with 3G-324M.
- The subscriber to the Call forwarding service is charged for forwarding a call to a destination.
- This service is not available for some billing plans.
- When Record message (P77) is activated concurrently, set the ring time of the Call forwarding service shorter than the Ring time of Record message to use the Call forwarding service first.
- If an incoming voice or videophone call is not answered while the Call forwarding service is activated, the call is recorded as a Missed call in Received calls and  appears (with number of missed calls).


Basic Flow of Call Forwarding Service

- Step 1 : Register the phone number of the forwarding destination
- Step 2 : Activate the Call forwarding service
- Step 3 : A call arrives
- Step 4 : Forward the call to the destination

Note

- In Step 3, when you are in a service area and the FOMA terminal is turned on, a ring tone sounds until the set ring time elapses. If an incoming call is not answered while a ring tone is sounding, the call is forwarded to the forwarding destination. The ring time can be changed.
- In Step 4, when the call is forwarded, the call is recorded as a Missed call in Received calls. However, if you set the ring time to zero, missed calls are not recorded in Received calls.
- Even when the Call forwarding service is deactivated, you can forward an incoming call to the forwarding destination manually from the sub menu. P73

Using Call Forwarding Service

- 1  "Settings" "NW Services" "Call forwarding" Perform the following operations

[Activate]

Activate the Call forwarding service.

"Yes" Set the following items [Done]

Register the forwarding : Register a forwarding number. Press [Search] to find the number from the Phonebook.

[Select] Enter the forwarding number [Done]



Set ring time : Set time to forward the call after call arrival.

[Deactivate]

Deactivate the Call forwarding service.

[Register the forwarding number]

Change the forwarding number. Press  [Search] to find a number from the Phonebook.

 [Select] Enter the forwarding number  [Done]

- A confirmation appears. Selecting "Yes" changes the forwarding number and activates the Call forwarding service.

[Setting if forwarding number busy]

Set whether to connect to the Voice mail service center when the forwarding number is busy.

[Check setting]

Check the current setting status of the Call forwarding service.

- Not available unless you subscribe to the Voice mail service.

Enabling or Disabling Forwarding Guidance

- This cannot be operated from menu.
- For details, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Network Services]".

1 Enter "1429"

Follow the voice guidance.

Nuisance call blocking

Nuisance Call Blocking Service

This service rejects incoming nuisance calls. After a phone number is registered to be rejected, incoming calls from the registered number are automatically rejected, and the voice guidance is played to the caller.

- Up to 30 phone numbers can be registered.
- Even when a call arrives from the registered number, the ring tone does not sound. Also, the call is not recorded in Received calls.

1 "Settings" "NW Services" "Nuisance call blocking" Perform the following operations

[Register nuisance caller]

Register the phone number of the last incoming call you answered and set the number to be rejected.

[Register selected number]

Set specific phone numbers to be rejected.

Phonebook : Search entry from the Phonebook and set.

Recent call logs : Select entry from Recent calls and set.

Manually : Enter a phone number and set.

[Delete all entries]

Delete all phone numbers registered as nuisance callers.

[Delete last entry]

Delete the last saved phone number. Repeat the same steps to delete phone number one by one from the last saved number.

[Check the number of entries]

Check the number of registered entries.

Caller ID request

Caller ID Request Service

For a voice/videophone call without caller ID, this service plays a voice guidance requesting the caller to send caller ID and terminates the call automatically.

- Calls that did not arrive due to the Caller ID request service are not recorded in Received calls, and the Missed call notification screen does not appear.

1  "Settings" "NW Services" "Caller ID request" Perform the following operations

[Activate]

Activate the Caller ID request service.

[Deactivate]

Deactivate the Caller ID request service.

[Check setting]

Check the current setting status of Caller ID request service.

Note


- This service is applicable only to calls with "User unset" as a reason for hiding caller ID.

Dual network

Dual Network Service

This service allows you to use the movia service with your FOMA terminal phone number. You can switch between FOMA and movia depending on the service area.

- You cannot use the FOMA service and movia service concurrently.
- Switch the Dual Network Service from the terminal which is not using the service.

1  "Settings" "NW Services" "Others" "Dual network" Perform the following operations

[Dual network switching]

Switch from movia to FOMA to make the FOMA terminal available. "Yes" Enter the Network security code

[Check setting]

Check the current setting status.

Note

- To switch from FOMA to movia, operate from the movia terminal. <Dual network switching>
- Switching the network during communication forcibly terminates the connection.

English guidance

English Guidance

The voice guidance played when a network service such as the Voice mail service is activated or when the FOMA terminal is out of service area can be played in English.


- Outgoing call (Guidance to you)

Language	Description
Japanese	Play the guidance in Japanese.
English	Play the guidance in English.

- Incoming calls (Guidance to the caller)

Language	Description
Japanese	Play the guidance in Japanese.
Japanese+English	Play the guidance in Japanese first then in English.
English+Japanese	Play the guidance in English first then in Japanese.

- When the caller is using this service at the same time, the caller's settings for making calls have precedence over the receiver's settings for receiving calls. For example, if the receiver sets the language to Japanese+English and the caller does not set to English, the English guidance will not be played.

-  "Settings" "NW Services" "Others" "English guidance" Perform the following operations

[Guidance setting]

Set the guidance.

- Outgoing + : Set the language for incoming and outgoing calls. Incoming call : Select the language after selecting "Yes".
- Outgoing call : Set the language for outgoing calls. Incoming call : Select the language after selecting "Yes".
- Incoming call : Set the language for incoming calls. Incoming call : Select the language after selecting "Yes".

[Check guidance setting]


Check the current setting of the guidance setting.

Service numbers

Service Numbers

You can make a call to docomo Information Center or contact for Repairs.

- Depending on your UIM, the items displayed may differ or some items may not be displayed.

-  "Settings" "NW Services" "Others" "Service numbers" Perform the following operations

[ドコモ故障問合せ (repairs)]

Make a call for Repairs.

[ドコモ総合案内・受付 (General Inquiries)]

Make a call to docomo Information Center.

[海外紛失・盗難等 (Loss or theft of FOMA terminal overseas)]


Make a call for loss or theft of the FOMA terminal overseas.

[海外故障 (Failures encountered overseas)]

Make a call for failures of the FOMA terminal encountered overseas.

Setting In-call Arrival Act

Activate or deactivate incoming call actions set in "Arrival call act". You can also check the current settings.

1  "Settings" "NW Services" "Set in-call arrival act" Perform the following operations

[Activate]

Activate the action set in "Arrival call act"

[Deactivate]

Deactivate the action set in "Arrival call act"

[Check setting]

Check the current setting status of the Set in-call arrival act.

Selecting Actions for an Incoming Call during a Call

You can set how to respond to an incoming voice/video/phone call during a call when you subscribe to the Voice mail, Call waiting, or Call forwarding service.

- You cannot answer an incoming call during a call if you do not subscribe to the Voice mail, Call waiting, or Call forwarding service.
- Activate "Set in-call arrival act" to use "Arrival call act". If Call waiting is set to activate, activating "Set in-call arrival act" is not required.

1  "Settings" "NW Services" "Arrival call act" Perform the following operations

Answer : A call arrives. Incoming call action will follow the settings of the Voice mail, Call waiting, and Call forwarding services when they are activated.

Voice mail : The Voice mail service answers a call. Calls are connected to the Voice mail service even when Call waiting is activated.

Call forwarding : Forward a call to the registered phone number. Calls are forwarded even when the Voice mail or Call waiting is activated.

Call rejection : Reject incoming call.

Remote control

Setting Remote Control

You can control the Voice mail or Call forwarding service, etc. through a land-line/pay phone with the touch tone system or a DOCOMO mobile phone.

- To use the Voice mail or Call forwarding service from overseas, Remote control must be activated beforehand.

 "Settings" "NW Services" "Others" "Remote control" Perform the following operations

[Activate]

Activate Remote control.

[Deactivate]

Deactivate Remote control.

[Check setting]

Check the setting status of the Remote control.

Multi Number

Multi Number

This service allows you to use up to 2 extra phone numbers, Additional number1 and Additional number2, as your FOMA terminal in addition to the basic subscription phone number.


- On the Dialing/Incoming screen, names corresponding to the Multi Number (Basic number/Additional number1 /Additional number2) appear.

- When you dial from Dialed calls or Received calls, the previously dialed or received Multi Number is displayed, and this number is used to dial.

Number setting

Registering Additional Numbers

You can register or set a name, a number, and a ring tone for additional numbers.

 "Settings" "NW Services" "Others" "Multi number" "Number setting" Perform the following operations

[Basic number : Name]

Register a name for the Basic number.

[Phone number]

Display your phone number (Basic number).

[Additional no 1 : Name]

Register a name for the Additional number1.

[Phone number]

Register a phone number for the Additional number1.

[Additional no 2 : Name]


Register a name for the Additional number2.

[Phone number]
Register a phone number for the Additional number2.

2  [Done]

Setting Primary Number



You can set a registered additional number as the primary number used for making calls.

1  "Settings" "NW Services" "Others" "Multi number" "Set multi number" "Basic number"/"Additional number1"/"Additional number2" "Yes"


Checking Primary Number Settings

1  "Settings" "NW Services" "Others" "Multi number" "Check setting" "Yes"

Setting Caller ID for Each Call


1 Enter a phone number
2  "Multi number" Select a name of the additional number
3 


Setting Ring Tone and Image


1  "Settings" "NW Services" "Others" "Multi number" "Ring tone & image setting" Select a number to set Perform the following operations

[Individual setting]
Select whether to set the ring tone or image.

[Ring alert]
Set the ring tone.

MUSIC : Use  to move the cursor to the lower field, and select from Chaku-Uta Full® songs saved in "Music" of "Data Box". P270
Go to Step 3 in "Setting a Chaku-Uta Full® Song as a Ring Tone" (P266).

i-motion : Use  to move the cursor to the lower field, and select a moving picture/i-motion saved in "i-motion" of "Data Box". P307

Melody : Use  to move the cursor to the lower field, and select from melodies saved in "Melody" of "Data Box". P314
OFF : Set no ring tone.

[Incoming image]
Set an image to be shown on the incoming call screen.

Image : Select an image saved in "My picture" of "Data Box". P296
i-motion : Select a moving picture/i-motion saved in "i-motion" of "Data Box". P307

* Available when "Individual setting" is set to "ON".

2 [Done]

Note

- If "Select ring tone" (P100) or "Call & Mail image" (P109) is set with a moving picture/i-motion with audio/video for a specific caller and change either of "Ring tone" or "Incoming call image", the default sound or image is played for "Ring tone" or "Incoming call image" with the setting unchanged.

OFFICEED

"OFFICEED" is an internal voice call service with fixed charges offered for the specified in-building mobile communication system (IMCS). It requires a separate subscription. For details, visit the web page "NTT docomo Business Online" (<http://www.docomo.biz/d/212/>). (Japanese only)

Additional service (USSD Registration)

Saving and Using Services

When DOCOMO offers a new network service, you can add the service into the menu. Up to 10 new network services can be saved.

Adding Services

Save a service name and "Service code (USSD)" provided by DOCOMO.

- Service code (USSD) is a code to notify the service center.

1 "Settings" "NW Services" "Others" "Additional service"



Additional service list screen

2 Move the cursor to "Not recorded" [Edit]

3 Move the cursor to an item to set [Edit]

USSD code : Save a service code (USSD).

Service name : Save a service name.

4 [Done]

Additional Service List Screen Sub Menu

- 1 Additional service list screen (P403)
[Menu] [Menu] Perform the following operations

[Edit]
Edit the selected service.

[Select]^{*1}
Perform the selected service.

[Delete one]^{*1}
Delete the selected service.

[Delete all]^{*2}
Delete all added services.

*1 Appear only when the saved item is selected.

*2 Appear only when more than one item is registered.

Performing Added Services

- 1 Additional service list screen (P403) Select a service
Connect to the service center.

Additional guide

Saving Additional Guidance

You can save up to 10 response messages which correspond to a service code (USSD) returned from the service center when additional services connect to the center using the USSD.

- 1 [Menu] "Settings" "NW Services" "Others" "Additional guide"



Additional guide list screen

- 2 Move the cursor to "Not recorded" [Edit]
- 3 Move the cursor to an item to set USSD code : Save a service code (USSD).
Reply message : Save a reply message.
[Done]
- 4

Additional Guide List Screen Sub Menu

T Additional guide list screen (P404)
[MENU] [Menu] Perform the following operations

[Edit]

Edit the selected reply message.

[Delete one]^{*1}

Delete the selected reply message.

[Delete all]^{*2}

Delete all reply messages.

*1 Appear only when the saved item is selected.

*2 Appear only when more than one item is registered.



Overseas Use

Outline of International Roaming (WORLD WING)...	408
Available Services Overseas	409
Before Use Overseas	409
Making a Call from the Country You Stay	413
Receiving a Call Abroad.....	415
Setting a Search Method of Telecommunications Carrier Network search mode, 3G/GSM setting	416
Setting Telecommunications Carrier to Preferentially Connect to	PLMN setting 417
Displaying Telecommunications Carrier during Roaming	Operator name disp 418
Activating Roaming Guidance	Roaming guidance setting 418
Setting Incoming Call to Reject during Roaming	Call barring 418
Setting Missed Call Notification during Roaming	Notify missed call 419
Using Network Services during Roaming	419

Outline of International Roaming (WORLD WING)

International roaming (WORLD WING) is a service that allows to talk or make communications over an international carrier's network using the same phone number as used domestically.

- See the following before using the FOMA terminal overseas.
 - "Mobile Phone User's Guide [International Services]"
 - "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Network Services]"
 - DOCOMO International Services website

■ Convenient functions and services available overseas

Function/service	Description
Roaming guide(Int.)	The other party is notified with a voice guidance that the terminal is in international roaming.
Call barring	Reject reception during international roaming.
Dual clock display	You can display the times of two cities on the Stand-by display simultaneously.
Unit converter	You can convert currencies by setting an exchange rate.

■ Overseas network

Network	Description
W-CDMA (3G)	Third generation mobile communication network compliant with the international standard 3GPP. ¹
GSM ²	Digital-based second generation mobile communication network most used worldwide.
GPRS ³	2.5 generation mobile communication network for which high-speed packet communication is available using GSM communication.

*1 The abbreviation of 3rd Generation Partnership Project. A regional standardization organization to establish common technical specifications for third generation mobile communication systems (IMT-2000).

*2 The abbreviation of Global System for Mobile Communications. Second generation mobile communication system in digital method most used worldwide.

*3 The abbreviation of General Packet Radio Service. Data communication such as packet communication is facilitated by speeding up GSM.

Subscribing to WORLD WING

If you subscribed to the FOMA service after September 1, 2005, a separate subscription is not required.

- If you subscribed to the FOMA service after September 1, 2005, a separate subscription is not required. However, if you unsubscribed to the FOMA service subscription or canceled the service, a separate subscription is required.
- If you initially subscribed to the FOMA service before August 31, 2005 and have not subscribed to "WORLD WING", a separate subscription is required.

Available Services Overseas

Available communication services vary depending on the international carrier and/or network used.

Available Communication Services

Communication service	3G	GSM	GPRS
Voice call			
Videophone		x	x
SMS			
i-mode ^{*1}		x	
i-mode mail		x	
i-Channel ^{*1, *2, *3}		x	
Packet communication connecting to a PC		x	

: Available x : Not available

*1 Configuration of i-mode international settings is required.

*2 Configuration of i-Channel settings is required. Packet communication charges apply to receive each i-Channel (including Basic Channels).

*3 Auto-update will be automatically suspended if the FOMA terminal is connected to an international carrier. To resume Auto-update of i-Channel overseas, you need to configure i-Channel settings again. However, packet communication charges apply in addition to the monthly charge.

Note

- Some services are not available depending on the telecommunication carrier and network you use. For information about the countries or areas, and telecommunication carriers that support FOMA videophone calls, see "Mobile Phone Users' Guide [International Services]" or the DCOMO International Services website.
- Packet communication charges overseas differ from domestic charges.

Before Use Overseas

- STEP1 : Preparation before departure
- STEP2 : Using FOMA overseas
- STEP3 : Setting after returning to Japan

Preparation before Departure

- Subscription
 - If you have not subscribed to WORLD WING (P408), subscribe to the service.
 - Insert a UIM (green/white) that supports WORLD WING into the FOMA terminal.
- Charging
 - Cautions when handling the AC adapter P23
 - Charging using the AC adapter P47, P49
- Using i-mode
 - You have to configure "International Settings" in advance. Select "iMenu" "English" "Options" "International Settings" "i-mode services Settings" to display the setup screen. You can configure settings regarding i-mode on this screen.
 - * For details, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

■ Setting network services

You can activate or deactivate the subscribed network services overseas. The following network services can be accessed:

- Caller ID Notification service^{1, 2}
- Voice Mail service^{1, 3}
- Call Forwarding service^{1, 3}
- Caller ID Request service^{1, 3}
- Call Waiting¹
- English Guidance¹
- Nuisance Call Blocking service¹
- Roaming guidance setting^{1, 3}
- Call barring

*1 May be unavailable in some service areas.

*2 Caller ID may not be sent correctly or not be sent at all.

*3 To operate overseas, you need to activate "Remote control" (P401, P421) before leaving Japan.

■ Billing of charges

Overseas charges are billed with your monthly charge. Note that they may appear on a billing invoice of the next month or later due to the situation of the international carrier of your overseas location. Also note that the billing invoice for charges in the same charging period may be sent to you in a different month.

Note

- For overseas use of the FOMA terminal, use the Quick Manual (Overseas Use) for an easy reference of operations.

Overseas Use

■ Network switching

By default, "Network search mode" is set to "Auto". The FOMA terminal connects to an available network automatically overseas.

- To switch networks manually P416


■ Display on screen

The network name does not appear when the terminal is connected to the FOMA network in Japan.


- To display the roaming network name P418

1 Connected network icon

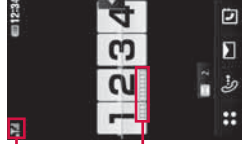
 Connecting to the FOMA network in Japan

 Connecting to 3G network overseas

 Connecting to GSM network overseas

 Connecting to GPRS network overseas

2 Connected network name



Note

- If "Auto time adjust" is set to "ON" and you receive information about time and time difference from a connecting international carrier, time and time difference of the FOMA terminal are adjusted. The adjusting timing differs depending on international carriers.
- Auto time adjust function may not be available overseas. In that case, set date and time manually. P53

Inquiries from abroad
 If your UIM (green/white) is lost or stolen overseas, contact DOCOMO immediately and suspend your subscription temporarily. For loss or theft of FOMA terminal, accumulated amount settlement, or terminal failure while overseas, see "Loss or theft of FOMA terminal or payment of cumulative cost overseas" or "Failures encountered overseas" at the back of this manual. Call and communication fees are charged to you even after the terminal was lost or stolen.

- Add "International Access Code (Table 1)", or "International Prefix Number for the Universal Number (Table 2)" that is assigned to the country you stay, to the head of the number for inquiries.

Country Codes of Major Countries

Area	Code	Area	Code
Australia	61	Germany	49
Austria	43	Greece	30
Belgium	32	Hong Kong	852
Brazil	55	Hungary	36
Canada	1	India	91
China	86	Indonesia	62
Czech	420	Italy	39
Egypt	20	Japan	81
Fiji	679	Korea	82
Finland	358	Macau	853
France	33	Malaysia	60

Area	Code	Area	Code
Maldives	960	Sweden	46
Netherlands	31	Switzerland	41
New Caledonia	687	Tahiti	689
New Zealand	64	Taiwan	886
Norway	47	Thailand	66
Peru	51	Turkey	90
Philippines	63	U.K.	44
Russia	7	U.S.A.	1
Singapore	65	Vietnam	84
Spain	34		

- The codes may be changed.
- For the codes of other countries and details, see "Mobile Phone Users Guide [International Services]" or the DOCOMO International Services website.
- From a land-line phone, international phone call charges to Japan apply.

International Access Code for Major Countries (Table 1)
International access codes for major countries are as follows:

Area	Code	Area	Code
Australia	0011	Malaysia	00
Belgium	00	Monaco	00
Brazil	0021/ 0014	Netherlands	00
Canada	011	New Zealand	00
China	00	Norway	00
Czech	00	Philippines	00
Denmark	00	Poland	00
Finland	00	Portugal	00
France	00	Russia	810
Germany	00	Singapore	001
Greece	00	Spain	00
Hong Kong	001	Switzerland	00
Hungary	00	Sweden	00
India	00	Taiwan	002
Indonesia	001	Thailand	001
Ireland	00	Turkey	00
Italy	00	U.A.E.	00
Korea	001	U.K.	00
Luxembourg	00	U.S.A.	011
Macau	00	Vietnam	00

International Prefix Number for the Universal Number (Table 2)
International prefix numbers for the universal number are as follows:

Area	Code	Area	Code
Argentina	00	Korea	001
Australia	0011	Luxembourg	00
Austria	00	Malaysia	00
Belgium	00	Netherlands	00
Brazil	0021	New Zealand	00
Bulgaria	00	Norway	00
Canada	011	Peru	00
China	00	Philippines	00
Colombia	009	Portugal	00
Denmark	00	Singapore	001
Finland	990	South Africa	09
France	00	Spain	00
Germany	00	Sweden	00
Hong Kong	001	Switzerland	00
Hungary	00	Taiwan	00
Ireland	00	Thailand	001
Israel	014	U.K.	00
Italy	00	U.S.A.	011

- The codes may be changed.
- For the codes of the other countries and details, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [International Services]" or the DOCOMO International Services website.
- Domestic call charges for your overseas stay may apply to calls.

- If you make a call from a hotel, you may be charged for the telephone usage from the hotel. In that case, you are responsible for the charge.
- If you make a call from a mobile phone, the domestic call charge for your overseas stay applies to that call.
- The universal numbers are only available in the countries listed in "International Prefix Number for the Universal Number".

Setting after Returning to Japan

When you return to Japan, the FOMA terminal automatically connects to the FOMA network and  appears at the top of the screen.

- If the FOMA network is not connected, check whether "3G/GSM setting" is set to "AUTO" and "Network search mode" is set to "Auto". P.414


Making a Call from the Country You Stay

When you and the other party are using a telecommunication carrier capable of handling FOMA videophone calls, international videophone calls are also available.

- Depending on the terminal of the other party of an international videophone call, the video streaming may fail, or the connection may not be established.
- Even if the Caller ID notification is set, the caller ID may not be notified or phone number is not displayed correctly, depending on the telecommunication carrier. In this case, you cannot make a call using the Received calls.

Making an International Call (Including to Japan)


Make a call prefixing "+" and a country code to the other party's phone number.

- Press  for 1+ seconds to enter "+".
- To call an overseas "WORLD WING" user, enter "81" as the country code and make a call as an international call to Japan.

1 (for 1+ seconds) Enter "Country Code - Area Code (City Code) - Phone Number"

- When making a call to a land-line phone in Japan from abroad, enter "81" as the country code.
- If the Area Code (City Code) starts with "0", remove the "0" (in a few countries/regions such as Italy, "0" must not be removed.)
- When making a call to a mobile phone or PHS in Japan, omit the leading "0" as well.
- Country codes can be checked in "Country Codes of Major Countries". P.409

2

- To make a videophone call
Press  [V. phone].

Making a Call Easily to Japan




You can make a call to Japan easily by using Redial/Received call logs.

- Available only when the phone number starts with "0". Also, set "Auto Int'l dial" in "International dial" (P69) to "ON" and "Japan + 81" beforehand. (Default settings)


1 Display an entry in logs/Phonebook

- To use the Redial logs
Display the Redial list screen (P60) or the Redial detail screen (P61).
- To use the Received call logs
Display the Received calls list screen (P62) or the Received call detail screen (P62).
- To use the Phonebook
Display the Phonebook list screen (P93) or the Phonebook detail screen (P93).

2 Select an entry in logs/Phonebook

- When two or more phone numbers are saved in the Phonebook entry on the Phonebook list screen
Use  to select a phone number to dial.
- When two or more phone numbers are saved in the Phonebook entry on the Phonebook detail screen
Use  to display the phone number to call, and press .

3

- The Dialing confirmation screen displays a phone number prefixed with "+ Country code".
- To make a videophone call
Press  [V, phone].

4 "Dial"

Original number : The leading "0" will not be replaced with "+ Country code".

Cancel : Dialing will be canceled.

Note

- This function is available only during international roaming.

Selecting Registered Country Code and Making an International Call (Including to Japan)

Register frequently used country names and country codes in "Country code list" of "International dial" (P70) to make a call quickly.

1 Enter "Area code (City code) - other party's phone number"

 [MENU] "Int. call"

The Country code selection screen appears.

2 Select a country code

"+ Country code" is added at the beginning of the entered phone number.

- When the entered phone number starts with "0", it is replaced with "+ Country code".

4

- To make a videophone call

Press  [V, phone].


Note

- By default, 22 country codes are stored in the Select country screen. Country codes can be added. P70

Making a Domestic Call while Overseas

Make a call by dialing the other party's phone number from the area code (city code).

- If you make a call to the WORLD WING user who stays overseas, make a call as an international call to Japan using the same steps in "Making an international Call (including to Japan)" (P413) even if you and the other party are in the same country or region.
- When "Auto Int'l dial" is set to "ON", the Dialing confirmation screen appears if a call is made to a phone number whose area code (city code) starts with "0" from an entry in the Phonebook or Redial call log. In this case, select "Original number" without conversion to make a call.


When you and the other party are using a telecommunication carrier that handles FOMA videophone calls, "international videophone calls" are available by pressing  [V, phone] after the international call dialing procedure.

- Depending on the terminal of the other party of an international videophone call, the video streaming may fail, or the connection may not be established.

Receiving a Call Abroad



1 A call arrives

The ring tone sounds.

- : Place the call on hold. P75

2

Answer the call.

- To answer a videophone call using a camera image
Press .
- To answer a videophone call using an alternate image
Press .

3 To terminate the call,

Note

- When a call arrived during international roaming, the call will be forwarded internationally from Japan. The caller is charged for the call fee to Japan and the receiver is charged for the reception fee.

Making calls to your FOMA terminal from Japan

You can receive calls to your phone number as in Japan.

Receiving a call to your FOMA terminal from an overseas caller

You can receive a call via Japan regardless of where you are. Similarly to making an international call to Japan, you can be called using the following steps.

Make a call by entering "International Access Code"¹ - 81² your phone number excluding the leading "0"³

- *1 When dialing to a mobile phone, you may be able to dial by entering "+", instead of the International Access Code.
- *2 Enter the country code of Japan.
- *3 Enter "90-XXXX-XXXX" if the number starts with "090" or "80-XXXX-XXXX" if it starts with "080".

Network search mode, 3G/GSM setting

Setting a Search Method of Telecommunications Carrier

Select a search mode to find available networks when the network is switched overseas.

- By default, "Network search mode" is set to "Auto". In Japan or while connecting to the 3G network, setting "3G/GSM setting" to "3G" is recommended to reduce the battery drain.



"Settings" "International roaming" "Network" Perform the following operations

[Network search mode]

- Auto : Automatically search and set a network.
Manual : The Network search screen appears. Select and configure one of the networks in the list.
"Yes" : Select a network
- Available networks are followed by "0" mark.
- Network : Search a network using the same method (Auto/re-search Manual) as the previous search.

[3G/GSM setting]

- Specify a network to be searched.
- AUTO : Search both 3G and GSM/GPRS networks, and give priority to 3G when detected both networks.
3G : Search only 3G network.
GSM/GPRS : Search only GSM/GPRS network.
- Before setting, check the communication system of the country where you use.

[PLMN setting]

- Prioritize networks to be searched or set. P417

[Operator name disp]

Set whether to show the name of the currently connected network on the Stand-by display. P418

[Host selection]

Specify a host other than i-mode. P199

[SMS center]

Set the SMS center address. P178


Note


- After returning to Japan, if the network status indicator remains out of service area, set "3G/GSM setting" to "AUTO" or "3G", and "Network search mode" to "Auto".
- <Network search mode>
- Searching for networks may take a while.
 - When this option is set to "Auto", the FOMA terminal reconnects to available network automatically.

PLMN setting

Setting Telecommunications Carrier to Preferentially Connect to


You can register up to 20 networks to be searched or set by priority.

- 1  "Settings" "International roaming" "Network" "PLMN setting"

- If networks have been already registered, the network names appear in order of precedence.
-  [Change]: Change and overwrite the selected setting.



PLMN setting screen

- 2  [Add] Perform the following operations

[UPLMN manual select]

Add a network to the Preferred NW list by entering "Country No. (MCC)" and "Network No. (MNC)".

Enter an MCC and MNC  [Done] "Yes"

[UPLMN select by list]

Select and add a network from the default network list.

Select a network "Yes"

-  [Country]: Select a country name to specify an available network in the country from the list. (Use  to select a country.)


[Set VPLMN to UPLMN]

Add the network currently connected.

Note

- Depending on the signal strength, a network other than registered one may be connected.
- The settings of this function are saved on the UIM.

PLMN Setting Screen Sub Menu

- 1 PLMN setting screen (P417)  [Menu] Perform the following operations

[Add new]

Search and add a newly found network to the selected network. Go to Step 2 in "Setting Telecommunications Carrier to Preferentially Connect to" (P417).

[Change]

Change and overwrite the selected setting. Go to Step 2 in "Setting Telecommunications Carrier to Preferentially Connect to" (P417).

[Delete]

Delete the selected network.

[Change priority]

Move up* : Move the selected network up by one in the list.


Move down* : Move the selected network down by one in the list.

* Cannot be selected depending on the selected network position.

Operator name disp

Displaying Telecommunications Carrier during Roaming

Set whether to show the name of the currently connected network on the Stand-by display.

-  "Settings" "International roaming" "Network" "Operator name disp" "Yes"
Perform this operation to switch ON and OFF.

Roaming guidance setting

Activating Roaming Guidance

Before leaving Japan, you can set to play a voice guidance that indicates you are overseas.

- Setting must be done while in Japan.
- The service may not be operable when "國外" is displayed.

-  "Settings" "NW Services" "Others" "Roaming guidance setting" Perform the following operations

[Activate]
Activate the roaming guidance.

[Deactivate]
Deactivate the roaming guidance.

[Check setting]
Check the current setting status.

Note

- When deactivating the guidance, a ring tone set by the international carrier sounds.
- Some international carriers may not offer this option.
- Even if you activated this option, a voice guidance in a foreign language may be played due to the international carrier's services.

Call barring

Setting Incoming Call to Reject during Roaming

You can set to restrict all incoming calls, messages, etc. during roaming. You can also set to restrict only incoming videophone calls.

-  "Settings" "International roaming" "Call barring" Perform the following operations

[Activate]
Activate incoming call restriction.
"Yes" Select from the following options Enter the Network security code

Barring all incoming calls : Restrict all incoming calls.
Data calls barring : Restrict only incoming videophone calls.

[Deactivate]
Deactivate incoming call restriction.
"Yes" Enter the Network security code

[Check setting]
Check the current setting status.


Note

- This may not be set depending on international carriers.

Notify missed call

Setting Missed Call Notification during Roaming

If a call arrives when you are out of service area, the terminal is turned off, or you cannot answer the call during international roaming, you are notified of the incoming call information (received date and time and caller ID) by SMS.

 "Settings" "NW Services" "Others" "Notify missed call" Perform the following operations

[Activate]

Activate the incoming notification during roaming.

[Deactivate]

Deactivate the incoming notification during roaming.

[Check setting]

Check the current setting status.

Using Network Services during Roaming


You can use network services of the Voice mail service, Call forwarding service, and Roaming guidance, etc. overseas.

- To use Voice mail (Int.) or Call forwarding service (Int.), subscription to Voice mail or Call forwarding service is required.
- To use the network service overseas, activate Remote Control beforehand. P401
- International call charges to Japan apply.
- When "国外" is displayed, operations cannot be performed.
- The services may not be operable in some countries.

Voice mail(Int.)

Operating the Voice Mail Service Overseas

You can activate/deactivate the Voice mail service overseas. You can also play recorded messages or change the settings following a voice guidance.

 "Settings" "International roaming" "Voice mail(Int.)" Perform the following operations

[Activate]

Activate the Voice mail service.

[Deactivate]

Deactivate the Voice mail service.

[Play messages]

Play a Voice mail message.

[Voice mail setting]
Change the settings according to the voice guidance.

[Set ring time]
Set time before connecting to the Voice mail service center after a call arrives.

2 "Yes"

3 Operate according to the voice guidance


Note

- If moving to another area with power "ON" while staying overseas, and in the result, the FOMA terminal turns to "国外", the Voice mail service may not be activated. Therefore, if you want to use the Voice mail service without fail when the terminal turns to "国外", it is recommended to turn the power "OFF" at the area where signals are received before moving to another area where the terminal might turn to "国外".

Call forwarding(Int.)

Operating the Call Forwarding Service Overseas

You can activate/deactivate the Call forwarding service overseas.

- 1**  "Settings" "International roaming"
"Call forwarding(Int.)" Perform the following operations

[Activate]
Activate the Call forwarding service.

[Deactivate]
Deactivate the Call forwarding service.

[Call forwarding settings]
Check the current setting status.

2 "Yes"

3 Operate according to the voice guidance


Note

- If moving to another area with the power "ON" while staying overseas, and in the result, the FOMA terminal turns to "国外", the Call forwarding service may not be activated. Therefore, if you want to use the Call forwarding service without fail when the terminal turns to "国外", it is recommended to turn the power "OFF" at the area where signals are received before moving to another area where the terminal might turn to "国外".

Roaming guide(Int.)

Operating the Roaming Guidance Overseas

You can activate/deactivate the Roaming guidance overseas.

- 1**  "Settings" "International roaming"
"Roaming guide(Int.)"


2 "Yes"

3 Operate according to the voice guidance

Remote access setting(Int.)

Setting Remote Control Overseas

You can activate/deactivate the Remote access overseas.


- 1  "Settings" "International roaming" "Remote access setting(Int.)"
- 2 "Yes"
- 3 Operate according to the voice guidance

Caller ID request(Int.)

Operating the Caller ID Request Service Overseas

You can activate/deactivate the Caller ID request service overseas.


- While you are abroad and even if "Caller ID request" is activated, "Not support" may be displayed and a call may arrive.

- 1  "Settings" "International roaming" "Caller ID request(Int.)"
- 2 "Yes"
- 3 Operate according to the voice guidance

Missed call notification for roaming setting(Int.)

Setting Missed Call Notification Overseas

Set to activate/deactivate the missed call notification overseas.

- 1  "Settings" "International roaming" "Missed call notification for roaming setting(Int.)"
- 2 "Yes"
- 3 Operate according to the voice guidance



PC Connection

Data Communication.....	424
Before Using Data Communication	426
Flow of Setup for Data Transmission (OBEX™ Communication)	427
Flow of Setup for Data Communication	427
AT Command	428
Using CD-ROM	428
Introduction of DOCOMO keitai datalink	428

For details about data communication, see "Manual for PC Connection" (PDF format) contained in the bundled CD-ROM or available at the DOCOMO's web site.
Adobe® Reader® is required to open "Manual for PC Connection" in PDF format. If the program is not installed on your PC, install Adobe® Reader® contained in the bundled CD-ROM.
For details about using the program, see "Adobe Reader Help".

Data Communication

Data Communications Available with the FOMA Terminal

When you connect your FOMA terminal to a PC, you can use data communication via packet communication as well as data transmission (OBEX™ Communication).

- The FOMA terminal does not support 6.4K data communication.
- The FOMA terminal does not support Remote Wakeup.
- The FOMA terminal does not support FAX communication.
- The FOMA terminal does not support DOCOMO's PDA, "musea" and "signature".

Data Transmission (OBEX™ Communication)

You can exchange data such as images, songs, Phonebook entries, or mail with another FOMA terminal or a PC.

Infrared communication (P325)

L-02B

PC

L-02B

microSD Card

PC

- FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 (optional)
- microSD Card (P317)
- DOCOMO keitai datalink (P428)

* This FOMA terminal cannot send images to a PC.

Packet Communication

Communication charges^{*1} are based on the amount of data sent and received. It is suitable for use to exchange data only when you want while keeping the network connected. DOCOMO provides a best-effort service in which communication speeds change in response to the communication environment and network congestion. Using an access point of DOCOMO internet connection service such as "mopera U" that supports FOMA packet communication allows you to use high-speed communication at the maximum rate of 7.2Mbps for receiving and 5.7Mbps for sending (based on best-effort connection)^{*2}.

*1 Communication charges become high when you exchange a large amount of data.

*2 • The maximum speed of 7.2Mbps for receiving and 5.7Mbps for sending are theoretical values and they do not show the actual performance. The actual performance depends on the network congestion and your communication environment.

- If you connect to an area which is out of the FOMA HIGH-SPEED Area or an access point that does not support HIGH-SPEED, the performance may be lower.

L-02B can use an access point, even while in overseas, that supports 3G or GPRS packet communication to perform data communication.

Precautions before Use

Internet Service Provider Fees

Fees to an Internet service provider (ISP) are required to connect to the Internet. These connection fees, paid to the ISP, are separate from the FOMA service fees. For detailed information on connection fees, contact your ISP. You can use DOCOMO Internet connection services; "mopera U". A separate subscription (fee-based) is required to use "mopera U".

Setting the Internet Connection

For packet communication, use an access point compatible with packet communication.

- DoPa access points cannot be connected.
- For service contents of "mopera" and its connection settings, visit "mopera" web site.
<http://www.mopera.net/mopera/index.html> (Japanese only)

Conditions for Packet Communication

The following conditions* must be met to connect the FOMA terminal to a PC and perform communication. However, even if the conditions are met, communication may still not be possible depending on the amount of traffic at the base station or the strength of the signal.

- FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 (optional) must be available on the PC.
- The FOMA terminal must be in the FOMA service area.
- The access point must support FOMA packet communication.
- * These conditions are for domestic use in Japan.

Before Using Data Communication

Operating Environment

The following operating environment is required for a PC to use data communication.

Item	Requirements
PC main unit	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• PC-AT compatible device with a CD-ROM capable drive• USB port (Universal Serial Bus Specification Rev1.1/2.0 compliant)• Display resolution of 800x600 dots, High Color (65,536 colors) or higher recommended
OS ^{*1, *2}	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Windows Vista, Windows XP, or Windows 2000 (Japanese versions)
Memory requirement ^{*3}	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Windows Vista: 512MB or more• Windows XP: 1.28MB or more• Windows 2000: 64MB or more
Hard disk space ^{*3, *4}	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Available space of 5MB or more

*1 The operation on an upgraded OS cannot be guaranteed.

*2 The operating environment of DOCOMO Connection Manager is Windows 2000 SP4 or later, or Windows XP SP2 or later. For detailed operating environment, check DOCOMO's web site.

*3 Memory requirement or hard disk space may vary depending on the PC system configuration.

*4 DOCOMO Connection Manager requires 15MB or more.

A warning screen may appear when you insert the bundled CD-ROM into a PC. This warning appears as a result of a security setting of Microsoft Internet Explorer, however, there is no problem. Click [[I&t](#)] (Yes)].

Required Device

To use data communications, the following devices and software are required in addition to the FOMA terminal and a PC:

- FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 (optional) or FOMA USB Cable (optional)
- CD-ROM for L-02B (supplied)

Note

- Purchase the exclusive FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 or FOMA USB Cable. A generic USB cable for PC is not available because it does not fit the FOMA USB connector.
- The FOMA terminal may not work properly with a USB HUB.

Flow of Setup for Data Transmission (OBEX™ Communication)

Install the L-02B communication setting files to use the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 (optional).

Download and install the L-02B communication setting files

- Install them using bundled CD-ROM
- or
- Download and install from the DOCOMO web page

Data transfer

Flow of Setup for Data Communication

The flow for preparing to connect the FOMA terminal and a PC for performing packet communication is as follows. For details, see "Manual for PC Connection" (PDF format).

Check that "USB mode setting" of the FOMA terminal is set to "Communication mode"

Connect the FOMA terminal and the PC using a FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02

Download and install the L-02B communication setting files

- Install it using bundled CD-ROM
- or
- Download and install from the DOCOMO web page

Check after installation

Install DOCOMO Connection Manager and set up with it

Set up without DOCOMO Connection Manager

Connect

Note

- You can also download software for data communication, "L-02B Communication Setting Files (Driver)" or "DOCOMO Connection Manager," that are contained on "CD-ROM for L-02B" from DOCOMO's web site.
<http://www.nttdocomo.co.jp/support/download/>

Software for data communication contained on "CD-ROM for L-02B"

L-02B Communication Setting Files (Driver)

This software (driver) is required for packet communication or file transfer when the FOMA terminal and a PC are connected using the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02.

DOCOMO Connection Manager

This software facilitates simple configuration or the settings for a packet communication connection (APN), dial-up connection, etc.

AT Command

AT commands are used to check the FOMA terminal function settings or status using a PC. For details, see "Manual for PC Connection" (PDF format) in the bundled CD-ROM.

Using CD-ROM

The bundled CD-ROM contains applications to perform data communication with the FOMA terminal, "Manual for PC Connection" and "Kuten Code List" (PDF). For details, see the bundled CD-ROM.

Introduction of DOCOMO keitai datalink

"DOCOMO keitai datalink" is a software to allow you to make a backup of "Phonebook" or "Mail" on your FOMA terminal and edit them. This software is provided at the DOCOMO's web site. For details and to download the software, visit the following web site.
<http://datalink.nttdocomo.co.jp/> (Japanese only)

Note

- For details about downloading, transferable data, operating environment such as supported OS, installing, operating, or restrictions, visit the above web site. For operations after installing the software, see Help of the software. To use DOCOMO keitai datalink, a USB Connection Cable (optional) is required.